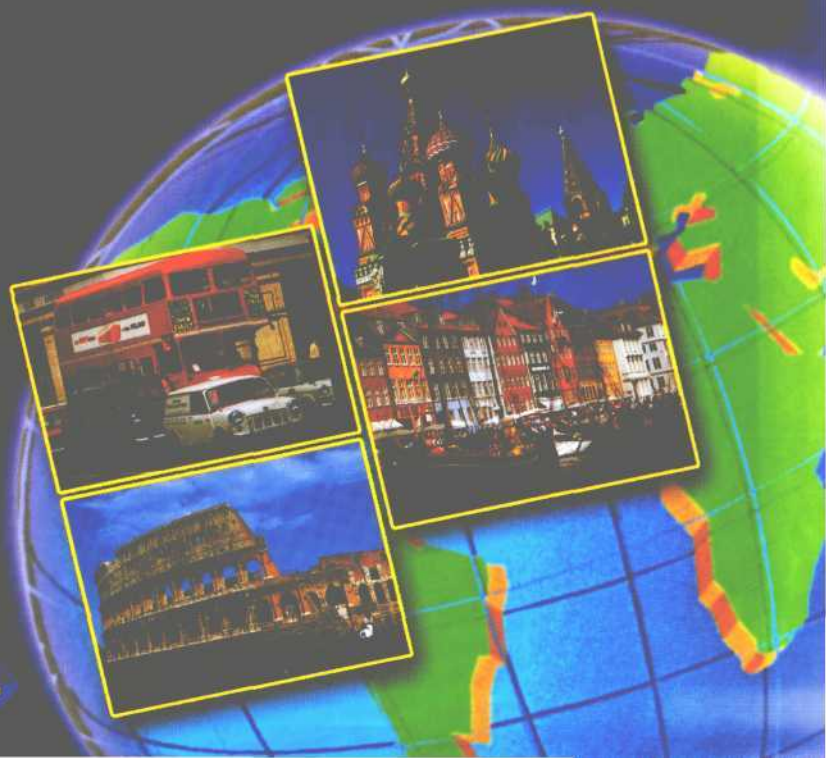


А. М. СЕРБИНОВСКАЯ

АНГЛИЙСКИЙ ЯЗЫК ДЛЯ ТУРБИЗНЕСА И СЕРВИСА ENGLISH FOR TRAVEL BUSINESS AND SERVICE

УЧЕБНИК ДЛЯ ВУЗОВ



СПИШКОВ И КО

ИЗДАТЕЛЬСКО-ТОРГОВАЯ
КОМПАНИЯ

Издательско-торговая корпорация «Дашков и К°»

А. М. Сербиновская

**АНГЛИЙСКИЙ ЯЗЫК
ДЛЯ ТУРБИЗНЕСА
И СЕРВИСА**

**ENGLISH
FOR TRAVEL BUSINESS AND
SERVICE**

Учебник для вузов

Москва, 2006

УДК 802.0
ББК 81.2 Англ
С32

С32 Сербиновская А. М. Английский язык для турбизнеса и сервиса. *English for travel business and service*: Учебник для вузов. — М.: Издательско-торговая корпорация «Дашков и К°», 2006. — 428 с.

ISBN 5-91131-037-6

Целью данного учебника является обучение специалистов в области туризма и сервиса профессионально-ориентированному общению на английском языке, развитие умений и навыков устного и письменного общения в контексте как будущей профессиональной коммуникации, так и непосредственного общения с иноязычными партнерами и клиентами.

Основными достоинствами учебника являются его коммуникативная направленность, комплексная организация учебного материала и взаимосвязанное обучение всем видам речевой деятельности. Текстовый материал аутентичен.

Проверочные задания, включенные в учебник, призваны оценить уровень и глубину усвоения пройденного материала.

Учебник предназначен для студентов вузов и факультетов туристского и сервисного профиля, обучающихся по специальностям «Социально-культурный сервис и туризм» и «Сервис», слушателей специальных курсов по английскому языку, а также специалистов, работающих в сфере туризма и сервиса, а также для самостоятельно изучающих английский язык.

УДК 802.0
ББК 81.2 Англ

ISBN 5-91131-037-6

© А. М. Сербиновская, 2006

ПРЕДИСЛОВИЕ

Специфика работы специалиста по сервису и туризму предполагает общение с иностранными, следовательно, иноязычными партнерами и клиентами, поэтому ведение профессиональной деятельности на английском языке, утвердившемся повсеместно как *lingua franca*, является необходимым условием профессиональной компетенции будущего специалиста.

Развитие международных и туристских связей России актуализирует необходимость подготовки высококвалифицированных кадров для отраслей туризма и сервиса, поэтому целью обучения английскому языку является подготовка к профессиональному межкультурному общению.

Учебник английского языка «*English for Travel Business and Service*» (Английский язык для турбизнеса и сервиса) предназначен для студентов вузов и факультетов туристского и сервисного профиля, слушателей специальных курсов по английскому языку, а также специалистов, работающих в сфере туризма и сервиса и самостоятельно изучающих английский язык.

«*English for Travel Business and Service*» является коммуникативно-ориентированным учебником английского языка, в основу которого положен принцип интегративного обучения иностранному языку, предполагающий комплексную организацию учебного материала и взаимосвязанное обучение всем видам речевой деятельности.

Учебник рассчитан на 210 часов аудиторных занятий и 80—120 часов самостоятельной работы и ориентирован на лиц, продолжающих изучение английского языка в вузе. Аудиторная работа направлена на изучение лексического материала, самостоятельная работа ориентирована на закрепление и использование речевых моделей в ситуациях профессионального общения.

Текстовый материал учебника является базовым в тематическом и лексическом плане и может быть дополнен грамматическим материалом по желанию преподавателя в зависимости от уровня грамматических навыков обучаемых. Учебник также должен быть дополнен региональным компонентом в зависимости от региона проживания и предполагаемой профессиональной деятельности будущих специалистов.

Целью учебника является обучение будущих специалистов в области туризма и сервиса профессионально-ориентированному

общению на английском языке, развитие у обучаемых умений и навыков устного и письменного общения в контексте как будущей профессиональной коммуникации, так и непосредственного общения с иноязычными партнерами и клиентами.

Учебник состоит из двух частей: Travelling (Путешествия) и Travel Business (Турбизнес). Каждая часть включает в себя несколько уроков или разделов (units), посвященных определенной теме.

Каждый урок открывается дискуссией (Group Talk), нацеленной на активизацию мыслительной деятельности обучаемых и мотивацию изучения обсуждаемого материала; большинство заданий-дискуссий персонифицированы и ориентированы на личный опыт обучаемых либо его проекцию.

Далее студентам предлагается базовый текст (Text) для чтения, перевода и пересказа или аннотирования, с заданиями до и после прочтения. Каждый текст снабжен вокабуляром, в который включены как основные термины по данной теме, так и наиболее трудные, интересные и/или употребительные слова и выражения данного урока. Каждый раздел (урок) включает в себя от одного до трех базовых текстов. Тексты, включенные в данный учебник, взяты из оригинальной англоязычной художественной и газетно-журнальной литературы, туристских каталогов и рекламных проспектов, не адаптированы.

В текстах, взятых из американской художественной литературы и публицистики, сохранены лексические и орфографические особенности американского варианта английского языка. Некоторые из них вынесены в отдельное упражнение после текста (Compare and mind the difference) для акцентуации внимания обучаемых.

Работа после прочтения текста (Text Work) включает в себя лексические и коммуникативные упражнения, ориентированные на закрепление лексического материала, активизацию лексики в монологической (agree/disagree; discuss; say why; explain), диалогической (dialogues, role play) и письменной (translate, fill in..., write an essay) речи.

Для развития умения аудирования студенты прослушивают как диалоги и тексты из учебника, так и дополнительные аудиоматериалы¹, направленные на обучение пониманию.

¹ При отсутствии аудиозаписей тексты и диалоги зачитываются на занятии преподавателем. — Автор.

Рольевые игры (Role Play) представляют собой реальные ситуации профессионального общения специалистов по сервису и туризму, благодаря чему английский язык становится не только целью, но и средством профессиональной подготовки студентов.

Каждый раздел (unit) завершается созданием проекта (Project Work), который основан на тематической лексике данного раздела и является самостоятельным творческим отчетом студента по пройденному материалу, что гарантирует систематический повтор изученного материала.

Рекомендуется обращать внимание студента на создание проекта (Project Work) в начале изучения урока-раздела, так как это дает возможность студенту не только закрепить изученные языковые аспекты, но и переработать их с целью использования в реальной работе в сфере турбизнеса и сервиса. Для преподавателя выполненный студентом проект является показателем глубины усвоения лексического и грамматического материала урока.

Дорогие коллеги и студенты, желаю вам интересной, творческой и плодотворной работы с данным учебником!

Автор

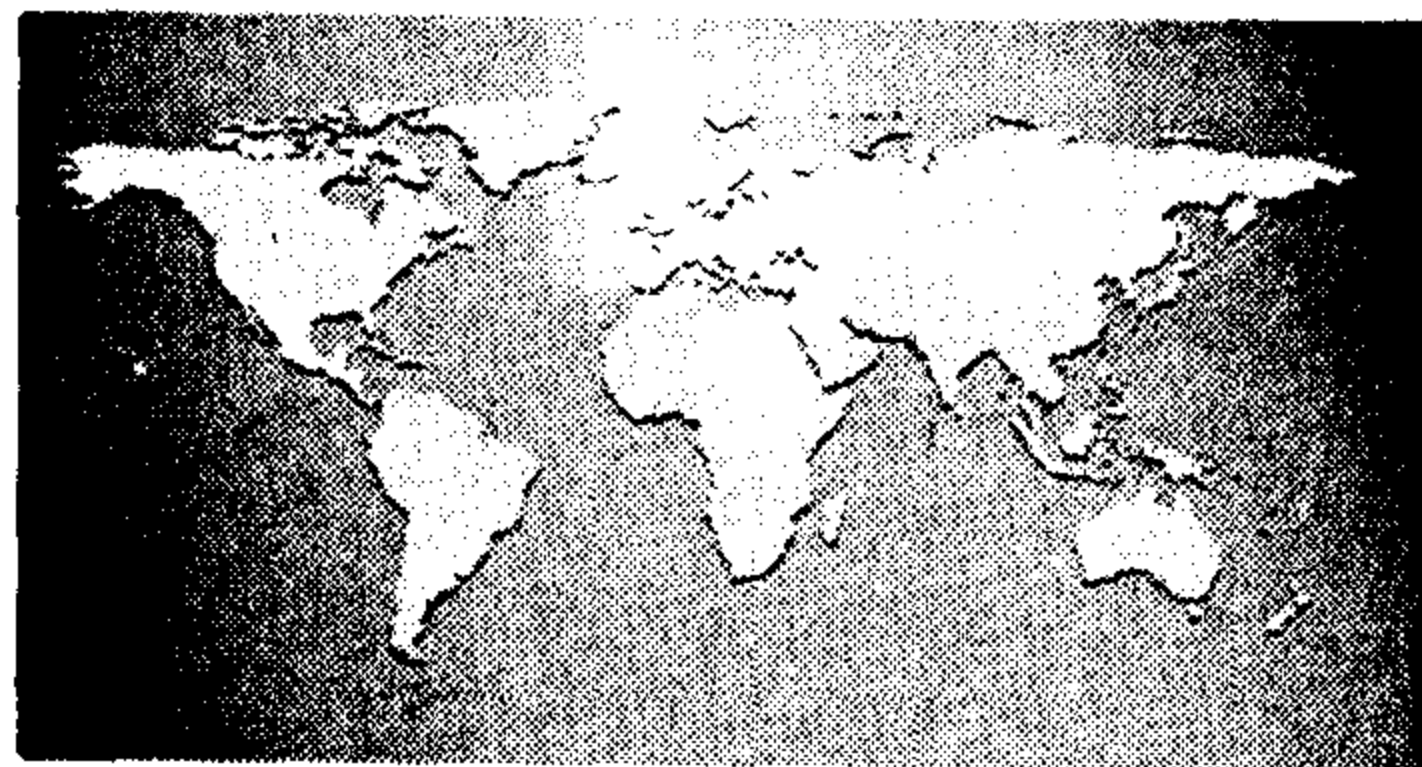
Part I

TRAVELLING

Unit 1. The Pleasure Of Travelling

GROUP TALK

1. Where in the world would you like to go? Why?



North America	Europe	Asia
Central America	Caribbean	Africa
South America	Middle East	Australia & South Pacific

2. What attracts you in this region?
 3. Do you like travelling?
 4. Is travelling your ideal way of spending holidays?

DIALOGUE 1

Read, memorize and dramatize the dialogue.

HOLIDAY PLANS

Interviewer: Where are you going for your holidays, Jane?

Jane: Our destination is Paris.

Interviewer: How are you going to travel?

Jane: We're going by sleeper to King's Cross, then across London to Victoria, down to Folkestone, on the steamer across the Channel, and then by train to Paris.

Interviewer: And how long are you going to spend there?

Jane: A week.

Interviewer: And where are you going to stay?

Jane: Not far from Moulin Rouge, at a hotel.

Interviewer: What are you going to do there?

Jane: Sightseeing. We're going to Versailles, and we want to see Notre Dame, Sacre Coeur, Tuileries.

Interview all your groupmates about their holiday plans.

TEXT 1

Vocabulary

holidays (BrE) — праздники, каникулы, отпуск
vacation (AmE) — отпуск, каникулы
resort — курорт
relaxation — расслабление, отдых
recreation — восстановление сил, отдых, развлечение
lodging — жилище, квартира
accommodation — помещение, жилье
entertainment — развлечение
to provide — предоставлять
to include — включать
facilities — средства обслуживания, удобства
amenities — удобства
quality — качество
destination — место назначения
to travel — путешествовать
travelling — путешествие
tourism — туризм

Read and translate the text.

RESORT

A resort is a place used for relaxation or recreation. As a result, people tend to seek out a resort for holidays or vacations. Generally, a resort

is distinguished by a large selection of activities, such as food, drink, lodging, sports, entertainment, and shopping.

A resort can commonly refer to two specific but similar places:

- Towns in which tourism or vacationing is a major part of the local activity but are usually not run by a single company (for example, the city of Antalia in Turkey).
- Vacation centres, usually run by a single company, which attempt to provide for all or most of a vacationer's wants while staying there (for example, Walt Disney World Resort).

The term "resort" is sometimes misused to identify a hotel that does not meet the requirements of a resort. However, a hotel is frequently the central feature of a resort.

Types of Resorts

Destination Resort

A resort is sometimes called a destination resort. This is a common usage when the facility provides food, drink, lodging, sports, entertainment, and shopping within the facility so that customers have no need to leave the facility once they arrive. Commonly these facilities are of higher quality than would be expected if one were to stay at a hotel or eat in a town's restaurant.

There are also special kinds of resorts depending upon your desired activities. The most popular resorts in the world are seaside resorts, spa resorts, ski resorts and golf resorts.

All-inclusive Resort

An all-inclusive resort is a resort that, besides providing all of the common amenities of a resort, charges a fixed price that includes most or all items. At a minimum, most inclusive resorts include lodging, unlimited food, drink, sports activities, and entertainment for the fixed price.

TEXT WORK

1. Pronounce correctly and transcribe. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Vacations, distinguish, entertainment, frequently, requirement, usage, seaside, inclusive, amenities, fixed.

2. Compare and mind the difference:

BrE	AmE
Centre	Center
Theatre	Theater
Travelling	Travelling
Traveller	Traveller
Programme	Program
Favour	Favor
Favourite	Favorite
Honour	Honor
Colour	Color
Neighbour	Neighbor
Ground floor	First floor

3. Answer the questions.

1. What is a resort?
2. Why do people go to a resort?
3. What does usually a resort provide?
4. What is the difference between a resort town and a vacation center?
5. What is the misuse of the term "resort"?
6. What is a "destination resort"?
7. What are the most popular types of resorts in the world?
8. What is an "all-inclusive resort"?

4. Give Russian equivalents to the following words and word combinations. Find and translate the sentences with them in the text.

Lodging, entertainment, commonly refer to, run by a single company, vacation centres, attempt to provide for all or most of a vacationer's wants, higher quality, all-inclusive resort.

5. Give English equivalents to the following words and word combinations.

Курорт отличается...; отпуск (2); неверно используется для обозначения; однако; основная черта курорта; предоставлять жилье, еду и развлечения; покупки; клиентам не нужно покидать территорию курорта; фиксированная цена; обычные удобства.

6. Make word combinations, translate them and find them in the text.

common	food
large	places
similar	price
higher	resorts
town's	activities
fixed	amenities
unlimited	restaurants
sports	quality
inclusive	selection

7. Find synonyms to the following words in the text.

Vacation, accommodation, choice, rest, tourism, often, facilities, usually.

8. Find antonyms to the following words in the text.

Seldom, to use, limited, minor, maximum, to depart, different.

9. Retell the text.

10. Agree or disagree with the following statements. Give your reasons.

<i>For agreement use:</i>	<i>For disagreement use:</i>
<i>I quite agree.</i>	<i>Actually, I don't agree.</i>
<i>I agree with you.</i>	<i>I don't think that's right.</i>
<i>I fully agree.</i>	<i>I don't think that's true (correct).</i>
<i>I think you are right.</i>	<i>Well, I am not sure if that's true (right, correct).</i>

- Holidays is time for relaxation and recreation.
- A resort is usually run by a single company.
- Unlimited food is the central feature of an all-inclusive resort.
- A good hotel can be called a resort, too.
- Sport activities are not included in the price for an all-inclusive resort.
- There are many towns and cities in the world than can be called resorts.
- There are not many all-inclusive resorts in the world.
- It is a good idea to have a holiday at an all-inclusive resort.

11. Speak about...

- Types of resorts in this country.
- The most popular resorts in Russia.
- The most popular resorts in Europe.
- Your favourite resorts.
- The resort you have recently visited.

12. Explain why?

- Ski resorts are very popular in Switzerland.
- Golf resorts are very popular in Norway.
- Seaside resorts are very popular in Russia.
- Spa resorts are popular all over the world.

13. Fill in the blanks with articles where necessary.

PROS AND CONS OF ALL-INCLUSIVE RESORTS

... frequent critique of ... all-inclusive resorts is that they do not help ... local economy or that they damage ... local environment. ... people who hold this ... view usually cite ... fact that most resorts are located in ... relatively remote areas away from ... major local population centres, making it hard for ... people staying there to see any ... local sights or patronize ... local business. They also say that ... most resorts are owned and run by ... large multinational corporations, such as Sandals or Hedonism Resorts, thus, diverting ... money away from ... local companies.

Proponents of ... all-inclusive resorts point to ... fact that these ... resorts usually bring ... large numbers of ... visitors to ... country, who must travel through ... local airports and ... towns to arrive at ... resort. They also state that ... resorts provide ... jobs in ... areas that are economically impoverished and away from ... major centres.

14. Divide into two groups. One group is for all-inclusive resorts.

The other group is against them. Discuss pros and cons of all-inclusive resorts.

15. Translate into English.

Курорты Турции предлагают разнообразные индивидуальные и семейные туры от 5 до 15 дней по системе «все включено». В гостинице вы можете выбрать стандартный двухкомнатный или однокомнатный номер с холлом, спальней, террасой или балконом,

и джакузи. Гостиница расположена в 50 метрах от берега моря и имеет собственный пляж.

В стоимость путевки входят проживание, питание, а также:

На пляже и около бассейна бесплатно: зонтики, шезлонги, матрасы, пляжные полотенца.

В номере: ванна, фен, центральный кондиционер, телевизор, телефон, мини-бар (прохладительные напитки + пиво), сейф (в номере, бесплатно), балкон.

На территории: основной ресторан, три ресторана по предварительной записи (A-la Carte), пять баров, открытый бассейн, закрытый бассейн, кабинет врача, парикмахерская, торговый ряд, прачечная, обмен валюты, прокат автомобилей, парковка, восемь конференц-залов.

Для детей: детский бассейн, детская площадка, мини-клуб (4—12 лет), няня.

Развлечения и спорт:

Бесплатно: тренажерный зал, джакузи, настольный теннис, волейбол на пляже, дартс, дискотека, 2 теннисных корта (днем), прокат теннисных ракеток и мячей.

За дополнительную плату: массаж, бильярд, Интернет-кафе, видеоигры, водные виды спорта.

16. Write an essay on the topic "Popular Resorts in ..." (choose any country you like).

ТЕХТ 2

Vocabulary

camp — лагерь

to camp — разбивать лагерь, стоять лагерем

country = countryside — сельская местность, деревня

nature — природа

planning — планирование

entirely — полностью

suddenly — вдруг, внезапно

notice — уведомление

to leave — покидать, уезжать

to get clear of — уйти от препятствий, избежать

traffic — уличное движение (интенсивное)

border — граница

farmer — фермер

tent — палатка

to pitch a tent — разбить палатку

sleeping bag — спальный мешок

equipment — снаряжение, оборудование

experience — опыт, жизненный опыт

essential — необходимый

to place an emphasis on... — придавать особое значение

to mean — значить

to pay attention to... — обращать внимание на...

to pay due regard to... — относиться с должным уважением к...

to have no idea — не иметь понятия, не иметь представления

to belong to a club — быть членом клуба

bell heather — вереск

pine — сосна

hill — холм

to bloom — цвести

sheen — блеск

lovely — приятный, красивый

memorable — памятный

attraction — прелесть, привлекательность

to book — заказывать заранее, бронировать

doubtful — сомнительный

hectic — беспокойный, напряженный

cleanliness — чистота

sanitation — санитария

motorway — шоссе

within — в пределах

driving rain — проливной дождь

to beat — *зд.*: превосходить

Read and translate the text.

CAMPING HOLIDAYS

The best holiday we ever had was entirely unplanned and unprepared for in any way. Two weeks holidays suddenly popped up and at a day's notice we took off for Scotland. We left London at six in the morning, the two boys being barely awake. We were early enough to get well clear of the London traffic and made good progress. We had a long lunch break just after Scotch Corner and were over the Border by 5 o'clock. By ex-

traordinary luck the first farmer we talked to was as affable as they come and we pitched our two tents and were eating our supper by seven.

That year Scotland was at its most beautiful. The bell heather was in full bloom and the hills had that lovely purple sheen. We took the travelling easily, making our way north through Perthshire toward Fort William. Most nights we camped in the wildest country without a soul around, sometimes on the heather or on the edge of a pine wood. I suppose it was the unplanned nature of the holiday and the sense of freedom of the whole expedition that made it so memorable. Of course the weather was good.

Camping has always had this particular attraction for us and although in more populous areas you may have to book your camping site, or do more advance planning, it is easily the most open and flexible way to organize a holiday, particularly in places like Scotland.

Our boys (9 and 11) are experienced campers and know the jobs they have to do when we pitch tents. They are city boys, but I think they will grow up with a real love of the countryside and nature, and this we count as of some importance in this day and age.

We have always found that buying cheap equipment for camping is a doubtful proposition, and though the most expensive is beyond our reach, good quality tents, medium-priced sleeping bags and sturdy cooking equipment are essential.

It's a good idea if you do a lot of camping to belong to one of the campers' clubs. There is an excellent monthly journal, *Camping and Outdoor Life*, which is full of ideas, information and news of other people's experiences. There is great emphasis placed these days on good camping — and this means paying attention to — of the campers, not being noisy at nights, paying due regard to cleanliness and questions of sanitation and so on.

Life in most towns gets increasingly hectic, noisy and unpleasant. But they need not be prisons. It is remarkable how even near such big cities as London, in between the great arterial roads and motorways, there are whole areas of beautiful, quiet and unspoiled countryside. Most Londoners have no idea of these quiet villages and lovely countryside that can be found within 30 miles of Charing Cross, and often much less.

The weather, of course, is a problem. Nobody cares much for camping in heavy, driving rain. But it is often possible to have a weekend camp in spring and summer and to feel all the better for it during the coming week.

And for summer holidays — well, what's to beat it?

(from Daily Mirror)

TEXT WORK

1. Pronounce correctly and transcribe. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Entirely, unprepared, barely, early, enough, affable, purple, whole, experienced, nature, doubtful, beyond, sturdy, excellent, increasingly arterial.

2. Answer the questions.

1. Why was the holiday unplanned and unprepared?
2. When did the family start the trip?
3. When did they manage to cross the Scotland's border?
4. Why was Scotland beautiful that time?
5. Where did the family spend nights?
6. What made the trip so memorable?
7. What does the family think of camping?
8. Who pitched the tents? Why?
9. What kind of equipment does the family buy?
10. Where can you find ideas for camping?
11. What behaviour is expected from campers?
12. Where can you find beautiful and quiet countryside for camping?
13. Is weather important for camping? Why?

3. Give Russian equivalents to the following words and word combinations. Find and translate sentences with them in the text.

Camping, entirely unplanned, at a day's notice, to get well clear of the London traffic, by extraordinary luck, as affable as they come, the bell heather, to bloom, lovely purple sheen, we took the travelling easily, we camped in the wildest country, more populous areas, to book your camping site, do more advance planning, experienced campers, city boys, a real love of the countryside and nature, sturdy cooking equipment are essential, to belong to one of the campers' clubs, *Camping and Outdoor Life*, great emphasis is placed on, other people's experiences, increasingly hectic, it is remarkable, arterial roads, unspoiled countryside, heavy driving rain, to feel all the better for, what's to beat it?

4. Give English equivalents to the following words and word combinations.

Поставить палатку; лучший отпуск, который у нас когда-либо был; мы отправились в Шотландию; едва проснувшиеся; достаточ-

но рано; интенсивное дорожное движение; хорошо продвинулись; очень удачно; двигались на север; по направлению к...; ни души вокруг; на опушке соснового леса; я полагаю; чувство свободы; всегда привлекало нас; самый гибкий способ организовать отдых; особенно в таких местах как...; вырасти; дешевое снаряжение; сомнительное предложение; за пределами наших возможностей; палатки хорошего качества; спальный мешок; ежемесячный журнал; обращать внимание на...; и так далее; шуметь ночью; дорога; шоссе; очень заботиться; не иметь представления; проливной дождь; лагерь на выходные дни; в течение предстоящей недели.

5. Make up word combinations, translate them and find them in the text.

unplanned	luck
pine	campers
extraordinary	journal
wildest	wood
populous	week
experienced	areas
monthly	rain
cooking	countryside
unspoiled	holidays
heavy	equipment
coming	country

6. Match the synonyms. Find them in the text.

stressful	necessary
particularly	especially
unplanned	countryside
edge	strong
doubtful	wonderful
sturdy	hectic
remarkable	beautiful
affable	magazine
village	beforehand
lovely	memorable
essential	border
in advance	questionable
unforgettable	unprepared
journal	polite

7. Make antonyms from the following words using negative prefixes: un-, in-, im-, il-, dis-, mis-, non-. Consult the dictionary if necessary. Translate the pairs. Find the words or their derivatives in the text.

Planned, prepared, legal, pleasant, spoiled, clear, affable, easy, possible.

8. Retell the text.

9. Fill in the gaps with suitable words and word combinations from the list below.

I THOUGHT IT WAS A SHARK

Last year I went to a small _____ town for a week's holiday. I usually take my holidays in June but last _____ I took it in August.

I didn't take many clothes with me: only a _____ of T-shirts, a _____ of shorts and my swimming costume. I went to the coast by _____. The journey took me about five _____.

I stayed in a small hotel near the _____. Every morning before _____ I ran down to the sea and had a quick swim. After breakfast I went _____ and sunbathing for the whole day. I love lying in the _____, so I got a good sun tan.

One day I tried scuba-diving and enjoyed every _____ of it. The sea was very calm and clean, the _____ view of the underwater life made an unforgettable impression in me.

On the other day I took a _____ and went fishing for the day. But when I jumped into the _____ to have a swim, a big crab bit me. It was so _____ and so painful, and I was so frightened that I _____ up and shouted for help. I thought it was a _____.

People ran from the beach into the water to _____ me. They thought that I was drowning or _____ dead. I got out of the water. In a very short time a _____ of people surrounded me. I was pale and felt dizzy. I was so ashamed. I thought it was a shark but it was only a _____.

But I still have a little _____ on my leg. Want to have a look?

Year, seaside, splendid, sudden, pair, maybe, sun, crab, boat, scar, to help, to jump, beach, minute, swimming, train, water, shark, crowd, couple, hour, breakfast.

10. Fill in the blanks with prepositions or adverbs.

Carine is a student ... Strasbourg University. She studies languages: English, German and Italian. Last summer she went ... Italy to have a good rest and practise the language. She toured Italy ... coach. She saw a lot ... interesting places. She ate spaghetti and ravioli ... Rome, had a boat trip ... Venice and stood ... the Leaning Tower ... Pisa. Carine took a lot ... photographs. The weather was nice and bright every day. She stayed ... Italy ... two weeks. She sent postcards and e-mails ... all her friends and relatives. She met a lot ... interesting people ... Italy and spoke Italian ... them. She also became friends ... students ... the travelling group, and they had a very good time together. It was a wonderful and useful vacation ... Carine.

11. Agree or disagree on the following statements. Give your reasons.

For agreement use:

That's an idea.

Sounds good.

Sounds like a good idea.

Yes, I agree with you.

Right you are.

For disagreement use:

That's not a good idea.

I don't think so.

I disagree...

Of course not.

Not for me.

1. Camping is the ideal way of spending a holiday.
2. Going to the seaside is boring. How can you do it every year?!
3. Holidays should be educational. The more you come to know, the better is your holiday.
4. The best way to rest is to fly to a remote island somewhere in the Pacific so nobody could bother you there.
5. Sport is the best rest. So mountain biking or mountain climbing is the right thing.
6. All these resorts are for elders, because can't get good entertainment there. That's why young people should rest in the city.

12. Speak about the way you like or dislike spending your holidays. Use the following phrases.

Personally, ...

As for me, ...

As a matter of fact, ...

I really enjoy ...(-ing)

I love ...(-ing)

I quite like ...(-ing)

I don't mind ...(-ing)

I don't really like ...(-ing)

I don't find ...(-ing) interesting

DIALOGUE 2

Read and dramatize the dialogue.

HOLIDAY PLANS

Mary: Hallo, Charles, it's me, Mary.

Charles: Hi, Mary, how are you?

Mary: I'm very well, thanks. How are you?

Charles: I'm fine.

Mary: Good. I am ringing to ask if you know anything about hotels in Brighton.

Charles: No, I am afraid I can't be of very much help to you there.

Mary: We are going to take the kids to the South this summer. I thought you've been to Brighton.

Charles: I have. Several times. But I've always taken a tent.

Mary: Oh, I see. That's not our case. We could never do it with George and Susan. They are terribly naughty, so we simply must find a nice hotel where they'll put up with noisy kids.

Charles: I think it's not a problem. Why not go to a travel agency? Or look at ads?

Mary: Well, yes. As a matter of fact I was reading one paper this morning. And I found one. It sounded marvellous. This hotel is right on the beach, and that's essential. The kids are really only interested in scrabbling in the sand and jumping into the sea every five minutes.

Charles: I know just how it is.

Mary: And the rooms have balconies facing the sea, so it would be possible for us to keep an eye on the kids while they are playing.

Charles: Sounds good. Is it expensive?

Mary: Rather. The food is good though — according to the advertisement — but they always say that.

Charles: Of course. The only way to find out is to go and try it. Or ask somebody who's been there. Oh, look, it's just occurred to me — Mr. and Mrs. Croft, who live across the street, have been to Brighton several times and they always stayed at the hotels.

Mary: Did they?

Charles: I'll ask them to give you a call.

Mary: That's very kind of you. They won't mind, will they?

Charles: They'll be pleased to help.

Mary: Thank you ever so much, Charles.

Charles: No thanks at all. Glad to help.

13. Role play.

THE BEST WAY TO SPEND A HOLIDAY

Student A	Student B
Ask advice from your partner	Give advice to your partner
<i>What would you advise me to...?</i>	<i>If you ask me...</i>
<i>Where do you advise me to...?</i>	<i>If I were you, I'd...because...</i>
<i>If you were me, what (where) would you...?</i>	<i>How about... (-ing)?</i>
<i>What do you think...?</i>	<i>Why not... (-ing)?</i>
<i>Really?</i>	<i>I really recommend you...</i>
<i>What can you recommend...?</i>	<i>From my own experience I can tell you...</i>
<i>Are you sure?</i>	

Swap roles.

14. You are a manager at a travel agency different people come to you to book a holiday trip. What will you recommend to these different customers? Use real travelling information, tourist's booklets, and advertisements.

1. A middle-class family with 2 children (5 and 7).
2. An elderly couple eager to explore the world.
3. Three students on a budget, looking for new places and new faces.
4. A middle-aged businessman with his wife, tired of 5-star hotels and beaches, wanting something different.
5. A just-married couple on the honeymoon.

15. Discuss:

1. Vacation should be educational. The best way to spend a vacation is to go to an ancient place like Rome or London. There you can see historic building and places.

2. We need holidays to escape from the hustle and bustle of the city, from the streets, traffic and the strain. So we need to go to a quiet remote village to have good rest.
3. A holiday is time to enjoy yourself. So entertainment should come first. Discos, parties and clubs every night — that's a good holiday for me.
4. My suggestion is a camping holiday. It is cheap and you can feel the real beauty of the nature that way. Besides, walking is good for health.
5. Doing nothing — that's a holiday. I need a place where I can just sit and relax with a good book in my hands looking at the sea in the distance.

16. Read and translate Laura's story. Put the verbs in the right forms.

A GOOD HOLIDAY

Last Easter I (to go) to New York for ten days with my best friend Julia. We (to be) friends since primary school, but we (not to meet) very often as we both (to have) families and busy schedules at work. So we (to decide) (to let) our husbands and children (to enjoy) themselves without us and (to fly) away.

We (to stay) in a hotel near Broadway. It (to be) freezing but we (not to mind) that because we (to go) shopping every day and we (to see) a different show every night. One day we (to climb) up the Empire State Building and on the other day we (to drive) to the Bronx Zoo. We (to have) delicious meals in all kinds of restaurants: Indian, Japanese, Italian and even Russian. We never (to stop)!

We (to forget) that we (to be) over forty and (to live) like teenagers again. It (to be) incredible!

DIALOGUE 3

Read, memorize and dramatize the dialogue.

A BAD HOLIDAY

Interviewer: So where did you go, Bruce?

Bruce: Well, I wanted a relaxing holiday because I was very stressed. So I went to the Caribbean.

Interviewer: Did you have a good time?

Bruce: No, I didn't. It was terrible!

Interviewer: Oh, dear. Well, tell me all about it. When did you go there?

Bruce: About two years ago.

Interviewer: Who did you go with?

Bruce: Nobody. I wanted to be alone. I really needed to relax.

Interviewer: And how did you get there?

Bruce: By plane to Barbados, then I got a small boat to the island.

Interviewer: Where did you stay?

Bruce: In a small hotel on the beach.

Interviewer: That sounds nice. What was the weather like?

Bruce: Terrible. It was too hot. It was 45° every day.

Interviewer: Wow, that's hot! What was the food like?

Bruce: It was awful. I couldn't eat it.

Interviewer: Really?

Bruce: Yes. It was always cold and badly-cooked.

Interviewer: What did you do?

Bruce: Nothing. I stayed in the hotel. It was too hot to go out. In the day and at night it was too dangerous. I just stayed in the hotel all the time.

Interviewer: So how long did you stay?

Bruce: Only for three days.

Interviewer: You went to the Caribbean for three days?

Bruce: Yes, on the third night I decided to go home. That was the end of my relaxing holiday. Only three days and it cost me a fortune!

Interviewer: Oh, dear.

17. Complete the dialogues.

1.

- Have you ever been to London?
- No, but...
- Did he go there by train?
- No, ...
- Was it better than by train?
- ...
- Where did he stay?
- ...
- Can he recommend us a good place to stay or at least a good accommodation agency?
- ...

— Thank you very much. I am so grateful to you. It's my first trip to London and I am so nervous.

— ...

2.

— ...?

— Yes, I am leaving on Saturday. I'd like to see the British Museum, the Tower and the Tower Bridge, Big Ben and other historical sights.

— ...

— I am staying at a hotel. It is a small Bed & Breakfast in the suburb.

— ...

— No, not at all. It's dormitory type for just £20 per night.

— ...

— Breakfast is included, and they have cooking facilities as well as a small restaurant next door.

— ...

— Mostly sightseeing.

— ...

— In two weeks.

— ...

— Thank you very much.

18. Interview your groupmates about their last holidays. Ask more questions.

Where?

When?

Who / with?

How / get there?

Where / stay? How long / stay?

What was the weather like? Hotel? Food? People?

What / do/ during the day? At night?

How much / spend? Buy any souvenirs?

/ meet anybody interesting?

/ a good time?

/ any problems?

19. Speak about...

1. What is good about going abroad for holidays?
2. What is good at spending you holidays at home?

3. Each time you go to a new place, you may come upon something unexpected. What can it be?
4. What type of holiday do you prefer?
5. What do you enjoy doing while on holidays?
6. Is there anything you can do only while on holidays and never during the rest of the year? What is it?

20. Translate into English.

- Куда ты поедешь этим летом?
- Я поеду в Египет. Я люблю плавать с аквалангом. Море там чистое. Это очень интересно.
- Разве там не жарко летом?
- Довольно жарко. Но я еще не решился. Я, может быть, возьму отпуск зимой и поеду в Египет в феврале. А какие у тебя планы?
- Я тоже еще не решил. Может быть, поеду по Европе.
- Поездом?
- Нет, на машине. Я люблю путешествовать на машине.
- Возьмешь с собой семью?
- Нет, я люблю путешествовать один. Дети поедут в летний лагерь, а жена — на море. Хочешь со мной?
- Очень любезно с твоей стороны. Я, пожалуй, все же поеду в Египет.

21. Write an essay on the topic "The Best Holidays/Vacation I Ever Had" or "The Worst Holidays/Vacation I Ever Had".

TEXT 3

Group work. Discuss and use the phrases from the box below.

1. Why do you think people need vacation?
2. How long do you think school vacation must be?
3. How many week's vacation a year should people have?

I think people need a break because...
Perhaps vacation should not be long. What I mean is...
We all need a vacation. The kind of thing I'm thinking about is...

Vocabulary

- surf** — прибой
- sidewalk** — тротуар
- to relax** — расслабляться, отдыхать
- to recharge** — восстанавливать силы
- career** — карьера
- cathartic clichés** — милые слуху избитые фразы
- to ignore** — игнорировать
- overwork** — перегрузка
- overbearing** — несносный
- overreaching** — недостижимый
- to let somebody off the hook** — отпустить кого-то
- available** — доступный, имеющийся в наличии / в распоряжении
- whim** — прихоть, каприз, причуда
- employer** — работодатель
- employee** — работник, сотрудник
- government** — правительство
- wealth** — богатство, благосостояние
- envy** — зависть
- to mandate** — диктовать
- time off** — отпуск, выходной
- hence** — следовательно, как следствие
- proliferation** — изобилие
- device** — устройство
- brain** — мозг
- to decompress** — отдохнуть, уменьшить давление
- despite** — несмотря на
- benefit** — выгода
- at smb's disposal** — в (чьем-то) распоряжении
- average** — средний, в среднем
- comparison** — сравнение
- corporate Europe** — сотрудники европейских корпораций
- pond** — пруд
- the point is...** — дело в том, что...
- intense** — интенсивный
- holistic** — целостный
- tangible** — осязаемый, материальный
- intangible** — неосязаемый, нематериальный
- the standard of living** — жизненный стандарт, уровень жизни
- monetary** — денежный

productivity — производительность
indispensable — незаменимый
brainwashing — «промывка мозгов»
to handing off — передавать, отдавать
colleague — коллега
to engender — порождать, вызывать
to downsize — уменьшаться в размере, сокращаться
vital — живой, смертный
workload — нагрузка
pressure — давление
fear — страх
volatile — непостоянный, изменчивый
to replace — заменять
to discover — обнаруживать
it boils down to... — все сводится к...
to negotiate — проводить переговоры
recognition — признание
commitment — обязательство
to deny — отрицать

THE VACATION SITUATION IN AMERICA

Ah, vacation. The sand, the surf. The mountains and hiking. The city streets and sidewalk cafes. I need a vacation. That's what most of the Americans think, but don't do.

They have heard all the sayings: Vacation is a great way to relax, recharge and come away with a fresh perspective that can drive your career to new heights. Too bad these cathartic clichés ignore the realities of the 2000s: overwork, overbearing managers and overreaching technology that never let American professionals off the hook.

The reality is that the amount of vacation time available to U.S. workers is at the whim of U.S. employers. While there may be some truth to the fact that a lack of government intervention in this matter is a major reason for the global dominance of the U.S. economy, they are at an extreme end of the work-life balance spectrum. And to many, the end is the wrong one.

Sure, U.S. production, wealth and work ethics are the envy of the industrial world. But, as a result, employers mandate how many weeks an employee can take off.

A dirty secret in corporate America however, is that a vacation is not a right, but a privilege. Hence the proliferation of PDA devices, laptops and mobile phones on beaches across California, Florida and Mexico.

Unlike his counterpart in Europe, it seems the U.S. worker has his job on the brain even when the time has come to decompress, be it at home or on vacation. Despite the evident benefits to the economy and overall productivity, is it worth it?

The average vacation time in America is 12 days while in Germany it is 35, in France — 37, and in Italy the norm is an astounding 42 days a year. This is unheard of in America. Even the British have 28 days at their disposal, which means that one of the most stringent European nations in terms of time off provides twice as much as the average American company.

Another important consideration in this comparison is the fact that during certain times of the year, corporate Europe as a whole takes a vacation. Try doing business with a European company in August or in second half of December and early January, for example. We are dealing with a totally different mentality on the other side of the pond.

The point is the ever-elusive balance of work and life. U.S. business has a reputation for being all work and no play, while business in Europe is less intense and more holistic.

Many Europeans however, would cite that intangible “quality of life” metric. The standard of living in the U.S. may be the highest in the industrial world in terms of monetary compensation, but what about family time, personal time and stress levels?

Another point is that technology and a major push by industry for increased productivity have convinced many folks they are indispensable.

People don't take long vacations — if they take them at all — because companies have been “brainwashing” employees into feeling guilty about handing off their work to colleagues. They have engendered a sense of insecurity. Now there are all these narcissistic worker bees who, when companies downsize, are shocked because they think, ‘Hey, I'm vital.’

Many workers believe that their workload simply doesn't allow them to take all the time off.

Others say it is pressure or fear that keeps them from using all their vacation, not their workload. In the volatile labor economy of the 21st century American workers are not using their vacation days, because they're scared of being replaced while they're away or that their employer would discover that they are not indispensable.

It boils down to personal choice. You can have your cake and eat it too in America. Because government does not regulate vacation time here, there is always the possibility of negotiating more days off once you gain a certain position of recognition in the company.

No matter how many people applaud the American work ethic and commitment, nobody can deny the tangible and intangible benefits of a vacation to workers with full, busy lives.

By Ian Harrison

TEXT WORK

1. Pronounce correctly and transcribe. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Recharge, clichés, ignore, overbearing, whim, extreme, wealth device, astounding, stringent, intangible, quality, industry, increased, guilty, engendered, insecurity, folks, pressure, volatile, scared, government, applaud.

2. Answer the questions.

1. Why do people need vacation?
2. What are the realities of the 2000s?
3. Who regulates the amount of vacation time in the US?
4. What is the major reason for the global dominance of the US according to the author's opinion?
5. Where is America on work-balance spectrum, the author thinks?
6. Why does industrial world envy America?
7. Why do you see the proliferation of computer devices on the resort beaches?
8. What is the average vacation time in America and in European countries?
9. When does all corporate Europe take vacations?
10. What is the main difference between business in Europe and America?
11. What does the author say about the standard of living in the USA?
12. What are the major reasons why American workers don't take long vacation?
13. What is the way to get more vacation time in America?

3. Give Russian equivalents to the following words and word combinations. Find them in the text and translate sentences with them.

Sidewalk café, to come away with a fresh perspective, to drive the career to new heights, cathartic clichés, overbearing managers, at the whim of U.S. employers, a major reason for the global dominance, at an

extreme end of the work-life balance spectrum, dirty secret, corporate America, PDA device, laptop, unlike his counterpart in Europe, overall productivity average vacation time, astounding 42 days a year, stringent European nation, in this comparison, totally different mentality, on the other side of the pond, ever-elusive balance of work and life, less intense and more holistic, intangible metric, quality of life, in terms of monetary compensation, a major push by industry, increased productivity, "brainwashing" employees, to engender a sense of insecurity, narcissistic worker bees, I'm vital, I'm not indispensable, workload, volatile labor economy, to be scared of being replaced, it boils down to personal choice, a certain position of recognition in the company, American work ethic and commitment.

4. Give English equivalents to the following words and word combinations.

Городские улицы; прибой; мне нужно отдохнуть; отличный способ отдохнуть и восстановить силы; реальность 2000-х годов; количество дней на отпуск; имеется в наличии / в распоряжении; недостаток правительственного вмешательства; этика работы; промышленный мир; зависть; в результате; отпуск — это не право, а привилегия; в отличие от европейских коллег; портативный компьютер (ноутбук); мобильный телефон; сотрудники думают о работе даже во время отпуска; в их распоряжении; важная мысль; в этой связи; во второй половине декабря; дело в том, что...; личное время; уровень стресса; многие люди думают, что они незаменимы; чувствовать себя виноватым; компании уменьшаются (сокращаются); бояться (2); регулировать время отпуска; все сводится к личному выбору; не важно; никто не отрицает; материальная и нематериальная выгода; это неслыханно для Америки.

5. Make up word combinations. Find them in the text and translate the sentences.

sidewalk	dominance
average	choice
evident	time
global	perspective
industrial	benefit
work	end
major	reason
fresh	position
government	world

extreme	intervention
personal	café
certain	commitment

6. What are the full forms of these words?

PDA, US, USA, EU, GB, UK, UN, UNESCO, FIFA

7. Match pairs of synonyms and translate them. Find them in the text.

co-worker	job
in this matter	consideration
overall	worker
work	in this comparison
employee	people
despite	in spite of
mobile phone	general
folks	cell phone
thought	colleague

8. Match pairs of antonyms and translate them. Find them in the text.

minor	end
similar	insecurity
nobody	different
beginning	wrong
right	major
city	short
long	everybody
security	countryside

9. Describe the vacation situation in America in 5—7 sentences (make a summary of the text).

10. Agree or disagree on the following statements. Give your reasons.

For agreement use:

I agree.

I fully agree.

I am with you here.

I suppose it is.

I expect it should be.

For disagreement use:

I don't agree.

I don't think so.

I disagree...

Nothing of the kind.

Not in the least.

- Everybody needs a vacation.
- Vacation is a great way to relax and recharge.
- The realities of the 2000s are overworking, overbearing managers and overreaching technology.
- U.S. economy has the global dominance.
- A lack of government intervention is a major reason for the global dominance of the U.S. economy.
- Americans are at an extreme end of the work-life balance spectrum. And the end is the wrong one.
- U.S. production, wealth and work ethics are the envy of the rest of industrial world.
- Vacation is not a right, but a privilege.
- It seems the U.S. worker has his job on the brain even when the time has come to decompress, be it at home or on vacation. Despite the evident benefits to the economy and overall productivity, is it worth it?
- It is a very good practice that there are certain times of the year when corporate Europe as a whole takes a vacation.
- U.S. business is all work and no play.
- The standard of living in the U.S. is the highest in the industrial world in terms of monetary compensation.
- People can't take long vacations in the US.
- Nobody can deny the tangible and intangible benefits of a vacation to workers with full, busy lives.

11. Discuss:

- You work hard all the year round for your vacation. You have earned it, why not take it?
- From a macro point of view it is beneficial to live in the one country that can lay claim to superpower status. It helps to have a higher standard of living per capita than the rest of the world. But what kind of life is mandatory overtime, 50+-hour weeks and less than two weeks vacation a year? By the time you reach retirement, do you really reap what you have sown (сеять)? Do you even have the strength or will to?
- With the advent of mobile phones, Internet cafes, pagers and personal digital assistants (PDAs), co-workers and bosses can track us down just as easily whether we're across the street or halfway around the globe. Staying in touch with the office during a vacation is not only widely accepted, it's often expected. Sure, vaca-

tioners have the option to leave all their gadgets behind, but many Americans choose to bring them along. What about you?

DIALOGUE 4

Read and dramatize the dialogue.

ARE WE GOING ANYWHERE?

John: Where are you going to spend your holidays this year?

Jack: We may go abroad. I am not sure. My wife wants to go to Spain. I'd like to go there too. We can't make up our minds.

John: Will you travel by train or by air?

Jack: We may travel by train.

John: It's cheaper, isn't it?

Jack: It may be cheaper, but it takes a long time.

John: I am sure you will enjoy yourselves.

Jack: Don't be so sure. We may not go anywhere. My wife always worries too much. Who is going to look after the dog? Who is going to look after the house? Who is going to look after the garden? We have this problem every year. In the end we stay at home and look after everything!

11. Find out the meanings of the underlined words and word combinations from the context.

12. Translate into English.

Последние исследования показывают, что работники во всем мире все меньше и меньше используют свой отпуск полностью. И в наихудшей ситуации на сегодняшний день оказалась Америка. Согласно прогнозам в этом году 14 % сотрудников не пойдут в отпуск совсем и более 30 % не используют отпуск полностью.

43-летний историк Гордон Джонсон говорит, что не знает, какой отпуск ему положен, и не заботится об этом, так любит свою работу и не знает, что бы он делал во время отпуска. Конечно, он ездит всей семьей на неделю к морю. Но дело в том, что когда он возвращается, на него наваливается столько работы, что он начинает сожалеть о том, что отдыхал.

Многие американцы не уходят в отпуск из-за боязни потерять работу. Экономические кризисы последнего десятилетия подорвали уверенность многих работников в их незаменимости, поэтому

они всегда хотят быть на виду, когда принимаются важные решения. И даже когда они все-таки едут отдыхать, они берут с собой свои компьютеры и телефоны и всегда остаются на связи с офисом.

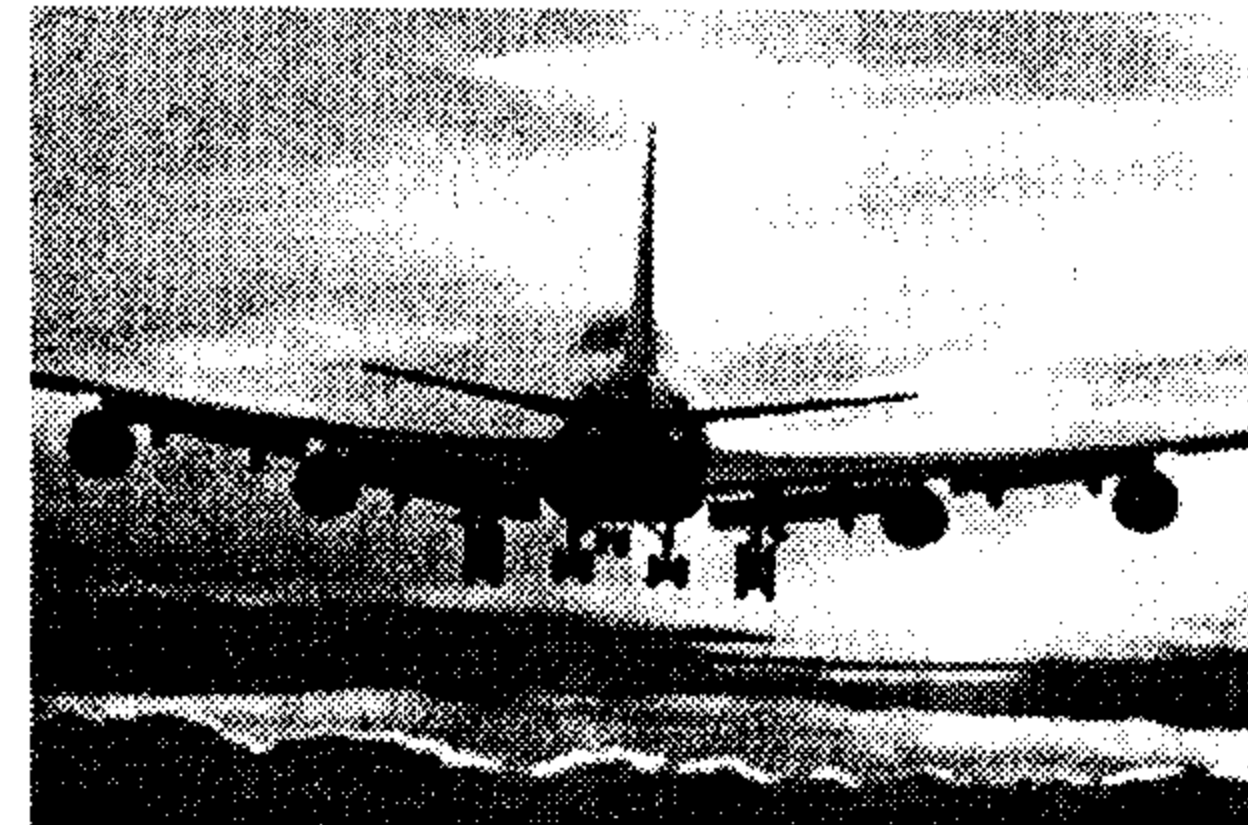
Многие исследователи говорят, что США — единственная страна, в которой люди отдыхают, чтобы потом работать еще более усердно. Во всем мире люди работают для того, чтобы отдыхать.

PROJECT WORK

1. You are a travel agent. Recommend your customers a **particular type of holiday**. Make the **presentation** to your group. Try to be different from your friends and groupmates. Make your presentation as attractive as possible. Convince your customer to choose the holiday you recommend.

2. Carry out your own survey "**Vacation Situation in Russia**". Write an essay on this topic using real information. Present your survey to the group.

Unit 2. Air Travel



GROUP TALK

Have you ever travelled by air?

If yes:

1. When was it?
2. Where did you go?
3. Who travelled with you?
4. How long was your flight?
5. What kind of plane was it?
6. What did you do on board?
7. Did you enjoy your flight?
8. Would you like to travel by air again? Why?

If no:

1. Would you like to travel by air? Why?
2. What are advantages and disadvantages of air travel, do you think?

TEXT 1

Vocabulary

airport — аэропорт

plane = aircraft — самолет

crew — команда

steward, stewardess = flight attendant — стюарт, стюардесса

to fly on the plane — лететь на самолете (в качестве пассажира)

to fly a plane — лететь на самолете (в качестве пилота)

flight — рейс, полет

to check in — зарегистрироваться

check-in desk or check-in counter — стойка/ окошко регистрации

luggage = baggage — багаж

hand luggage — ручная кладь

excess — избыток, перевес

trolley — тележка на колесиках

conveyer belt — транспортер, конвейер

customs — таможня

to check — проверять

check — проверка

to depart — уезжать

departure — отправление

departure lounge — зал ожидания

departure board — табло отправления

departure gate — выход на перрон, выход на посадку

to arrive — прибывать

arrival — прибытие

to board — производить посадку на самолет

on board — на борту

aisle — проход между рядами кресел

cockpit — кабина пилотов (экипажа самолета)

runway — взлетно-посадочная полоса

to take off — взлетать

to fasten the seat-belts — пристегнуть ремни

turbulence — турбулентность

Read and translate the text.

AIR TRAVEL

When travelling by air you have to get to the airport early in order to check in about an hour before your flight. If you have a lot of luggage, you can put it on a trolley and push it to the check-in desk where someone will check your ticket and weigh your luggage. If you have excess luggage, you have to pay for it, and it can be expensive. Your heavy luggage is put on a conveyer belt and carried away. A light bag is classified as hand luggage and you can take it with you on the plane.

Then you go to the customs. An immigration officer looks at your passport and a security guard checks your hand luggage before you go into the departure lounge to wait till your flight is announced. If you want to, you can buy some goods at the airport duty free stores. When you see on the departure board or hear an announcement that your plane is now boarding, you go through the departure gate, and then there is sometimes

a security check before you actually get on the plane. When all the passengers are on board and when the captain and his crew are ready in the cockpit, the plane moves to the end of the runway. Finally, permission is received from the control tower and the plane moves faster and faster and finally takes off.

Flying is fun. I like being in a big aircraft. The cabin crew (stewards and stewardesses or flight attendants) are always very friendly and helpful. They walk up and down the aisle bringing meals and drinks; and if the flight is going through some turbulence, they warn everybody that it might be a bit bumpy and ask us to fasten our seat-belts. On a long flight I like listening to music through the headphones available to all passengers or watch a video, which is always available, too, and sometimes I have a sleep. I enjoy it all so much that as soon as I get off the plane I want to go on the next flight again.

TEXT WORK

1. Pronounce correctly and transcribe. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Airport, luggage, light, crew, aisle, fasten, warn, flight.

2. Answer the questions.

1. Why do passengers have to come to the airport an hour before the departure?
2. What does a passenger do if he/she has a lot of luggage?
3. What do you have to do if you have excess luggage?
4. Where do passengers wait for their plane?
5. What is a duty free store?
6. What happens when all the passengers are on board?
7. Does the writer like travelling by air? Why?
8. How does he spend time during the flight?

3. Give Russian equivalents to the following words and word combinations. Find and translate sentences with them in the text.

To put luggage on a trolley, excess luggage, conveyer belt, light bag, immigration officer, departure lounge, departure board, aircraft, security check control tower, cabin crew, to warn everybody, bumpy, to get off the plane.

4. Give English equivalents to the following words and word combinations.

Чтобы зарегистрироваться, проверить билет, взвесить багаж, ручная кладь, таможня, объявлять рейс, магазин беспошлинной торговли, пассажир, на борту, экипаж, взлет, взлетно-посадочная полоса, стюардесса (2), проход между рядами, войти в зону турбулентности, пристегнуть ремни, слушать музыку через наушники.

5. Make word combinations, translate them and find them in the text.

flight	check
security	lounge
security	store
hand	board
departure	attendant
departure	guard
duty free	luggage

6. Make up your sentences using these words and word combinations.

7. Match the synonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

plane	friendly
flight attendant	to get on the plane
check-in counter	to enjoy
nice	stewardess
to depart	check-in desk
to board	aircraft
to like very much	to leave

8. Match the antonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

to arrive	to land
to take off	pilot
to get on	smooth
passenger	window seat
aisle seat	departure
bumpy	to depart
arrival	to get off

9. Retell the text.

10. Fill in the blanks with prepositions where necessary.

RECORDED ANNOUNCEMENT

This is a recorded announcement. British Airways main office is open ... 9.00 a.m. ... 5.30 p.m. ... Monday ... Friday and ... 9.00 a.m. ... 1.00 p.m. ... Saturdays. The office is closed all day Sunday. ... urgent flight information, please phone ... the British Airways flight information desk ... Heathrow or Gatwick airport.

11. Fill in the blanks with articles where necessary.

SPECIAL ANNOUNCEMENT 1

This is ... special announcement for ... passengers on ... flight BA 617 to ... London. Due to ... technical problems ... flight is delayed. ... Boarding time is now 12.15 at ... Gate number 21. I repeat. ... Flight BA 617 to ... London. ... New boarding time is 12.15 at ... Gate number 21. ... British Airways would like to apologize for ... inconvenience.

12. Fill in the blanks with the right words from the list below.

SPECIAL ANNOUNCEMENT 2

Ladies and _____, attention, please! British Airways regrets to _____ the cancellation of Flight BA 564 to London due to _____ difficulties. Will all the _____ now awaiting the departure of this flight please _____ the British Airways ground hostess at the _____ desk in the transit lounge? Will passengers who are booked on this _____ from Geneva and are now waiting in the departure _____, also go to the information desk in the transit area? A ground _____ is waiting by Gate No 1 to escort you. _____ you!"

Contact, gentlemen, flight, announce, hostess, passengers, thank, technical, information, lounge.

13. Where and why do you hear these announcements?

14. What other announcement can you hear at the airport?

15. Where can you hear or use these phrases? Make up your own conversations using these phrases.

1. The British Airways flight to Milan is now boarding at Gate 47.
2. Excuse me. How much are the tickets for the Mozart concert?
3. What's your seat, madam? — It's 17G.
4. They're sixty pounds each.
5. How often are the buses to the city centre? — Every 15 minutes.
6. A cheese sandwich and a coke, please.
7. That's £2.90, thanks.

16. Where do you go first when you travel by plane? Put these places in the right order:

1. passport control;
2. baggage claim;
3. the check-in-desk;
4. the plane;
5. the arrival hall;
6. the departure lounge.

Describe what you do at each place.

17. Read and translate the announcements you can hear on board the plane. When do you hear these announcements?

ON BOARD THE PLANE

1. "Good afternoon, ladies and gentlemen. Captain Gibson and his crew welcome you aboard British Airways Flight 178 to New York. We will be flying at a height of 30000 feet. Our speed will be approximately 600 miles an hour. We'll land in New York in five and a half hours. The temperature in New York is now minus 3°C. In a few minutes you'll be able to see the Irish Coast. Our flight attendants will serve lunch in half an hour. Thank you for your attention."

2. "Good morning, ladies and gentlemen. On behalf of Captain Sonnleitner and his crew I would like to welcome you aboard this Swissair DC-9 aircraft. Our flying time to Geneva will be approximately an hour and twenty minutes. During the flight we shall be serving you with light refreshments. Please place your light luggage in the overhead racks, observe the no smoking signs, fasten your seat belts and ensure that your seats are in the vertical position for the take off. For your safety and comfort during the flight you are requested to read the safety instructions which you will find in front of your seat."

3. "Ladies and gentlemen, may I have your attention, please. In a few minutes we shall be landing at Heathrow airport in London. Will you please return to your seats, place them in the vertical position and fasten your seat belts. Please, remain seated until the aircraft has come to a complete stop and remember to take all your hand luggage with you. We hope you have had a pleasant flight and that we shall soon have the pleasure of welcoming you aboard again. Thank you."

18. You are a flight attendant. Make announcements to passengers.

1. Welcome them aboard.
2. Explain the safety rules.
3. Announce a meal.
4. Give information about the flight (name and make of aircraft, altitude, speed, temperatures on board, overboard and in the city of destination, itinerary).
5. Warn about turbulence.
6. Announce landing.

DIALOGUE 1

Read, memorize and dramatize the dialogue.

AIR TICKETS

Agent: East-West Airways, Myra Davis speaking.

Roger: This is Roger Neal. Can you please tell me how much it costs to fly from Los Angeles to Hong Kong?

Agent: One way or round trip?

Roger: Round trip.

Agent: The first class round trip fare is \$4482, and the business class fare is \$2402. There's also an economy fare of \$1486, but certain restrictions apply to that.

Roger: The economy fare sounds good. What are the restrictions?

Agent: You must stay at least six days and purchase your ticket in advance. Also, the number of seats at that price is limited. When will you be travelling?

Roger: Next month. I'd like to leave on the 15th and return on the 31st.

Agent: We have a flight that leaves Los Angeles at 2.00 p.m. on the 15th and arrives in Hong Kong at 4.00 a.m. on the 16th. The return flight leaves Hong Kong at 9.00 a.m. on the 31st and gets back at 10.00 a.m. the same day.

Roger: Are they nonstop?

Agent: No, both flights stop in Tokyo for about three hours. According to the computer, there are still seats available on those flights at the lowest fare. Would you like me to make reservations for you?

Roger: Yes, please.

Agent: Just a moment. *(Pause.)* Thank you for waiting. You have reservations on Flight 78 from Los Angeles to Hong Kong on the 15th, returning on the 31st on Flight 21. The tickets must be paid for on or before the 8th.

Roger: I won't need to confirm my reservations, will I?

Agent: Yes, passengers with reservations on international flights should call to confirm them 72 hours in advance.

Roger: All right. Thank you for your help.

19. Role play.

Student A	Student B
1. You are manager. You need to fly on business to London next week. Call the airline's agent and reserve your tickets. Find out the information about schedules and prices.	1. You are an airline ticket agent. Receive a call from a customer. Use real information.
2. You've reserved a flight to Munich next Friday, but your plans changed. Call the airline. Change the date of your flight.	2. You are an airline ticket agent. Receive a call from a customer. Use real information.
3. You are in the lobby of the airport. Suddenly you hear an announcement that your flight is delayed. Find out why there is a delay and how long you are going to wait. Ask what the airline is going to do about meals and hotel accommodations if the plane is delayed for a long time.	3. You are a host/hostess of Trans World Airlines. The flight L115 to London is delayed due to the heavy fog in London. If the weather doesn't change for better in an hour the flight will be redirected to Manchester and the Airlines will provide free shuttle to London or a hotel for those who won't want to go straight to London the same day. Explain the information to passengers.

Swap the roles.

DIALOGUE 2

Read, memorize and dramatize the dialogue. Find the meaning of the underlined words and phrases from the context and translate them.

AT THE CHECK-IN COUNTER

- Hostess:** Good morning. Your ticket and your passport, please.
Passenger: Here you are.
Hostess: Do you want a window seat or an aisle seat?
Passenger: An aisle seat, please.
Hostess: Put your luggage on the scales. Is it your only bag?
Passenger: Yes, it is.
Hostess: We have 20 kilos luggage allowance on both domestic and international flights. Your bag is 2 kilos overweight. You have to pay excess luggage charge.
Passenger: Oh, really? But it's only 2 kilos.
Hostess: I know, sir. That's the rule. \$5.30, please.
Passenger: All right.
Hostess: Here's your receipt, your ticket and your boarding pass, your passport and your luggage claim check. The flight will be boarding at Gate 56 in 5 minutes.
Passenger: Where is it?
Hostess: Just round the corner to your right. Enjoy your flight.
Passenger: Thank you very much.

20. Role play.

Student A	Student B
<i>You are a passenger. Check-in for your flight. Ask for window or aisle seat at your preference. Ask for boarding and arriving information.</i>	<i>You are an airline host/hostess. Check-in the passengers.</i>

Swap the roles.

21. Discuss:

1. What are advantages and disadvantages of travelling by air?
2. What are the pleasures and discomforts of travelling by air?

22. Speak about your flying experience.

23. Explain why?

1. Many people prefer flying to other means of transportation.
2. Many people are afraid of flying.

24. Put the verbs in the right forms. Translate the story.

Yesterday afternoon I (go) to the airport to meet Pierre who (come) from Paris to spend a few days with me. I (arrive) at the airport at two o'clock, (go) to a waiting room and (sit) down. When it (announce) that the plane (be) an hour late, I (decide) to go for a walk, I (just, walk) away from the building, when I (see) an old friend coming towards me. We (talk) for a moment, then (go) to the bar, where we (have) a few drinks. Suddenly I (remember) Pierre. We (rush) to the information desk. I (tell) that the plane from Paris (arrive) 40 minutes earlier. I (hurry) out of the building, (get) into my car and (drive) away quickly. When I (arrive) home I (find) Pierre sitting on his suitcase outside my front door.

25. Translate into English.

- Доброе утро! Скажите, пожалуйста, есть ли рейс на Стокгольм 25 октября?
- Да, есть два рейса — утром и вечером.
- Когда утренний рейс?
- В 6 часов утра.
- Нет, это слишком рано. У меня будет бессонная ночь, если я полечу этим самолетом. Когда вечерний рейс?
- В 8 часов вечера.
- Когда самолет прибывает в Стокгольм?
- В 10 часов.
- Это время меня устраивает. Есть ли билеты на этот рейс?
- Да, есть несколько билетов первого класса.
- Пожалуйста, один билет туда и обратно. Я возвращаюсь 30 октября. Хотя, нет, я не уверен, сделайте обратный билет с открытой датой.

26. Write an essay on the topic "My Flying Experience".

TEXT 2

Read and translate the text.

Vocabulary

airline — авиакомпания
jet — реактивный самолет
flight — полет, рейс
non-stop — беспосадочный
airfield — летное поле
runway — взлетно-посадочная полоса
wheels — шасси
to take off — взлетать
food truck — грузовик с продуктами
to reel — кружиться, качаться, шататься
entire — полностью
rough — резкий, ненастный, бурный, опасный
snowbound — застрял в снегу
schedule — расписание
delay — задержка
to cancel — отменить
to fail to do — не смочь что-то сделать
to exhaust — истощить(ся)
TWA (Trans World Airlines) — название авиакомпании
air traffic control — командно-диспетчерский пункт
traffic — поток, движение
to adjoin — прилегать
route — маршрут
to orbit — вращаться, летать вокруг
near — близко, рядом
fuel — топливо
lean — худощавый
powerhouse of disciplined energy — удивительно собранный и энергичный
to peer — всматриваться
maintenance — поддержание, содержание, обслуживание
sleeping quarters — комнаты отдыха
emergency — чрезвычайная ситуация
snow shift — *зд.*: расчистка снега
chart — таблица

motorized snowfighting equipment — снегоочистительные машины
crew — команда
shovel — лопата, ковш, снегоразгребатель
liquor — алкогольные напитки
to drop by — заходить

Read and translate the text.

AIRPORT

6:30 P.M. (CST)

At half past six on a Friday evening in January, Lincoln International Airport, Illinois, was functioning, though with difficulty.

The airport was reeling — as was the entire Midwestern United States — from the roughest winter storm in half a dozen years. The storm had lasted three days.

A United Air Lines food truck, loaded with two hundred dinners, was lost and probably snowbound somewhere on the airport perimeter. A search for the truck — in driving snow and darkness — had so far failed.

United's Flight III — a non-stop DC-8 for Los Angeles, which the food truck was to service — was already several hours behind schedule. Similar delays, for varying reasons, were affecting at least a hundred flights of twenty other airlines using Lincoln International.

On the airfield, runway three zero was out of use, blocked by an Aero-Mexican jet — a Boeing 707 — its wheels deep in wet ground beneath snow, near the runway's edge. Two hours of intensive effort had failed to get the big jet moved. Now, Aero-Mexican, having exhausted its own local resources, had appealed to TWA for help.

Air Traffic Control, because of the loss of runway three zero, had instituted flow control procedures, limiting the volume of incoming traffic from adjoining air route centers at Minneapolis, Cleveland, Kansas City, Indianapolis, and Denver. Despite this, twenty incoming flights were orbiting, some nearing low fuel limits.

In the main passenger terminal, chaos predominated. Terminal waiting areas were crowded with thousands of passengers from delayed or canceled flights. Baggage, in piles, was everywhere.

The wonder was, Mel Bakersfeld thought, that anything was continuing to operate at all.

Mel, airport general manager — lean, noisy and a powerhouse of disciplined energy — was standing by the Snow Control Desk, high in the control tower. He peered out into the darkness.

Maintenance snow crews were nearly exhausted. Within the past few hours several men had been ordered home, though they had already used sleeping quarters at the airport provided for just this kind of emergency.

At the Snow Control Desk near Mel, Danny Farrow — at other times an assistant airport manager, now snow shift supervisor — was calling Maintenance Snow Center by radiophone.

Danny was seated at the Snow Desk, which was not really a desk at all, but a wide, three-position console. In front of Danny and his two assistants — one on either side — was a battery of telephones and radios. Surrounding them were maps, charts, and bulletin boards recording the state and location of every piece of motorized snowfighting equipment, as well as men and supervisors. There was a separate board for banjo teams — moving crews with individual snow shovels.

Mel said, "That United flight finally took off, didn't it? Without food."

Danny Farrow answered without looking up. "I hear the captain put it to the passengers. Told them it'd take an hour to get another truck, that they had a movie and liquor aboard, and the sun was shining in California. Everybody voted to get the hell out. I would, too."

Tanya Livingston was a passenger relations agent for Trans America, and a special friend of Mel's.

In a note brought by messenger Tanya suggested that they should have coffee together. He would stop at his office first, then, on his way to the terminal — Mel thought — he would drop by Trans America to see her. The thought excited him.

By Authur Hailey

TEXT WORK

1. Pronounce correctly and transcribe. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Airport, though, entire, roughest, search, snowbound, somewhere, failed, flight, schedule, varying, airfield, Boeing 707, beneath, exhaust, resources, appeal, procedures, adjoining, route, chaos, disciplined, lean, maintenance, quarters, emergency, supervisor, bulletin boards, piece, snowfighting, banjo, crew, shovel, liquor, messenger, excited.

2. Answer the questions.

1. Why was Lincoln International Airport functioning with difficulty that Friday evening?

2. What happened to a United Air Lines food truck?
3. What was the result of the search for the truck?
4. What happened to the United's non-stop flight for Los Angeles?
5. What was wrong with the runway three zero?
6. What happened to the Aereo-Mexican jet?
7. What did the Air Traffic Control do because of the loss of runway three zero? What was the result of that?
8. What was the situation in the mail passenger terminal?
9. Who is Mel Bakersfeld?
10. What did Mel look like?
11. What did Mel think of the situation at the airport?
12. Who is Danny Farrow?
13. What were Mel and Danny doing?
14. What did the snow desk look like?
15. What did Mel inquire about?
16. What did Danny answer?
17. Who was Tanya Livingston?
18. What did she suggest?
19. How did Mel know about it?
20. What did he decide to do?
21. How did he feel about it?

3. Give Russian equivalents to the following words and word combinations. Find and translate sentences with them in the text.

Functioning, though with difficulty, the airport was reeling, the roughest winter storm in half a dozen years, loaded with two hundred dinners, snowbound somewhere on the airport perimeter, in driving snow and darkness, failed, a non-stop flight, on the airfield, out of use, wheels deep in wet ground beneath snow, get the big jet moved, from adjoining air route centers, incoming flights, terminal waiting areas, canceled flights, in piles, the wonder was, continuing to operate at all; lean, noisy and a powerhouse of disciplined energy; Snow Control Desk, were nearly exhausted, several men had been ordered home, assistant airport manager, snow shift supervisor; a battery of telephones, maps, charts, and bulletin boards; a separate board, everybody voted to get the hell out, a passenger relations agent, in a note brought by messenger, the thought excited him.

4. Give English equivalents to the following words and word combinations.

Снегопад продолжался; грузовик с едой; поиски грузовика; отставать от расписания на несколько часов; подобные задержки рейсов; по различным причинам; вылеты; авиакомпания; взлетно-посадочная полоса; потеря взлетно-посадочной полосы 3—0; истощить свои внутренние ресурсы; попросить о помощи; диспетчерская служба аэропорта; ограничить количество принимаемых рейсов; генеральный менеджер аэропорта; несмотря на это; у них заканчивалось горючее; главное здание аэровокзала; снегоуборочные группы; за последние несколько часов; комнаты отдыха для сотрудников; чрезвычайная ситуация; Денни сидел за пультом управления; широкая доска с тремя консолями; напротив него; с обеих сторон; отмечать состояние и местоположение; с другой стороны от Денни; мобильные бригады (команды); взлетать; ответить, не поднимая головы; я слышал, как командир экипажа говорил это пассажирам; на борту есть фильмы и алкогольные напитки; в Калифорнии светит солнце; я бы тоже так сделал; снегоочистители; зайти в офис; хорошая знакомая; по дороге в терминал (здание аэровокзала); зайти (заглянуть) в офис компании Транс Америка.

5. Make word combinations, translate them and find them in the text.

International	flights
roughest	air route centers
half	procedures
food	boards
driving	friend
behind	Airport
similar	supervisor
varying	traffic
in wet	terminal
beneath	winter storm
runway's	limits
intensive	quarters
local	resources
incoming	a dozen years
control	truck
adjoining	effort
incoming	snow

passenger	flights
fuel	relations agent
canceled	schedule
general	edge
snow	delays
sleeping	manager
snow shift	snow
bulletin	shovels
of motorized	reasons
snow	crews
passenger	ground
special	equipment

6. Match the synonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

snowbound	message
despite	drop by
baggage	in spite of
team	lorry
movie	aircraft
liquor	luggage
note	film
stop at	stuck in snow
truck	bosom friend
special friend	slim
lean	crew
jet	assistance
help	alcohol

7. Match the antonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

winter	various
search	darkness
fail	outgoing
similar	summer
light	behind
in front of	land
everybody	find
local	quiet
delayed	succeed
order	fully

noisy	chaos
lean	nobody
nearly	plump
take of	in time
incoming	

8. Retell the text.**9. Choose the right word.****BOEING 707**

Reaching over Danny's shoulder, Mel picked up a direct line _____ to Air Traffic Control. The tower watch _____ answered.

"What's the story on that Aereo-Mexican 707?"

"Still there, Mr. Bakersfeld. They've been working a _____ of hours trying to move it. No luck yet."

That particular trouble had begun shortly after dark when an Aereo-Mexican _____, taxiing out for takeoff, _____ passed to the right instead of left of a blue taxi light. Unfortunately, the ground to the right, which was normally _____ covered, had a drainage problem, due to be worked on when _____ ended. Meanwhile, despite the heavy _____, there was still a pool of mud beneath the surface. Within seconds of its wrong-way turn, the hundred and twenty ton _____ was deep in mud.

When it became _____ that the aircraft could not get out, loaded, under its own power, the _____ were asked to leave the plane and helped through mud and snow to the buses.

Now, more than two hours later, the big jet was still stuck, its _____ and tail blocking _____ three zero.

Winter, fuselage, grass, captain, phone, aircraft, chief, passengers, runway, snow, couple, mistakenly, obvious.

10. Insert the missing prepositions and adverbs where necessary.**WHAT A WAY TO START A HOLIDAY!**

When Wilson got ... the airport, his flight was already being announced ... the loudspeakers. The day before he had cancelled his ticket ... a morning flight and had booked an afternoon flight He had to go ... the reservations desk to get his new ticket.

He apologized ... being late. The reservations clerk smiled and began to look ... the reservations ... her. ... her smile disappeared and she began to look worried.

"Your ticket doesn't seem to be here," she said. "Let me check it ... the computer."

The computer clicked and lights began to flash. ... then, his flight was called a second time. Wilson became very nervous. ... the girl looked up.

"There's been a mistake. Your new ticket was sent ... you ... post. That's why it isn't ...," she said. It took her ... a short time to write out a new one. Wilson managed to catch the plane just ... it took off. "What a way to start a holiday!" he thought.

(to, for, over, through, in front of, with, by, up, instead, before, then, here, finally, just)

11. Agree or disagree with the following statements. Give your reasons.

For agreement use:

I think so.

I agree...

Yes, I should think so.

Certainly it did.

Exactly.

For disagreement use:

I don't think so.

I disagree...

I don't agree with you here.

Definitely not.

Not in the least.

1. The airport was functioning very well that evening.
2. Air Traffic Control had instituted flow control procedures because of the snow.
3. All incoming flights were cancelled.
4. All outgoing flights were delayed.
5. Danny Farrow was the airport general manager.
6. Danny was supervising the maintenance snow crews.
7. The United's flight to LA took off without food.
8. Mel was tired.

12. Discuss.

1. Weather is a key factor to the success of the airport operation.
2. If at least one runway is blocked, the airport stops functioning well.
3. Bad weather usually creates emergency situation at an airport.
4. If you happen to fly on a bad weather day you shouldn't complain of delays and cancellations.
5. It is better to fly without food than to wait two more hours at the airport.

6. Any delay or cancellation of a flight is the result of bad management.
7. Passenger relations agent is an important person for an airline.
8. An airport is an interesting place to work in.
9. An airport is a difficult place to work in.

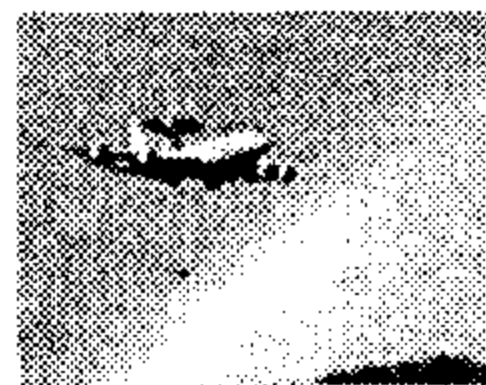
13. **Speak about... possible solutions for the airport problems discussed in the text.**

14. **Explain why:**

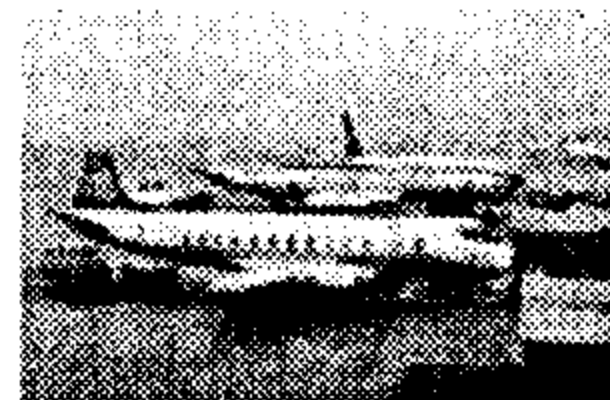
1. The airport was functioning with difficulty.
2. Mel was wondering that the airport was continuing to operate at all.
3. Runway three zero was out of use.
4. Boeing 707 blocked the runway.
5. The United Ail Lines' flight to Los Angeles took off without food.
6. Mel was excited to drop by Trans America on his way to the terminal.

DIALOGUE 3

Read, memorize and dramatize the dialogues.



AT THE CUSTOMS



1

- A:** Can I see your passport, please? Thank you. Are you here on holiday?
B: No, I'm on business.
A: That's fine. Enjoy your stay.

2

- B:** Excuse me. Where are the trolleys?
C: They're over there.
B: Could you change this for me, please? I need a coin for a trolley.
C: Yes, here you are.
B: Thank a lot.

CUSTOMS FORM

15. Read and translate the form. Fill out the form for yourself.

Department of the Treasury United States Customs Service

CUSTOMS DECLARATION

PRESENT TO THE IMMIGRATION AND CUSTOMS INSPECTORS

EACH ARRIVING TRAVELLER OR HEAD OF A FAMILY MUST WRITE IN THE FOLLOWING INFORMATION. PLEASE PRINT		
1. FAMILY NAME	GIVEN NAME	MIDDLE INITIAL
2. DATE OF BIRTH (Mo./Day/Yr.)	3. VESSEL, OR AIRLINE & FLT. No.	
4. CITIZEN OF (Country)	5. RESIDENT OF (Country)	
6. PERMANENT ADDRESS		
7. ADDRESS WHILE IN THE UNITED STATES		
8. NAME AND RELATIONSHIP OF ACCOMPANYING FAMILY MEMBERS		
9. Are you or anyone in your party carrying any fruits, plants, meals, other plant or animal products, birds, snails, or other live organisms of any kind? YES NO		
10. Have you or anyone in your party been on a farm or ranch outside the USA in the last 10 days? YES NO		
11. Are you or any family member carrying over \$ 5000.00 (or the equivalent value in any currency) in monetary instruments such as coin, currency, traveller's checks, money orders etc? <i>If yes, you must file a report on form 4790, as required by law.</i> YES NO		
12. <i>I certify that I have declared all items acquired abroad as required herein and that all oral and written statements which I have made are true, correct and complete</i>		
SIGNATURE:		
NON-CITIZENS ONLY	13. U.S. VISA ISSUED AT (place)	14. VISA DATE (Mo./Day/Yr.)

16. Give full forms of all shortened words in the CUSTOMS FORM.

17. Read and translate the advertisement.

**CUPID'S LAS VEGAS NIGHT FLIGHT
WEDDING CEREMONY
A UNIQUE LAS VEGAS WEDDING**

The ultimate Las Vegas Wedding experience! Truly an exciting and dazzling setting for your Las Vegas Wedding... whether you are Getting Married or Renewing your Vows with the one you love!

This spectacular Las Vegas wedding package includes transfers by limousine to Heli USA's Air Terminal. Enjoy a champagne toast celebrating your special day. Rise above the 'City of Lights' in your private \$1,000,000 A-Star jet copter, your minister will marry you on board over the dazzling Las Vegas 'Strip.' Cruise past Wynn Las Vegas, New York — New York, Bellagio, Venetian, Downtown and Fremont Street. You will pass the space beam of the Luxor Pyramid!

A Night to Remember

Las Vegas Wedding Package Includes:

- Private helicopter party up to 5 persons, plus minister.
- > 6' wedding cake and champagne.
- > A 12' rose cascade bouquet for the bride.
- > A rose boutonniere for the groom.
- > Minister's donation and driver's gratuity.
- > Limousine transfers.

Las Vegas Wedding Duration: Allow 2 hrs. hotel to hotel.

Additional Services for your Las Vegas Wedding: Such as photographer, videography or additional flowers or amenities, contact Candlelight Wedding Chapel at (800) 962-1818 or (702) 735-4179 in Las Vegas and refer to Heli USA tour code W-01.

Notes on Las Vegas Weddings: The driver will chauffeur the wedding couple from hotel to private helicopter, then return them to their hotel. The \$50 cost of the marriage license is not included. If your country requires a certified copy of the marriage license, follow the instructions on the reverse side of the license. It is the passenger's responsibility to verify, in advance, their country's requirements.

18. Answer the questions.

1. Where will the ceremony take place?
2. What is a "wedding package"?
3. What is included in the package?
4. What additional services you'll need to pay for?
5. What do you need to know about the marriage license?

19. Give Russian equivalents to the following words and word combinations.

Wedding, to get married, to renewing vows, wedding package, helicopter, A-star jet copter, minister, champagne, wedding cake, wedding couple, bouquet for the bride, rose boutonniere for the groom, donation, gratuity, additional services, marriage license, certified copy, reverse side, responsibility, to verify the requirements.

20. You are a travel agent. Speak about the flight tours your agency can suggest to the customers. Invent as many options as possible.

21. Translate into English.

ВНУКОВО

Внуково — один из старейших аэропортов Московской авиационной зоны, который в последние годы начал активно развиваться и модернизироваться. В настоящее время отсюда ежедневно выполняется более 80 регулярных рейсов в города Дальнего Востока, Сибири, Северного Кавказа, Армении, Грузии, Украины, Молдавии и до 30 рейсов в страны дальнего зарубежья. По итогам прошлого года, из Внуково было выполнено 31,9 тыс. самолетовылетов, обслужено свыше 1,2 млн пассажиров. По объему реализованных услуг Внуково занимает третье место, уступая аэропортам Шереметьево и Домодедово. Однако масштабная программа реконструкции воздушной гавани может изменить соотношение сил.

Сегодня аэропорт Внуково имеет две пересекающиеся взлетно-посадочных полосы: ВПП-1 (3000 м на 60 м, укрепленные обочины по 10 см с каждой стороны, общая ширина взлетной полосы 180 м, свободные зоны по 400 м с каждой стороны) и ВПП-2 (3060 м на 60 м, общая ширина взлетной полосы 180 м). Общая площадь летного поля (перрона) составляет 55 га и имеет 90 оборудованных мест стоянок воздушных судов.

Аэровокзальный комплекс Внуково-2, обслуживающий президента и правительство РФ, использует взлетно-посадочные полосы аэропорта Внуково. На аэродроме установлено радиотехническое и светосигнальное оборудование, которое обеспечивает производство посадки самолетов в условиях метеоминимума.

Оперативно-техническое обслуживание воздушных судов осуществляется компанией по наземному обслуживанию. В аэропорту работают несколько операторов по обеспечению авиакомпаний бортовым питанием.

Аэропорт Внуково расположен в 28 км от центра Москвы. Между аэровокзалом и станцией метро «Юго-Западная» курсируют автобусы-экспрессы, маршрутные такси и рейсовые автобусы. От станции метро «Киевская» до Внуково можно доехать электропоездом до станции «Аэропорт».

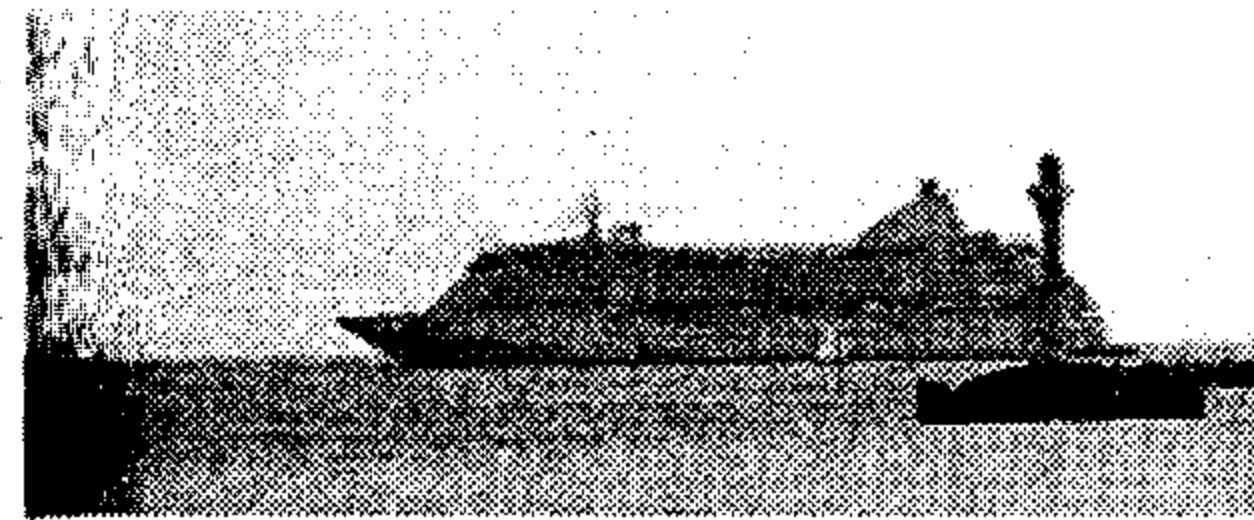
22. Write an essay on the topic "Airport" (choose any airport in the world and describe it.)

PROJECT WORK

1. You are an airline manager. Present your airline to travel agencies. Describe all services you provide. Stress the advantages of your airline. Use any additional information you find necessary.

2. You are a travel agent. Present "A Flight Tour To Remember" to your customers.

Unit 3. Travelling By Sea



GROUP TALK:

- Have you ever travelled by sea?
- Have you ever been on a cruise?

If yes:

1. When and where was it?
Tell about your experience.
2. Did you enjoy it?
3. What are the pleasures and discomforts of a sea trip?
4. Would you like to go on a cruise again?

If no:

1. Would you like to go on a cruise? Why?
2. What are the pleasures and discomforts of a sea trip, do you think?

TEXT 1

Vocabulary

ship — корабль

to sail — плавать (на корабле), отплывать, управлять судном

sail — парус

sailor — матрос, моряк

seaman — моряк, матрос

treasure — сокровище

crew — команда, экипаж (корабля, самолета)

pirate — пират

enemy — враг

in order to — для того чтобы

captain — капитан

first officer — первый помощник (старший помощник)

sea-officer — морской офицер

on foot — пешком

dock — док

tar — смола

Read and translate the text.

GOING TO SEA

Dear Livesey,

The ship is bought and ready for sea. You've never seen a better ship — a child can sail her. Her name is the Hispaniola.

I got her through my old friend, Blandly, who worked hard to find her for me. In fact, so did everyone here in Bristol as soon as they heard where we wanted to go — for treasure, I mean.

'Redruth,' I said, stopping for a moment, 'Dr. Livesey won't like that. The squire has been talking after all.'

Blandly himself found the Hispaniola. There are some men in Bristol who say that the Hispaniola was actually his ship and that he sold her to me at a very high price. But I don't believe them.

Then, I had trouble with the crew. I wanted to have twenty men in case we met pirates or enemy ships. I tried my best but could only find six.

And this time I was lucky again — I found the very man that I needed, an old sailor, who keeps an inn and who knows all the seamen in Bristol. Long John Silver is his name. He only has one leg and wants to get work as a ship's cook in order to go to sea again.

Well, Sir, I thought that I had found only a cook, but it turned out that I had actually found a crew. In just a few days Silver had helped me to gather a company of real sea dogs.

Long John even sent two men away out of the six I had already taken on.

I'm in wonderful health and spirits, eating like a bull, sleeping like a log. But I shall not enjoy a moment until the Hispaniola goes to sea. So now, Livesey, there's no time to lose. Let young Hawkins go at once to see his mother and then come quickly to Bristol.

John Trelawney.

PS: Blandly has found us an excellent man to be captain. His name is Smollett. Long John Silver has brought a very useful man for first officer, a man named Arrow.

You can imagine the excitement into which that letter put me. The next morning Redruth and I went on foot to the Admiral Benbow Inn to say goodbye to my mother.

I found her in good health and spirits. The squire had given her money to repair everything. All the rooms and the sign had been already repaired and Mr. Trelawney had also added some furniture. He had found a boy to help her while I was away. When I saw him, I realized for the first time that I was really going away. Up to that moment I had thought of the adventures ahead of me, not at all of the home that I was leaving. And I cried for the first time.

The evening passed and the next day, after dinner, Redruth and I were on the road again. I said goodbye to my mother and to the cove where I had lived all my life and to the dear old Admiral Benbow. One of my last thoughts was of the captain, who had so often walked along the beach with his old telescope. The next moment my home was out of sight.

That night I slept like a log in the carriage that had picked us up on our way to Bristol. When I opened my eyes later, I found that we had come to a large building in a city street.

'Where are we?' I asked.

'In Bristol,' said Tom. 'Get down.'

We had to walk to the dock and, though I had lived by the sea all my life, it seemed as if I had never been near the sea until that moment. The smell of tar and salt was something new. I was going to sea myself, to sea in a ship, with real seamen, to look for buried treasure!

While I was still dreaming, we suddenly arrived at a large inn and met Squire Trelawney, dressed like a sea-officer, coming out with a smile on his face.

'You're here!' he cried. 'And the doctor came last night from London. Bravo! The ship's company is complete!'

'Oh, Sir,' I cried, 'when do we sail?'

'Sail?' he said. 'We sail tomorrow!'

from Robert Lewis Stevenson

TEXT WORK

1. Pronounce correctly and transcribe. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Treasure, squire, actually, crew, pirates, excellent, imagine, excitement, repair, while, adventure, captain, sight, eyes, buried.

2. Answer the questions.

1. Who wrote the letter to Dr. Livesey and Jim?
2. What was the name of Mr. Trelawney's ship?
3. Was she a good ship?
4. Did the squire keep his promise to hold his tongue?
5. Who helped the squire to get a crew for the ship?
6. What did Long John Silver want to do on the ship?
7. Who was to be captain?
8. Who found the captain for the ship?
9. What time was it for Jim going to sea?
10. Who did Jim visit before leaving for Bristol?

3. Give Russian equivalents to the following words and word combinations. Find and translate sentences with them in the text.

Ready for sea, as soon as they heard, to go for treasure, enemy ships, I tried my best, this time I was lucky again, to keep an inn, to work as a ship's cook, to gather a company, real sea dogs, to send away, two out of the six, I'm in wonderful health and spirits, I shall not enjoy a moment until, you can imagine the excitement, while I was away, added some furniture, the adventures ahead of me, to think of the home, not at all, to be on the road again, my home was out of sight, carriage, the smell of tar, to come out, with a smile on his face, ship's company is complete, we sail tomorrow.

4. Give English equivalents to the following words and word combinations.

Вы никогда не видели лучшего корабля; он потрудился найти ее для меня; как только они услышали; я имею в виду; в действительности; продал мне ее втридорога; у меня были проблемы с командой; в случае...; я нашел именно того человека, который мне был нужен; старый моряк; оказалось, что; я ем как вол (волк); я сплю очень крепко, сплю без задних ног; нельзя терять ни минуты; сразу; капитан; первый помощник; идти пешком; попрощаться с матерью; я обнаружил, что она в добром здравии и в хорошем расположении духа; чинить/ремонттировать; в первый раз; до настоящего момента; прогуливаться по пляжу с телескопом; по дороге в Бристоль; подобрал нас; я обнаружил, что; жить у моря; казалось как будто; отправляться в море; с настоящими моряками; искать сокровища; одет как морской офицер; мы отплываем завтра.

5. Compare and mind the difference:

to go to sea	to go to the sea
to sail the ship	to sail on a ship
to find a crew	to gather a company
pirates	sea dogs
to go to the dock	to walk to the dock
to come	to arrive
I found that...	I found it on the beach

6. Make up your own sentences with these word combinations to show the difference in meanings.**7. Make word combinations, translate them and find them in the text.**

to go	a crew
old	seamen
to keep	an inn
to find	night
to gather	sailor
no time	moment
imagine	treasure
real	to lose
buried	for treasure
next	the excitement
last	a company

8. Match the synonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

seaman	understand
crew	problem
look for	sailor
realize	go away
leave	yesterday evening
sea dog	search
trouble	experienced sailor
last night	company

9. Match the antonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

to send away	to lose
to find	first
last	to take on

10. What is the meaning of "like" in these phrases? Translate them and make up sentences using them.

To eat like a bull
 To sleep like a log
 To work like a dog
 To dress like an officer

11. Make a summary of the text.

12. Match the word with its definition. Give Russian equivalent.

Captain	— the person who helps the captain, the head sailor
First officer	— the person who prepares food on the ship
Sailor	— a boy on ship who helps the crew but too young or inexperienced to be a sailor
Cook	— all people who work on a ship
Crew	— the person who is in charge of the ship and who gives orders and leads the sailing
Sea cadet	— a person who works on a ship, a member of the crew

13. Choose the right word from the list below. Mind the forms of the verbs. Translate the abstract.

My little _____ was quite near the _____ when I suddenly saw the Hispaniola. It was right in front of me, not half a _____ away. The beautiful white _____ of the ship shone in the sun like snow or silver. I thought that the men _____ were going round the island. She was lying on a _____ about north-west. But soon the ship began _____ more and more towards the west. I thought that the _____ had noticed me and were going to take me aboard.

However, the Hispaniola turned _____ and then again and again. The ship turned to the north, to the south, to the _____, to the west. I realized that the crew were _____.

On board, again, crew, coast, to sleep, boat, east, to turn, sails, mile, course.

14. Express the following in a different way.

an exciting or dangerous journey —
 to search into something for the purpose of learning about it —
 to sleep very deeply, to sleep well —
 the person on a ship who gives orders —
 all the seamen working on a ship —
 a four wheeled vehicle pulled by a horse or horses —
 an area of water in a harbour where ships are loaded, unloaded and repaired —

15. Fill in the blanks with prepositions, particles and adverbs where necessary. Translate the abstract.

I went straight ... the east coast ... the island. It was already late ... ~~She~~ afternoon, but it was still warm and bright. Soon a cool wind began ~~to~~ reach me and I saw the sea lying blue and sunny ... the horizon. I could ~~also~~ see the Hispaniola ... the Jolly Roger flying ... her.

Although I could see the white rock ... I was walking ... the shore, it ~~took~~ me a long time ... get ... it. It was almost dark when I got there. ~~The~~ little boat, a strange thing made ... wood and goat-skin, was hidden ... the bushes. It was very light so I was able ... carry it.

Well, now that I had found the boat I knew that I ought ... go back ... the stockade, but another idea suddenly came ... me. I decided ... sail ~~out~~ ... the Hispaniola and cut her anchor rope.

16. Put the verbs in the right forms. Translate the abstract.

In the morning I (to wake up). The sun (to be) already up but (to ~~hide~~) behind Spyglass Hill. My boat (to be) at the south-west end of Treasure Island. I could (to see) the dangerous rocks on that side of the coast. ~~The~~ sea (not to be) calm; the waves (to rise) and (to fall) one after the other. They (to crash) over the rocks with the terrible sound of thunder. ~~I~~ (to know) that if I (to try) (to get) to the shore that way I (to be killed) ~~on~~ the rocks. How was I to reach land?

I (to be) frightened but (to keep) my head and (to decide) (to wait) ~~until~~ the sea (to carry) my boat somewhere to the side of the island.

'Well, now,' I (to think) to myself. 'It's clear that I should just (to ~~stay~~) where I (to be).'

From time to time I (to try) (to give) my boat a shove or two towards land. It (to be) very hard and slow work. The sun (to shine) terribly and I (to be) very thirsty.

17. Agree or disagree with the following statements. Give your reasons.

For agreement use:

Yes, I think so.

I'd like to think so.

I quite agree with you.

That's absolutely right.

Of course he did.

For disagreement use:

I don't think so.

I'm afraid I'm not with you here.

I disagree.

That's not true.

Nonsense.

1. Jim stayed several weeks with his mother before they went to sea.
2. Jim was very glad to leave the Admiral Benbow Inn.
3. The squire kept his promise to hold his tongue.
4. Silver helped the squire to gather a crew for the ship.
5. Silver found a man to be captain.
6. There used to be many pirates in seas long time ago.
7. There are no pirates in seas now.

18. Pick out the words which you could use to describe Mr. Trelawney and Jim. What are the strongest / the worst points of their characters? Describe and compare Jim and Mr. Trelawney. Use more words if necessary. Consult the dictionary.

Hot-tempered, even-tempered, emotional, resolute, kind-hearted, generous, trustful, friendly, cruel, courageous, brave, wise, honest, thoughtful, energetic, respectable, independent, talkative, prudent, clever, open-hearted.

19. Discuss:

1. What people does a captain need on a ship?
2. Why do seamen take mice on the ship with them?
3. There is an old saying that a woman brings bad luck to the ship. What do you think of it?
4. Who are pirates? Why were there so many pirates in seas some 200—300 years ago?
5. Who are pirates of nowadays?

20. Explain why?

In Great Britain people use *she* for boats and ships.

21. Translate into English

1. Если нам нужен отдых, то лучше всего прогулка по морю.
2. Мы отплываем в понедельник.
3. Он весело помахал рукой приятелям и начал рассказывать по палубе с таким видом, как будто он капитан Кук, сэр Френсис Дрейк и Христофор Колумб в одном лице.
4. Я хорошо переношу плавание, меня никогда не укачивает (to be seasick).
5. Она пожалела, что не пустилась в плавание вместе с ним.
6. Пароход медленно причалил. Они сошли на берег и с грустью посмотрели, как пароход снова отчаливает, унося с собой незабываемые впечатления прошедшей недели.
7. Только три человека на борту: он сам, капитан корабля и второй помощник — устояли против морской болезни.

22. Write an essay on the topic "My Sea Adventure".

TEXT 2

Vocabulary

demand — спрос

generation — поколение

aboard — на борт

cruise — круиз

stateroom — каюта

to delight — восхищать

to inspire — вдохновлять

shore — берег

onboard — на борту

comprehensive — исчерпывающий

to offer — предлагать

luxury — роскошь

luxurious — роскошный

itinerary — маршрут

round-trip — путешествие туда и обратно

one way — путешествие в один конец

to take to sea — спустить на воду
conveniently — удобно
schedule — расписание
glacier — ледник
wonderland — страна чудес
discovery — открытие
to dedicate — посвящать
to afford — предоставлять
regal — королевский
port of call — порт захода (назначения)
to reveal — открывать
whale — кит
to amaze — изумлять
eagle — орел
extensive — обширный
excursion — экскурсия
options — варианты
misty fjord — туманные фиорды
seaplane — гидросамолет
exploration — исследование
to acclaim — провозглашать, приветствовать
to suit — подходить
to outfit — оснащать
software — программное обеспечение
camp counselor — вожатый
at least — как минимум, по крайней мере
appropriate — подходящий
toddler — малыш, ребенок
teen — подросток
handcraft — ремесло
creation — творение, создание
frosted — замороженный
igloo — иглу (жилище изо льда)
invitation — приглашение
fare — плата, цена, стоимость
float — плыть
scenery — пейзаж
deck — палуба
feature — черта, особенность
award — награда
lounge — гостиная, зал отдыха

feng shui — фен шуй (китайское учение о гармонизации интерьера)
spa — минеральные воды

Read and translate the text.

ALASKA SUMMER CRUISES

As the demand for multi-generational family travel continues to grow, **Crystal Cruises** invites children under 12 to cruise for free aboard seven **Crystal Harmony 2005** Alaska cruises when sharing the same stateroom with two adults. Available during the peak family travel months of June, July and August, families and children of all ages will delight in the awe-inspiring majesty of the Last Frontier with specially designed shore adventures, onboard entertainment, and a comprehensive Junior Activities program.

With eleven departures from May through September, Crystal's 2005 **Alaska** season is the most extensive ever offered by the luxury cruise line. **A** new 7-day itinerary round-trip from Vancouver takes to sea on May 21, and ten 12-day cruises operate conveniently round-trip from San Francisco departing every week from May 30 till September 15 (see the **schedule**). All itineraries feature at least one glacier experience.

Alaska is an educational wonderland of discovery, offering travellers of all ages an open classroom in adventure, nature and the environment. **For** families, a Crystal cruise represents tremendous comfort and value — **no** other luxury line offers such an extensive program dedicated to children of all ages, while the journey through Alaska itself affords priceless experiences.

From the regal beauty of Victoria's Butchart Gardens to the Tlingit totem poles of Ketchikan, ports of call reveal the beauty of a land embraced by nature. Depending on the itinerary, guests will travel to Vancouver and Victoria, Ketchikan, Wrangell and Glacier Bay and many other interesting places.

Along each itinerary, children will be amazed at the sight of breaching whales, calving glaciers and soaring eagles. An extensive collection of shore excursions in each port provides ideal options for family adventures such as the legendary White Pass Scenic Railway in Skagway, or the Misty Fjords Seaplane Flightseeing Exploration in Ketchikan.

With its acclaimed children's programs and activities, Crystal is the luxury operator best suited for the family market. Crystal Harmony has a fully supervised Junior Activities program for kids ages 17 and under, and Fantasia — the ship's dedicated children's playroom — is outfitted

with games, craft materials, Sony PlayStation video games, and personal computers with entertainment and education software.

The line's highly qualified staff of Junior Activities Directors includes grade school, high school, and physical education teachers on summer holiday, as well as seasoned camp counselors. There is at least one counselor for each 12 participants, a ratio that supports a variety of age-appropriate activities tiered for toddlers through teens. Crystal also caters to children with a special Alaska program featuring a guest naturalist when Crystal Harmony cruises Glacier Bay and Tracy Arm.

For example, younger kids display their handcrafted creations, such as frosted sugar cube igloos, in an Alaska Art Expo open for viewing by all guests. For their older brothers and sisters, one high point is a 'teens only' disco night for which they get their own personal invitations.

Depending on itinerary, cruise fares start at \$1,825 per person/double occupancy. The "kids sail free" promotion is limited to triple stateroom accommodations and is capacity controlled.

At 50,000-tons, the luxurious Crystal Harmony carries only 940 guests, and is a perfect floating resort from which to view the breathtaking glaciers and unspoiled Alaskan and British Columbia scenery. The award-winning ship features expansive decks, richly appointed staterooms, more than half of which boast private verandahs, a wide variety of lounges for critically acclaimed entertainment, gourmet dining, a casino and a state-of-the-art, feng shui-designed spa and fitness facility.

Crystal Cruises is the recipient of an unprecedented nine consecutive best large-ship cruise line awards from the readers of Conde Nast Traveller and Travel + Leisure magazines.

TEXT WORK

1. Pronounce correctly and transcribe. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Generation, cruise, delight, awe-inspiring, majesty, design, itinerary, glacier, adventure, nature, environment, journey, through, experience, beauty, whale, eagle, shore, excursion, luxury, luxurious, entertainment, qualified, physical, ratio, feature, guest, scenery, award, variety, lounge, gourmet, recipient.

2. Answer the questions.

1. What does Crystal Cruises offer to children?
2. How often are the trips and how long are they?

3. Why is Alaska so attractive for travellers with children?
4. What are the itineraries on offer?
5. What will children like most along each itinerary?
6. What activities are offered for children on board?
7. Who will lead the children's activities?
8. What are prices and restrictions for the Alaska Summer Cruises?
9. What facilities and services does Crystal harmony offer to guests?
10. What rewards does the Crystal Cruises company have?

3. Give Russian equivalents to the following words and word combinations. Find and translate sentences with them in the text.

To cruise for free, to share the same stateroom with two adults, peak family travel months, onboard entertainment, luxury cruise line, 12-day cruises, all itineraries feature, tremendous comfort and value, totem poles, the beauty of a land embraced by nature, calving glaciers, soaring eagles, acclaimed children's programs, craft materials, entertainment and education software, Junior Activities Director, grade school, high school, camp counselor, for toddlers through teens, guest naturalist, one high point is, a 'teens only' disco, double occupancy, triple stateroom accommodations, capacity controlled, award-winning ship richly appointed staterooms, boast private verandahs, critically acclaimed entertainment, a state-of-the-art, feng shui-designed spa and fitness facility, best large-ship cruise line award.

4. Give English equivalents to the following words and word combinations.

Спрос на семейные путешествия продолжает возрастать; приключения на берегу; исчерпывающая программа досуга для детей; семидневное путешествие туда и обратно; лайнер отправляется; посещение по крайней мере одного ледника; страна чудес и открытий; приключения, природа и окружающая среда; обширная программа посвящена детям всех возрастов; королевская красота; порт назначения; в зависимости от маршрута; дети будут потрясены; отдыхающие на пляже киты; экскурсии на берегу; лучше всего удовлетворяет рынок семейного отдыха; игровая комната оснащена играми и материалами для поделок; образовательное программное обеспечение; высококвалифицированный персонал; учитель физкультуры; разнообразные виды деятельности, соответствующие возрасту; поделки; иглу из замороженного сахара; именные пригласительные билеты; цены за круиз; отличный плавающий курорт;

захватывающие дух ледники; нетронутый пейзаж; широкие палубы; разнообразие гостиниц; еда для гурманов; получатель девяти наград подряд.

5. Make word combinations, translate them and find them in the text.

family	adventures
share	experience
travel	entertainment
shore	the room
onboard	experience
luxury	poles
glacier	beauty
educational	cruise line
tremendous	comfort
priceless	travel
regal	wonderland
totem	months

* * *

breaching	invitation
calving	deck
soaring	facility
highly qualified	staff
camp	ship
personal	dining
luxurious	eagles
floating	counselor
expansive	whales
private	verandah
gourmet	glaciers
fitness	resort

6. Match the synonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

route	trip
shore	staff
comprehensive	coast
journey	present
afford	diversity
show	individual
kids	itinerary

personal	display
personnel	perfect
excellent	children
variety	extensive

7. Make a summary of the text.

8. Describe the facilities and services the liner offers for children and for adults apart.

9. Choose the right word from the list below. Mind the forms of the verbs. Translate the abstract.

QUEEN MARY 2

Queen Mary 2 is the _____, longest, tallest, widest, and **at** — \$780-million — the most expensive _____ ever built. **The** successful trials, where the ship consistently exceeded 30 knots, put **her** right on _____ for her January 12 maiden _____ from Southampton, England, to Fort Lauderdale.

During the _____ trials, QM2 underwent performance tests **that** _____ of three runs over a 10-mile-long course. At various _____, the ship was stabilised at speed during which very **accurate** measurements were _____ to establish an average _____. The average speed was then corrected for _____ ship performance standards such as an allowance for **the** _____ that is still to be added before delivery and for _____ conditions, etc.

Voyage, points, weather, largest, speed, sea, liner, taken, weight, consisted, schedule, voyage.

10. Fill in the blanks with prepositions where necessary. Translate the abstract.

... her inaugural year the ship will offer 13 transatlantic crossings as **she** takes ... the role as Cunard's transatlantic liner that is currently operated ... her sister ship, Queen Elizabeth 2. Prices ... six-day crossings **begin** ... \$1,499 ... person, double occupancy, including transatlantic air. QM2 will also introduce a new series ... Caribbean cruises ... New York and Fort Lauderdale; a voyage ... Rio de Janeiro and back, timed ... **Carnival**; five European cruise itineraries and two fall foliage sailings ... ports ... Canada and New England.

A special highlight ... the QM2's inaugural schedule will be its maiden eastbound crossing ... New York ... April 25 as both Queen Mary 2 and Queen Elizabeth 2 will sail ... tandem. This day will be the first time two Cunard Queens have been berthed (поставлены на якорь)... the port together ... March 1940.

11. Agree or disagree with the following statements. Give your reasons.

For agreement use:

I quite agree with you.

That's quite right.

I think you are right.

I should think so.

For disagreement use:

I don't actually agree.

That's wrong.

I wouldn't say it is.

I'd like to say yes, but...

1. Peak travel months are June, July and August.
2. Cruise lines are only for adults.
3. Alaska is an educational wonderland of discovery.
4. Alaska is only ice and sea, no animals.
5. There will be only a few excursions during the trip.
6. Junior activity directors on cruise lines are usually school teachers.
7. There are no discos on board.
8. All cabins on Crystal Harmony have private verandahs.
9. There are spa and fitness facilities on board.
10. The "kids sail free" promotion on Crystal Cruises is unlimited.

12. Discuss:

1. The most important thing in cruises is the itinerary.
2. Cruises are very expensive for common people. They will not sell well in our city.
3. Cruises offer an experience of a lifetime. Everyone should try going to sea at least once.
4. You can never know if you'll be seasick until you go to sea.
5. Travelling by sea is only good if the weather is good.

13. Speak about ... planning our first cruise. Read the expert's advice and follow it.

PLANNING YOUR FIRST CRUISE

Planning your first cruise can be a challenge for those who either haven't travelled much or who haven't taken an organized tour or vacation. How do you plan that first cruise? Family and friends often get to-

gether to discuss where they want to travel or vacation next. You might have heard cruise tales from and seen (or been subjected to) cruise vacation pictures taken by your family and friends, or read in magazines and the Web about how much fun (and economical) cruising can be. If you want to "take the plunge" and go on your first cruise, where do you start?

First-time cruisers should probably work with a travel agent who is experienced in booking cruises. However, before you contact the travel agency or cruise line, you will need to have the answers to these ten questions.

1. *Who Is Going on the Cruise?*
2. *How Much Are You Prepared to Spend?*
3. *How Long Is Your Vacation?*
4. *When Do You Want to Travel?*
5. *Where Do You Want to Cruise?*
6. *What Types of Things Do You Like to Do?*
7. *What Type of Cabin Do You Want/Need?*
8. *When Do You Like to Eat Dinner?*
9. *Do You Like to Dress Up?*
10. *How Will You Get to Your Cruise Ship?*

After you have answered these ten questions, you will be ready to select a cruise line and cruise ship.

14. Role play.

Student A	Student B
<p>1. <i>You are going on a cruise together. Discuss the answers to the questions from the previous exercise; discuss as many details as possible.</i></p>	
<p>2. <i>Tell your friend that you are going on your first cruise. Describe preparations and details of the coming voyage.</i></p>	<p>2. <i>Ask your friend about the cruise he/she is going to take. Use questions from the previous exercise. Use these phrases to encourage him/her speaking:</i></p>

Swap roles.

Giving yourself time to think:

I think

Now, let's see...

Well, I suppose...

Let me think about it for a moment...

Showing that you are interested:

Really? Indeed?

Oh, really!

Right.

I see.

That's interesting.

15. Read the advertisements for different cruises. Compare them.

1. Which cruise would you like to take? Why?
2. Do these ads give the same information?
3. Which of the adverts give more detailed information?
4. Which ad do you find more attractive? Why?

CALIFORNIA

Hoist a sail or swab the deck on **six-day trips** aboard the Californian, a 145-foot topsail schooner and the official tall ship of California. Sailors will cruise the high seas between San Diego and Santa Barbara, stopping at the Channel Islands. Three sailings are available: The Sept. 12 voyage departs San Diego, sailing to Santa Barbara via Catalina Island. On Sept. 19, the ship sails from Santa Barbara to the Channel Islands and returns to Santa Barbara. The third sailing leaves Santa Barbara on Sept. 26 and returns to San Diego by way of the Channel Islands. Participants are members of the “guest crew” and spend the first day learning the basics of rigging and sail handling. Children younger than 12 are not allowed. Details: San Diego Maritime Museum, (619) 234-9153, extension 101, www.sdmaritime.org.

COSTA RICA

Journey through lush gardens and rain forest on a **12-day** “Botanical Treasures of Costa Rica” **tour** offered by Calypso Island Tours, based in San Bruno. The Nov. 23-Dec. 4 itinerary features excursions to botanical gardens and horticultural research facilities, including a visit to the private gardens of horticulturist Ileana Tehran, founder of Save Costa Rica’s Orchids. Tour members will also tour Irazu volcano, La Paz Waterfall Gardens and its butterfly observatory, take a jungle cruise in the rain forest and get an opportunity to participate in a reforestation project at Sarapiquí. The tour is limited to 16 people and will be escorted by a professional botanist from Costa Rica. Details: (866) 682-2121 or www.calypsoislandtours.com.

AUCKLAND – SYDNEY

The South Seas are accessible on a **12-night**, wheelchair-accessible **cruise** sailing from Auckland, New Zealand, to Sydney, Australia. The cruise, which begins Jan. 20, is aboard the 2,600-passenger Diamond

Princess, which will visit Tauranga, Dunedin and Christchurch in New Zealand and Tasmania and Melbourne in Australia before arriving in Sydney. Optional excursion packages include guides and a wheelchair-accessible van. Details: Accessible Journeys, based in Ridley Park, Pa., (800) 846-4537, www.accessiblejourneys.com.

16. Make your own cruise advertisement.**DIALOGUE**

Read, translate, memorize and dramatize the dialogue.

GOING ON A CARIBBEAN CRUISE

Customer: We’re interested in going on a Caribbean cruise, but we’re a little worried about the accommodation. I know the ships are luxurious, but I’ve heard the cabins can be very small — you know, cramped and stuffy. I want a bit of space and fresh air.

Travel agent: Yes, it’s true most cabins are not quite like hotel rooms, but most companies do offer deluxe cabins as well. Cabin selection usually depends on how much you want to spend. Many cruisers usually book the cheapest room available at the time of booking, preferring to save their money for shopping or shore excursions.

Customer: Money is not the question now. I personally am a little claustrophobic and like to be able to peer out my window in the morning to see the weather, so I’d like to book an outside cabin with a window or porthole.

Travel agent: Let me see, I have a brochure here ... This company says they have the largest cabins in the Caribbean — for example, a lot of them have their own private verandas or balconies. You might also note that on most ships a cabin mid-ship and on a lower deck will “ride better” in rough seas than one near the bow or on a higher deck.

Customer: Oh, I see. What about bathroom? We don’t have to share, do we?

Travel agent: No, all the cabins have suite facilities. They also say there’s a lot of space for clothes and things — a wardrobe and two drawers.

- Customer:** And there'll be three of us.
- Travel agent:** OK, some cabins can take three people — you need to get a stateroom, because they're designed for three or four people. I think you'll find that comfortable even if you don't have as much space as in a hotel room. But a cruise is an unforgettable experience; once you try it you can never stop it.
- Customer:** Yes, I see. What about the facilities in the room?
- Travel agent:** Well, there is a TV, a radio. There's a telephone if you want to speak to friends back home, a personal safe for money and valuables, and a fridge for drinks as well.
- Customer:** What about dining?
- Travel agent:** Dinner time varies with the cruise line or ship. There are three possibilities—early seating: about 6:00 pm, late seating about 8:00—8:30 pm or open seating: anytime within a given time frame 6:30—9:30.
- Customer:** Which is better?
- Travel agent:** There are advantages to both. Early seating might mean that you might have to rush for dinner if you are on a shore excursion that lasts until the late afternoon, or can't tear yourself away from the beach or pool. The advantage to early seating is that you can then go to the shows after dinner and have more time for nightlife before bed. Late seating allows you to have plenty of time to get ready for dinner. However, if you don't finish dinner until after 10:00 pm, you might either miss the show or part of the night life.
- Customer:** Will the cruise line give us the choice of seating?
- Travel agent:** Definitely. But if you choose this particular voyage, you don't need to worry, it's open seating all the time. But you need to specify what table size you prefer. There are tables for two, four, six, or eight.
- Customer:** No tables for three?
- Travel agent:** Sorry, they don't say that. But I can put you at a table for four if you don't like big companies. You may be lucky, and no one will travel alone to join you.
- Customer:** Thanks a lot.

- Travel agent:** Another note about dining. This cruise line always has one or two dress-up nights on a seven-day cruise where passengers wear formal or semi-formal attire. Do you mind that?
- Customer:** No, of course not. I'll take my cocktail dress, my daughter adores dressing up, and my husband will have to put up with the need of wearing a tie a couple of times on vacation.
- Travel agent:** That's wonderful.
- Customer:** OK, so what cabin would you recommend for us?
- Travel agent:** Well, you definitely want an outside cabin so that you can see daylight. So there are three possibilities. If there are three of you I think the best would be a suite, which means you'll also get a veranda.
- Customer:** Mmm, that sounds nice, but it's probably going to be very expensive, isn't it?
- Travel agent:** Well, if you go for the smaller cabin without a hall and a dressing room you'll save a little bit. They start at \$1999 per person, but if you book now, you'll get a 5 % discount for early booking and you may have a chance of being upgraded to a bigger cabin later.
- Customer:** That's great. And is that still available?
- Travel agent:** Just a moment, I'll just check for you... .

17. Summarize the information about Caribbean cruises.

18. Role play.

Student A	Student B
<i>You want to go on a cruise. Ask your travel agent about cruises available. Discuss as many details as possible.</i>	<i>You are a travel agent. Tell your customer about Black Sea cruises. Describe the details and persuade him/her into buying it.</i>

Swap roles.

19. Translate into English.

Один из самых популярных маршрутов — круиз Москва — Астрахань — Москва, ведущий в низовья Волги. Теплоход отправится в рейс от Северного Речного вокзала города Москвы.

Знакомство с достопримечательностями начинается на второй день вашего путешествия. Первой стоянкой теплохода станет один из самых сказочных городов Верхней Волги — Углич. На пристани вас радушно встретит фольклорный ансамбль, и под звон колоколов Спасо-Преображенского собора начнется ваша увлекательная экскурсия по этому древнему городу, основанному, по мнению историков, в X веке.

Следующий город по маршруту — Кострома, основанный в 1152 году Юрием Долгоруким. Уютный прогулочный катер доставит вас в Ипатьевский монастырь — колыбель рода Романовых. Также программой предусмотрены прогулка по городу и знакомство с его уникальнейшим архитектурным ансамблем и знаменитыми торговыми рядами рубежа XVIII—XIX столетий.

На следующий день вы посетите «волжскую столицу», город Нижний Новгород. Там вас ожидает обзорная автобусная экскурсия по городу и осмотр главной его достопримечательности — Нижегородского кремля.

Далее вы посетите Казань — столицу Татарстана, Самару — один из красивейших старинных городов среднего Поволжья, Волгоград — крупный промышленный, административный, культурно-просветительский и учебный центр.

Самый дальний пункт следования — Астрахань.

На обратном пути — знакомство с Саратовом, Ульяновском, Чебоксарами, Ярославлем.

Через 12 дней увлекательного путешествия, пройдя цепочку шлюзов канала им. Москвы, вы вернетесь обратно на Северный Речной вокзал столицы.

Желаем вам приятного путешествия.

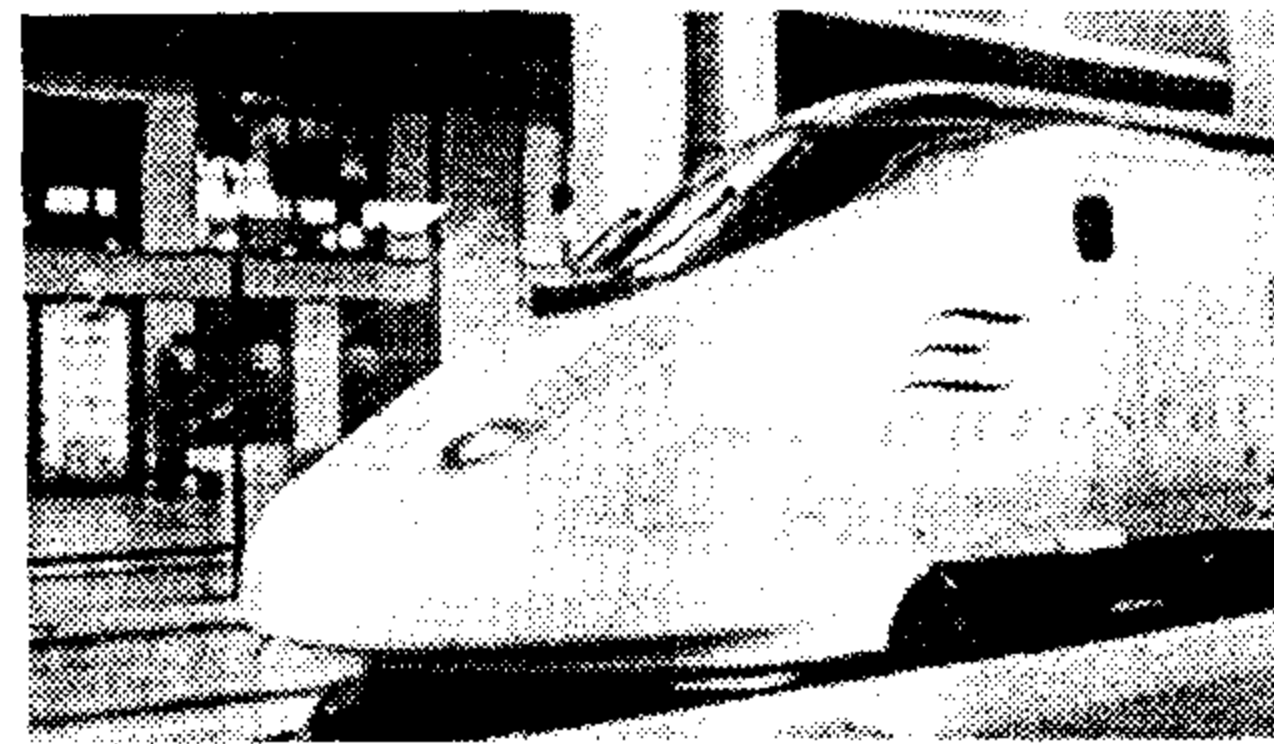
Более подробную информацию о наших круизах и программу пребывания в каждом городе вы можете узнать в нашем офисе или на нашем сайте.

20. Write an essay on the topic "Pleasures and Discomforts of a Sea Trip".

PROJECT WORK

You are a travel agent. Work out a **cruise program** for your customers. Include names, dates, prices, itineraries, accommodation and entertainment details and so on. Make an advertisement for your cruise. Make a presentation of your **cruise** to your group.

Unit 4. Travelling By Train



GROUP TALK

- Have you ever travelled by train?

If yes:

1. When did you go?
2. Where did you go?
3. How long was your trip?
4. Was it a sleeper?
5. Did you enjoy the trip?
6. Describe the train and your fellow-travellers.
7. What are the pleasures and discomforts of a rail trip?
8. Would you like to go anywhere by rail again? Why?

If no:

1. Would you like to go somewhere by train? Why?
2. What are the pleasures and discomforts of a rail trip, do you think?

TEXT 1

Vocabulary

it's common knowledge — общеизвестно
to travel on business — ездить в командировку
abroad — за границу
convenient — удобный

means of travel — средство транспорта
carriage — вагон
coach — 1) пассажирский вагон; 2) междугородный автобус (BrE)
dining-car = buffet-car — вагон-ресторан
sleeper — спальный вагон
railway station — железнодорожный вокзал
porter — носильщик
In advance — заранее
booking-office = booking office — касса
luggage office — камера хранения
waiting room — зал ожидания
refreshment room = snack bar — закусочная
queue — очередь
entrance — вход
exit — выход
lost property office — бюро находок
suitcase — чемодан
luggage = baggage — багаж
Inquiry office = information bureau — справочное бюро
to catch a train — успеть на поезд
to miss a train — опоздать на поезд
a through train — прямой поезд, без пересадки
to change ... for ... — пересест с ... на...
a compartment — купе
to be due — ожидать (по расписанию)
single ticket (BrE) = one way ticket (AmE) — билет в один конец
return ticket (BrE) = round trip ticket (AmE) — билет в оба конца

Read and translate the text.

AT THE RAILWAY STATION

It's common knowledge that nowadays people travel a lot. They travel on business and for pleasure, about the country and abroad. Those who wish to travel have at their disposal various means of transport: express trains and big ships, cars and jet airplanes.

Although aircraft are faster and, some people say, more convenient, the railway is still one of the most popular means of travel. First of all, the railway tickets are cheaper. And there are people who don't like flying, and there are others who enjoy travelling by train more than by plane.

With a train you have speed, comfort and pleasure combined. From the comfortable corner seat of a carriage you have a splendid view of the

countryside. If you are hungry you can have a meal in the dining-car or the buffet-car and if the journey is long you can have a comfortable bed in a sleeper.

A big railway station is a very busy and interesting place. There are a lot of platforms at which trains come in and go out. A train is standing at one of the platforms ready to leave. The porters are very busy carrying luggage to the train or pushing it on their trucks. On another platform a train has just come in. Some passengers are getting out, others are getting in. Those who haven't bought their tickets in advance are waiting in queues at the booking-office. At the bookstalls people are choosing books, magazines and newspapers for the journey. At the cloak-room or luggage office some people are leaving and taking their luggage.

There are a lot of signs in a big railway station. You may see ENTRANCE and EXIT. There is also a WAITING ROOM where you can relax until it is time to board your train. If you are hungry or thirsty you'll go to the REFRESHMENT ROOM. If you don't know the number of the platform from which your train leaves, look for the signs ARRIVALS and DEPARTURES. They will tell you the number of the platform.

When you arrive in a large town you may leave your heavy luggage at the station. In this case you will look for the CLOAK ROOM or LUGGAGE OFFICE.

If you have lost something you need to find LOST PROPERTY OFFICE. If you find anything, if it is a small item like glasses or umbrella, you can take them to the lost property office, too. If it is big, something like a parcel or a suitcase, report it to the POLICE OFFICE, never touch it yourself.

You will also see the sign BOOKING OFFICE. This is where you buy your ticket. If you don't know the time or the platform your train leaves from you'll go to the INQUIRY OFFICE or the INFORMATION BUREAU.

TEXT WORK

1. Pronounce correctly and transcribe. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Knowledge, pleasure, abroad, various, although, convenient, carriage, view, buffet-car, journey, luggage, cloak, sign, queue, suitcase, inquiry, bureau.

2. Compare and mind the difference:

BrE	AmE
carriage	car
refreshment room	snack bar
dining-car	buffet-car, restaurant
queue	line
luggage	baggage
luggage van	baggage car
cloak room	baggage/luggage office
mail van	mail car
a single ticket	one way ticket
a return ticket	a round trip ticket

3. Answer the questions.

1. What means of travel are at travellers' disposal?
2. Why is railway still a very popular means of transport?
3. What is convenient in travelling by train?
4. Why is a railway station a busy place?
5. What signs can you see at a railway station and what do they mean?

4. Give Russian equivalents to the following words and word combinations. Find and translate sentences with them in the text.

It's common knowledge; travel on business; travel for pleasure; jet airplane; railway ticket; speed, comfort and pleasure combined; corner seat of a carriage; splendid view; porter; to wait in queue; booking-office; sign; small item; parcel; suitcase; inquiry office.

5. Give English equivalents to the following words and word combinations.

Общеизвестно; путешествовать по стране; в их распоряжении; различные средства транспорта; скорые поезда; хотя самолеты быстрее; в первую очередь (во-первых); поесть в вагоне-ресторане; спальный вагон; готов к отправлению; купить билеты заранее; в газетных киосках; камера хранения (2); зал ожидания; сесть на поезд (2); бюро находок; касса; справочное бюро (2).

6. Make word combinations, translate them and find them in the text.

travel	airplane
express	view
big	office
jet	bureau
railway	train
corner	in queue
splendid	ticket
comfortable	item
to wait	on business
luggage	a train
waiting	bed
to board	ship
small	room
information	seat

7. Match the synonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

various	buffet car
plane	to arrive
dining car	snack bar
queue	line
luggage	trip
to leave	baggage
to come	beforehand
journey	different
cloak room	thing
refreshment room	to depart
item	luggage office
in advance	aircraft

8. Match the antonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

arrival	to push
entrance	departure
to board	to get off
to pull	exit

9. Make a summary of the text.

10. Describe what you do at each office or room:

- Waiting room
- Refreshment room
- Lady's or Men's room
- Luggage office
- Lost property office
- Booking office
- Inquiry office
- Police office

11. Fill in the blanks with prepositions and adverbs where necessary. Translate the story.

ON THE WAY TO LIVERPOOL

Linda found a seat ... a compartment that was full ... middle-aged businessmen. One ... them offered to put her case ... the rack ... her. She politely told him she could do it herself. The man started talking ... her ... she had sat down. She tried to avoid getting ... a conversation but it was impossible. He was one ... those boring types that go ... talking even if nobody is interested. When she casually mentioned that she was going ... Liverpool ... order ... do a report ... the city, he began ... telling her all ... the place. Several hours went He talked and talked. Linda hardly said anything. Finally, the train got ... Liverpool. The man kept ... talking ... the very last minute. Linda got ... to go. Just then he invited her ... a party. He said he would introduce her ... all his friends so that she could learn more ... Liverpool. Linda politely refused and hurried ... the compartment. She could still hear the man's voice. He was talking ... someone else ... the compartment and she happened to catch ... a few words: "Nice girl", he was saying. "But you know, she talked so much that I could hardly put ... a word."

12. Agree or disagree with the following statements. Give your reasons.

For agreement use:

I think so.

I agree with you.

I absolutely agree.

Sure.

For disagreement use:

I don't think so.

I don't agree with you here.

I definitely disagree.

Not in the least.

1. Long train trips are so exciting.
2. A talkative person in your compartment is the very thing you need to make your trip pleasant.
3. Travelling alone is not only boring but dangerous.
4. Railway system is the best invention of the mankind.
5. It is difficult to travel by train if you have heavy luggage.
6. Lost property office is the most useful office at a railway station.

13. Discuss:

1. So many interesting and pleasant things happen when you travel a lot.
2. There are advantages and disadvantages in travelling by train. What are they?

14. Speak about... your first train trip.

15. Explain why trains are still a very popular means of transport.

DIALOGUE 1

Read, translate, memorize and dramatize the dialogue.

OVER THE PHONE

- Railway agent:** Good morning! British Railways, King's Cross.
Customer: Can you give me the times of fast trains to Edinburgh, please, and arrival time? I'd like to get there about 6.00 p.m.
Railway agent: Just a minute. Let's see. Week days 8.48 arrive 5.10; 9.30 arrive 5.30. Do you want any more?
Customer: No. That's fine, thank you very much. These are week-day trains, aren't they?
Railway agent: Yes. Monday and Saturday inclusive.
Customer: Thanks a lot.

DIALOGUE 2

Read, translate, memorize and dramatize the dialogue.

AT THE BOOKING OFFICE

- Customer:** Hello. The centre of London, please.
Railway agent: All trains go to Victoria station. Single or return?

- Customer:** Single, please. How much is that?
Agent: £9.80, please.
Customer: Sorry? How much?
Agent: £9.80.
Customer: Thanks. What time's the next train?
Agent: At 11.20, so, in ten minutes. Platform 7.
Customer: And how long does it take?
Agent: About half an hour.

16. Role play

Student A You are a traveller.	Student B You are a railway agent.
1. Call the railway station and inquire about trains to the place you need to get to. Ask about departure and arrival time, prices and discounts.	1. Answer the questions about trains' timetable. Give details about departure and arrival time, prices and discounts. Use real information.
2. Come to the booking office and buy tickets to the place you need to go. Ask for special fare or discount, especially if you are a student or a family with toddlers, or your spouse is over 60.	2. Sell tickets to customers. Offer special fares or discounts for round trip tickets and for children, students or senior travellers who are over 60.

Swap roles.

17. Translate into English

ПО ЕВРОПЕ НА ПОЕЗДЕ

Несколько полезных советов тем, кто собирается путешествовать по одной из железных дорог Европы.

Если необходимый вам населенный пункт находится на достаточно близком расстоянии, то, скорее всего, туда можно добраться региональным или местным поездами, которые относят к поездам низкой категории. Но вы будете приятно удивлены: это совсем не электрички в нашем понимании, а вполне комфортабельные поезда, оснащенные туалетами и отсеками для багажа, с мягкими сиденьями и чистыми окнами. В основном это вагоны второго класса для курящих и некурящих пассажиров, но ряд ре-

гиональных поездов имеют также вагоны первого класса, в которых на том же пространстве расположено меньше кресел, то есть создается более высокий уровень комфорта. Заметим, что места на такие поезда не резервируются, так как поездка обычно занимает не более двух часов. Вы приобретаете билет согласно тарифу и занимаете приглянувшееся вам свободное место.

Однако будьте готовы к тому, что в, казалось бы, свободном вагоне места вам не найдется. Ничто человеческое не чуждо и европейцам — они тоже имеют обыкновение занимать места для своих друзей или близких, которые должны подсесть к ним по дороге.

Случается, что по одному и тому же маршруту курсируют несколько поездов более низкой и более высокой категории, но при этом разница в продолжительности поездки незначительна.

К поездам более высокой, по европейским меркам средней, категории относятся такие, например, как InterCity или EuroCity, которые соединяют множество наиболее значимых городов Европы. Эти поезда комплектуются вагонами как второго, так и первого класса, и отличаются от региональных поездов наличием бистро, а также, как правило, обязательным резервированием мест. Такое условие продиктовано исключительно заботой о пассажирах — ведь продолжительность поездок на этих поездах составляет иногда 8—10 часов. И было бы обидно, купив билет за 60—80 евро, простоять в переполненном вагоне три-четыре часа только из-за того, что вовремя не было зарезервировано место, всего за 3 евро.

18. Write an essay on the topic "Pleasures and Discomforts of Travelling by Train".

TEXT 2

Vocabulary

space — пространство

densely — густой, густо

comprehensive — обширный, всесторонний, понятный

notable — выдающийся, значительный, заметный

network — сеть

to deter from... — удерживать от ..., отпугивать

deal — сделка

to avoid — избежать

rush hour — час пик

to save — экономить

exactly — точно, ровно, четко

restriction — ограничение

coach — междугородный автобус

disadvantage — неудобство

drawback — недостаток

to improve — улучшать

ferry — паром

timetable — расписание

route — путь, маршрут

urgently — срочно

to achieve — достигать

Read and translate the text.

GETTING AROUND IN BRITAIN

Britain has almost the same population as France but less than half the space. With 238 people per square kilometre, it is a densely populated country. So it is not surprising that the transport system is fairly comprehensive. With the notable exception of the Highlands of Scotland, almost every square centimetre of the map of Britain is covered by a network of roads and railways.

As in most countries of the world, roads have taken over from rail as the major transport system. But trains in Britain are still a safe, fast and comfortable way of travelling. There is one big problem which deters many people from using them: the price. British trains are very expensive to travel on, at least if you do not know how to get the best deals. If you simply go into a station, buy a ticket and get on the train, you may end up paying a small fortune. To avoid a nasty shock, there are two secrets: one, get a full list of all the special types of tickets available; and two, book in advance. As an example, in 1999 the full price of a London to Manchester return ticket was £119; a Super Saver ticket, which cannot be used in the rush hour, was £48; and a Virgin Value ticket, which has to be booked a minimum of three days in advance, was only £19 — saving exactly £100. If you are travelling from London, there is one other useful piece of advice: make sure you go to the right station, as there are seven major and many smaller ones!

Much cheaper, and without all the restrictions about advanced booking and rush hours, are coach services. Of course, there are disadvantages: no restaurant, no room to walk around and no tables. The worst drawback is that the coach station is usually in the middle of town, so there is

a long struggle through traffic before your coach gets out onto the motorway.

Integrated transport?

The government has recently started talking about the ultimate solution to the problems — an integrated transport system. This means improving public services and making sure that they all work together as a system, rather than a series of disconnected parts. At present, if you need to take a train, a bus and a ferry for your journey, you will often find that the bus station is kilometres away from the train station, and the bus timetable does not match the ferry timetable. You end up taking taxis between stations, and spending hours sitting in waiting rooms. In many parts of the country, trains and buses compete with each other on one route, while another route has no service at all. An integrated transport system is urgently needed to address all these problems. But it will take a great deal of time, money and political will to achieve such a system.

TEXT WORK

1. Pronounce correctly and transcribe. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Densely, surprising, exception, comprehensive, square, covered, fortune, Virgin Value ticket, piece, coach, struggle, government, route, urgently, achieve.

2. Compare and mind the difference:

BrE	AmE
timetable	schedule
deal	bargain
metre	meter
centimetre	centimeter
kilometre	kilometer
motorway	highway

3. Answer the questions.

1. Why is the transport system in Britain fairly comprehensive?
2. What is the major transport system in many countries?
3. What is the major transport system in Britain?
4. What deters people from using trains?
5. What will happen if you just go to the station and buy a ticket?

6. Is it possible to get a good deal for tickets in Britain? Which way?
7. What is useful to know if you are travelling in London?
8. What are the advantages of coach service?
9. What are the disadvantages of coach service?
10. What solution to the problem does government have?
11. What is the situation with transportation and timetables nowadays?

4. Give Russian equivalents to the following words and word combinations. Find and translate sentences with them in the text.

Less than half the space, per square kilometer, notable exception, roads have taken over from rail, get on the train, special types of tickets, to book in advance, useful piece of advice, seven major stations, coach service, rush hour, the worst drawback, a long struggle through traffic, ultimate solution to the problem, a series of disconnected parts, compete with each other on one route, to address all these problems, political will.

5. Give English equivalents to the following words and word combinations.

Густо населенная страна; сеть автомобильных и железных дорог; основная система транспорта; безопасный, быстрый и комфортный способ передвижения; удерживать людей от...; по крайней мере; получить хорошую скидку; заплатить целое состояние; избежать неприятного сюрприза; билет в оба конца; в час пик; купить как минимум за три дня заранее; сэкономить ровно сто фунтов; полезный совет; нужная станция; без ограничений; есть недостатки; интегрированная транспортная система; улучшить систему общественного транспорта; паром; автовокзал находится в километрах от железнодорожного вокзала; расписание автобусов не совпадает с расписанием паромов; в конце концов вы берете такси; срочно необходимо; большое количество времени; достигать.

6. Make word combinations, translate them and find them in the text.

densely	way
fairly	exception
notable	hour
square	comprehensive
network of	ticket
comfortable	fortune

small	types
nasty	list
full	station
special	roads
return	shock
rush	populated
right	centimeter

* * *

advanced	drawback
coach	timetable
the worst	struggle
long	will
ultimate	problems
disconnected	needed
ferry	booking
bus	solution
waiting	room
urgently	station
to address	service
political	parts

7. Match the synonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

space	coach
motorway	by rail
deal	schedule
small fortune	nowadays
nasty shock	room
by train	round trip ticket
bus	at minimum
at present	way
return ticket	bargain
middle	a very unpleasant surprise
route	center
timetable	highway
at least	a great deal of money

8. Match the antonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

rule	merit
full price	without
best	off-peak hour

drawback	the same
rush hour	exception
achieve	private
with	lose
at least	maximum
different	wrong
right	reduced price
public	worst

9. Make antonyms to the following words using negative prefixes: *un-*, *in-*, *im-*, *il-*, *dis-*, or *mis-*. Consult the dictionary if necessary. Translate the pairs.

Advantage, connected, integrated, populated, pleasant, fair.

10. Make pronouns from these nouns using the suffix *-less*. Translate the pairs.

Use, help, top, bottom, price.

11. Make a summary of the text.

12. Compare British and Russian or American and Russian railway systems.

13. Choose the right word from the list below. Mind the forms of the verbs. Translate the story.

AT THE STATION

I was waiting on the _____ for the Bristol train when a _____ asked me if I knew the time of the next _____ to Oxford. I _____ have to go to Oxford myself, so I knew. A few _____ later a man wanted to know whether the train for Bristol had _____ left. I knew that it hadn't so of course I _____ him. The other man _____ why the train from Birmingham was late. I didn't know but I told him it was _____ because of the line repairs. I couldn't _____ why all these people were _____ me questions. Then I _____ that I was standing next to a big sign that said: "_____."

Already, usually, often, platform, train, minute, lady, to inquire, to ask, to understand, to notice, to tell, information.

14. Agree or disagree with the following statements. Give your reasons.

For agreement use:

I quite agree.

I agree with you.

I fully agree.

I think you are right.

For disagreement use:

Actually, I don't agree.

I don't think that's right.

I don't think that's true (correct).

Well, I am not sure if that's true (right, correct).

1. Trains in Britain are still a safe, fast and comfortable way of travelling.
2. Train ticket prices are not very high in Britain.
3. There are special types of train tickets in Britain.
4. There is one major railway station and a lot of smaller ones in London.
5. Coach services are more convenient than trains.
6. Coach services are much cheaper than trains.
7. The bus timetable usually doesn't match the ferry timetable.
8. Integrated transport system exists in Britain.
9. Integrated transport system exists in Russia.
10. Trains are the most popular transport.

15. Put the verbs in the right forms. Translate the story.

AMERICAN AND ENGLISHMAN

Once an Englishman (to travel) in the USA on business. On the train he (to share) the compartment with an American. The American (to want) (to impress) him and (to show) how big America (to be) so he (to say): "You see, my country (to be) so great that if you (to start) your trip in the afternoon in Taxes, the next morning you still (to be) in Taxes". The Englishman (to smile) and (to say): "I (not to know) that you (to have) such a poor railway system".

16. Discuss:

1. What does British government have to do to develop the integrated transport system in GB?
2. What are the biggest problems of British and Russian railways?
3. Is Russian railway network as comprehensive as British?
4. Do we have integrated transport system in Russia?
5. What needs improving in Russian transportation system?
6. What does Russian government have to do to improve transportation system in Russia?

17. Speak about... getting around Russia by train.

18. Explain why travelling by train in Russia is more popular than by plane or by car.

DIALOGUE 3

Read, translate, memorize and dramatize the dialogue.

TRAIN TICKET

Mr. Spenser: I'd like a ticket for the afternoon train to Brussels.

Ticket agent: What class?

Mr. Spenser: First. I'd like a corner seat in a nonsmoker, facing the engine.

Ticket agent: One way or round trip?

Mr. Spenser: One way, please.

Ticket agent: It's 34.20.

Mr. Spenser: Do you accept credit cards?

Ticket agent: Only Visa and Master.

Mr. Spenser: I've got a Visa.

Ticket agent: Here is your ticket. The train is departing in fifteen minutes.

Mr. Spenser: What time does it get to Brussels?

Ticket agent: Just a second... It is due to arrive in Brussels at eight sharp.

Mr. Spenser: Thank you very much.

Ticket agent: Have a pleasant journey!

19. Read and translate the announcements.

ANNOUNCEMENT 1

The 9.32 train to Brighton, calling at East Croydon, Gatwick airport and Brighton only, is now standing at platform 16. A buffet car is available on this train.

ANNOUNCEMENT 2

The train is now standing at platform 6 is a 12:20 InterCity Express to Brighton. I repeat...

20. What other announcements can you hear at a railway station?

DIALOGUE 4

Read, translate, memorize and dramatize the dialogue.

GOING BY TRAIN

Ann: Here you are, John, at last!

John: I'm sorry I'm late. But I've got in a traffic jam.

Ann: Here's your ticket. Let's hurry or we'll miss the train.

John: Good. I'm glad you have bought return tickets. Is it a through train?

Ann: Yes, and we don't have to change, fortunately.

John: Fine. When is the train due in Glasgow?

Ann: It's due at 4:15 p.m.

John: It's very convenient. Shall we call a porter and ask him to take our suitcases to the compartment?

Ann: Yes, please.

21. Answer the questions.

1. Where does the conversation take place?
2. Why was John late?
3. Where are the friends going?
4. When do they plan to arrive in Glasgow?
5. Have they caught the train?
6. Is this a through train to Glasgow?
7. Why do they prefer return tickets?

22. Explain in English.

- to miss the train
- a through train
- to catch a train
- to be due
- to buy a single ticket/a return ticket
- to have to change

23. Open dialogues. Fill in the missing remarks:

1.

A: _____
B: Yes, it is. Fortunately we don't have to change.

2.

A: I'm sorry I'm late. I hope we'll catch the train.

B: _____

3.

A: I'm glad I've bought return tickets.

B: _____

4.

A: _____

B: It's due in Manchester at 8.15 a.m.

24. Translate into English.

1. Давай поторопимся, а то мы опоздаем на поезд.
2. Им не надо делать пересадку. Есть прямой поезд.
3. Хотя она приехала на вокзал в последний момент, она успела на поезд.
4. В какое время поезд должен быть по расписанию в Москве? — В 9 часов утра.
5. Мы всегда стараемся покупать билеты в оба конца, это удобнее и дешевле.
6. Где купить билеты? — Касса вон там.
7. Сколько стоит детский билет? — Для детей до 12 лет билет стоит половину стоимости взрослого билета. — Дайте мне два полных билета и два детских.
8. Мы должны брать билет на ребенка? Ему только 1 год. — Нет, дети до 2 лет бесплатно.
9. Вы бы хотели место в вагоне для курящих или для некурящих? — Я бы хотел для некурящих, и нижнее место, пожалуйста.
10. Дайте мне, пожалуйста, билет в оба конца до Дрездена на завтра. Я бы хотел место у окна по ходу поезда.
11. Пойдемте на платформу, поезд уже подали. Я пойду в вагон и займу места. Билеты у тебя? — Да, конечно, только не забудь, что я не могу ехать против хода поезда.
12. Простите, носильщик, вы свободны? Отнесите, пожалуйста, мой багаж к третьему вагону. А вы можете донести багаж до купе?
13. Можете положить ручную кладь на полку для багажа в вагоне.
14. Не кладите мой чемодан на полку.

15. Когда следующий поезд? — Через 15 минут, посадка уже объявлена.
16. Когда мы отправляемся? — Уже скоро. По расписанию осталось 5 минут.
17. У нас на билетах места в разных купе. Что мы будем делать? — Я думаю, мы сможем поменяться местами с кем-нибудь.
18. Я буду ждать тебя около камеры хранения через полчаса.

25. Discuss why and when people prefer travelling by train. Give your reasons.

26. Describe your last trip by train.

27. Role play.

Student A	Student B
1. Ask your friend about his/her last train trip.	1. Answer your friend's questions about your trip. Give as many details as possible.
2. You are a traveller in a compartment of a train going to London. You can tell from his/her appearance that your neighbor is a foreigner, too. Talk to your neighbor.	2. You are a traveller in a compartment of a train going to London. You can tell from his/her appearance that your neighbor is a foreigner, too. Talk to your neighbor.
3. You are a traveller. You don't remember where you put your ticket.	3. You are a ticket collector. Check passengers' tickets.
4. You are a traveller. You need information about trains to Chicago. Go to the information office and ask the office about timetable, prices and discounts.	4. You are an officer at the information desk. Answer the questions of the travellers about timetable, prices and discounts.
5. You are a family waiting for your train in the waiting lounge of a railway station. Talk about trains and your trip.	

Swap roles.

Use:
I wonder..
Could you tell me ...
Please tell me...

28. Read the information and discuss it. Make at least 10 questions and ask your friends.

Vocabulary

pass — проездной
to take a nap — поспать, вздремнуть
to chat — поболтать
fare — стоимость, плата за проезд
cover — покрытие, зона действия

RAIL PASSES & TICKETS

More than 240,000 Kilometers for you. Enjoy every journey in modern, high-tech and fast trains. Train travel in Europe is comfortable, relaxing and efficient. You can admire the passing scenery, enjoy a meal, take a nap or chat with your fellow travellers. You will arrive on time, rested, refreshed and right in the heart of town where most European train stations are located.

Explore all Europe by train with Euro Railways. From high speed trains (TGV) to the romantic trains that run in the countryside. Here you can find information on some options of passes:

Choosing the right pass and the right fare

In accordance with your itinerary, age, trip duration and number of persons travelling together you will find the best option for your European Rail Trip.

Saver fare when travel 2 or more persons,

Senior fares for older than 60 years

Youth fares under 26 years old.

Children between 4 and 11 years old pay half adult.

Multi Countries Passes

Multi Countries	Duration	Cover	Fares (from US\$)		
			Saver	Senior	Youth
Eurail Select	any 5 days within 2 months	3, 4 or 5 countries	316	n/a	241
Eurail Flexipass	10 days within 2 months	17 countries	592	n/a	451
Eurail	15 consecutives days	17 countries	498	n/a	382
BritRail + Ireland	any 5 days within 1 month	UK + Ireland	359	n/a	n/a
ScanRail Flexipass	any 5 days within 2 months	Scandinavia	291	258	203
European East Pass	any 5 days within 1 month	European East	162	n/a	n/a
Balkan Flexipass	any 5 days within 1 month	Balkans Countries	189	152	112
Benelux Flexipass	any 5 days within 1 month	Belgium, Neth, Lux	122	n/a	109

Low Season Fare (Jan, Feb, Nov, Dec)

Multi Countries	Duration	Cover	Fares (from US\$)		
			Saver	Senior	Youth
BritRail Classic (25 % off)	4 consecutives days	United Kingdom	189	142	116
BritRail Flexipass (25 % off)	any 4 days within 2 months	United Kingdom	239	179	142

There are also two countries passes and one country passes.
For more information call...

29. Translate into English.

ЕВРОПЕЙСКИЕ ПОЕЗДА

Европейские высокоскоростные фирменные поезда — это InterCityExpress, соединяющий крупнейшие мегаполисы Германии, французские Thalys и TGV, итальянский EuroStar (не путать с

EuroStar, соединяющим Британские острова с Европой), испанский Thalgo и другие.

Здесь скорость и комфорт еще выше, но единого для всех стран стандарта нет. Так, например, роскошный немецкий красавец — серебристый InterCityExpress — предлагает пассажирам первого класса наушники для прослушивания музыки, видео и свежие газеты, а также закуски и напитки из бара, но уже за отдельную плату. А вот скромный французский Thalys обязательно вкусно накормит своих VIP-пассажиров, которые решили, например, проехать поездом из Кельна в Париж. За сменой блюд 4 часа поездки пролетят незаметно... И вы уже в Париже!

30. Choose the right word from the list below. Mind the forms of the verbs. Translate the story.

MARK TWAIN IN FRANCE

Once Mark Twain, the _____ American writer, was travelling in France. He was going by _____ to Dijon. That afternoon he was very tired and _____ to sleep. So he asked the _____ to wake him up and put him off the train when they _____ Dijon.

"I shall _____ protest," he said to the conductor, "because I am a heavy sleeper, but do not pay any _____ to that. Put me off the train anyway."

A few minutes later Mark Twain _____ to sleep. Later, when he woke up, it was _____ and the train was already in Paris. He understood that the conductor had forgotten to _____ him in Dijon. He was very angry. He ran up to the conductor and _____ to shout at him. "I have never been so _____ in my life", he said. The conductor looked at him calmly, "You are hot _____ so angry as the American whom I put off the train in Dijon."

Night, angry, conductor, attention, train, famous, to go, to reach, half, probably, to begin, to wake up, to want.

DIALOGUE 5

Read, translate, memorize and dramatize the dialogue.

AT THE RAILWAY STATION

- Jane:** Hello, Mr. Blake. We're are not late, are we?
Mr. Blake: Hello, Jane. No, you're not late. I was a bit early.
Jane: When does the train leave?
Mr. Blake: It leaves at four twenty-seven (4.27). We don't need to hurry; we'll be able to catch it.
Jane: Is it an express?
Mr. Blake: No, it's a stopping train.
Jane: Shall I buy the tickets, Mr. Blake?
Mr. Blake: Oh, yes, I forgot about them. There's the booking-office.
Jane: Do you know how much the fare is?
Mr. Blake: Seventy-five pence for a single ticket and one pound fifty for a return. But ask for a weekend return. That might be cheaper. And ask for a time-table, too. You'll need it on Sunday.
Jane: All right. I'll meet you at the entrance to the platform. Which platform is ours?
Mr. Blake: Platform sixteen. I'll take your suitcase. Which one's yours?
Jane: That one's mine.
Mr. Blake: Hurry up. The train leaves at four twenty-seven. (4.27)
Jane: From platform sixteen?
Mr. Blake: Yes.

31. Role play.

Student A	Student B
1. You are a passenger who has just got on a train. You see an empty seat next to a passenger in the third row. Ask if you can take that seat.	1. You are a passenger on a train. The seat next to you is empty, but you keep it for your friend who is going to join you at the next stop. Tell the other passenger about it.
2. You are a passenger. Ask the conductor on the train about the facilities and services you can use, and if they are free or not.	2. You are a conductor on the InterCityExpress. Tell your passenger about facilities and services they can use on the train.

Swap roles.

32. Discuss:

1. Why people travel by train.
2. What things you need to do to make your train trip comfortable and enjoying.

33. Speak about... your last train trip.

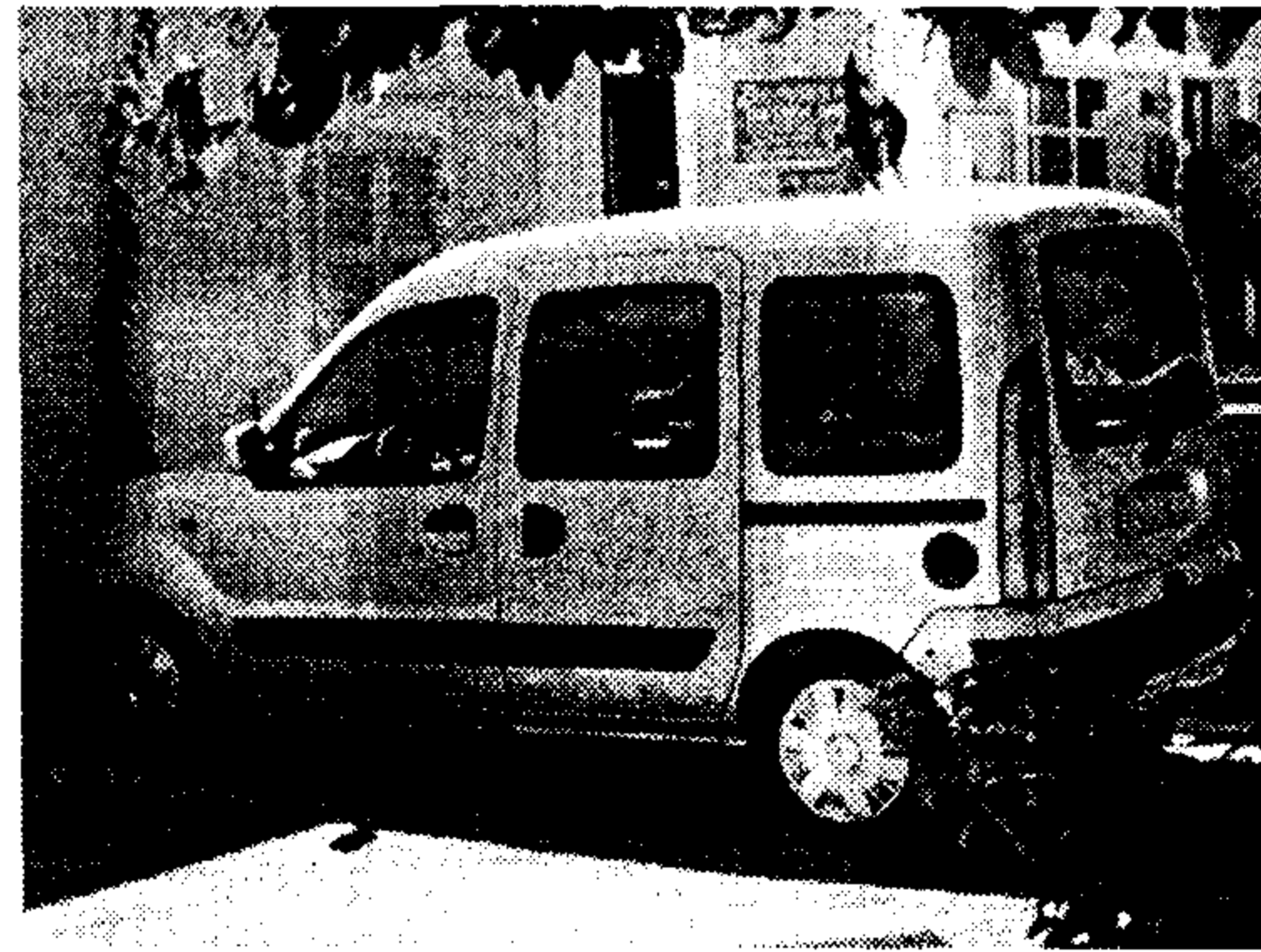
34. Write an essay on the topic "My Unforgettable Journey by Train". Use as many words from the unit as possible.

PROJECT WORK

1. You are a **manager at a travel agency**. Advertise on a railway company your agency works with. Give information about routes, destinations, prices, discounts, special offers and so on. Make a presentation for your customers.

2. You are a **travel agent**. Your client wants to travel in Europe by train. Make up an itinerary for him. Describe trains and rail system in Europe (choose any country), its advantages and disadvantages. Present the information to your client. Make your presentation attractive and informative.

Unit 5. Travelling By Car



GROUP TALK

- Do you drive?

If yes:

1. Do you often drive?
2. Do you like driving?
3. How long have you been driving?
4. Do you have a valid driver's license?
5. Do you travel by car a lot? Why?
6. When and where was your last trip? Tell us about it.

If no:

1. Would you like to drive? Why?
2. Do you plan to get a driver's license? When?
3. Have you ever travelled in a car?
4. Did you like it? Why? Tell us about your experience.

TEXT 1

Vocabulary

to own — владеть
 ownership — владение
 to cut — сокращать
 painful — болезненный
 rural — сельский

to spread — распространяться
 to wither away — исчезать, увядать
 over-crowded — переполненный, перегруженный
 motorway — шоссе
 traffic — поток машин, дорожное движение
 traffic jam — «пробка»
 road — дорога
 phenomenon — явление
 immediately — немедленно, сразу же, тотчас же
 carapace — панцирь
 behind the wheel — за рулем
 at the wheel — за рулем
 evil — зло, злой
 rage — ярость, бешенство
 accident — авария
 competition — соревнование, конкуренция
 frustration — расстройство, отчаяние, досада
 exhaust fumes — выхлопные газы
 to increase — увеличивать(ся)
 to decrease — уменьшать(ся)
 brakes — тормоза
 lights — фары
 mature — зрелый
 obvious — очевидный
 vehicle — транспортное средство
 significant — значительный
 seat belt — ремень безопасности
 oddity — странность
 to switch — переключать(ся)
 excuse — оправдание
 to blame — винить
 to create — создавать
 lack — недостаток
 consequences — последствия
 efficient — эффективный
 frequently — часто
 to fail to do — не смочь
 failure — провал
 cause — причина
 embarrassment — смущение, стыд, неловкое положение
 decision — решение
 The (English) Channel — Ла-Манш

Read and translate the text.

ROAD RAGE

Fifty years ago, private car ownership was growing rapidly, and public transport was losing its dominant role. The process seemed quite natural and, on the whole, a good thing. In the 1960s, British Railways cut hundreds of lines and stations. It was painful for small rural communities at the time, but, as car ownership spread, they adjusted to the situation. Governments were happy to see the hugely expensive state-owned railway wither away.

Roads became over-crowded, of course, and the solution to that problem was simple — build more roads. A massive new motorway around Outer London, the M25, was opened in 1986. However, this provided a dramatic example of a phenomenon which had been noticed by experts many times before: building new roads appears to generate new traffic. The M25 was overloaded immediately, and now it is the site of some of the country's worst traffic jams almost every day.

It has long been noted that car driving has some strange psychological effects on human beings. The Canadian philosopher Marshall McLuhan said: "The car has become the carapace, the protective and aggressive shell, of urban man." People who are normally quiet and pleasant are often transformed when they get behind the wheel of a car. As in the R. L. Stevenson story, the good Mr. Jekyll becomes the evil Mr. Hyde. The idea used to be a common theme for comedians. By the 1990s, however, it was no longer a joke, and a new phrase was coined: road rage. More and more often, people were getting out of their cars and starting fights with other drivers; murders have been committed. Hours of isolation, competition and frustration, while breathing in exhaust fumes, are obviously not good for people.

Road accident figures, on the other hand, have not increased with the number of vehicles on the road; in fact they have decreased. Various reasons are suggested for this: modern cars have better lights and brakes, and the culture of driving has become more mature. One obvious reason is the slowness of city traffic — nobody gets killed when the cars are standing still. Whatever the reasons, Britain has a better record than most European neighbours; the number of deaths per 10,000 vehicles is less than half that of France, for example. Another significant factor is that seat belt laws for vehicle drivers and passengers are respected by almost everyone.

Britain is one of the few countries in the world (Japan is another) where cars drive on the left. It would be possible to change: they used to

drive on the left in Sweden. But, like Japan, Britain is an island nation, so there is not much road traffic across its borders. In any case, many British people are rather proud of little oddities like this. There are no plans to change.

PROBLEMS OF PUBLIC TRANSPORT

However crowded the roads are, British car owners usually find a reason not to switch to public transport. The buses are too slow, or the trains are too expensive, or no public services actually take them where they want to go. In many cases, these are just the excuses of people who really want to sit in their own cars with the radio on, and who blame others for creating the traffic jams. But there is also some truth in their criticisms. There has been a serious lack of government investment in transport, with predictable consequences.

The London Underground or the Tube, as Londoners call it, started in 1863 as the first underground line in the world, and is still the longest, with over 400 kilometres of lines. When it is working well, it is extremely quick and efficient. But those who use it every day complain of terrible delays when things go wrong. The electrical engineering is old, and it breaks down frequently. And government failed to invest the huge sums of money which would be needed to bring the Tube up to the 21st century standards.

One particular failure has been a cause of considerable embarrassment to the British since the opening of the Channel Tunnel. Eurostar trains from Paris travel at up to 300 kilometres per hour in France, but have to slow down to 80 kilometres per hour once in Britain because the high-speed line has not yet been built. Parliament only made the decision to build the line after the tunnel had opened. This sad story seems to symbolise all the country's transport problems.

TEXT WORK

1. Pronounce correctly and transcribe. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Private, ownership, spread, phenomenon, psychological, human, carapace, quiet, wheel, phrase, fight, murder, hours, exhaust, figures, accident, vehicles, mature, neighbours, deaths, actually, serious, consequences, extremely, failure, cause.

2. Compare and mind the difference:

BrE	AmE
Petrol	Gasoline or Gas (for short)
Petrol station	Gas pump
Kilometre	Kilometer
To hire a car	To rent a car
Motorist	Driver
Bonnet	Hood
Boot	Trunk
Neighbour	Neighbor
To symbolise	To symbolize

3. Answer the questions.

1. When did private car ownership start growing rapidly?
2. Why did public transportation lose its dominant role?
3. Why did railways cut lines and stations?
4. Why was government happy to see the railway wither away?
5. Why did roads become overcrowded?
6. What was the solution for overcrowded roads?
7. What strange phenomenon occurred after building the new road?
8. What is M25? Why was it built? What happened to it immediately?
9. What psychological effect does car driving have on human beings?
10. What is "road rage" and why does it happen?
11. Why don't road accident figures increase with number of vehicles on the road?
12. What can you say about seat belt laws for vehicle drivers and passengers in Britain?
13. What side of the road do British drive on?
14. Do they plan to change? Why?
15. What other countries drive or used to drive on the left?
16. Why don't British car owners shift to public transport?
17. What does British transport lack seriously?
18. What is the common name of London Underground?
19. Does the Tube work according to the 21st century standards? Why?
20. What has been a cause of considerable embarrassment to the British since the Channel Tunnel was opened?

4. Give Russian equivalents to the following words and word combinations. Find and translate sentences with them in the text.

Railways wither away, private car ownership, small rural communities, roads became over-crowded, massive new motorway, Outer London, dramatic example, overloaded immediately, traffic jam, human being, aggressive shell, common theme, it was no longer a joke, a new phrase was coined, road rage, to commit a murder, obviously not good for people, road accident figures, mature culture of driving, better record, number of deaths per 10,000 vehicles, seat belt laws for vehicle drivers and passengers, to respect the laws, island nation, road traffic across the borders, however crowded the roads are, too slow, too expensive, the excuses of people, to blame others for creating the traffic jams, serious lack of government investment, terrible delays, when things go wrong, to fail to invest, to bring the Tube up to the 21st century standards, one particular failure, considerable embarrassment.

5. Give English equivalents to the following words and word combinations.

Быстро расти; терять доминирующее положение; в целом; болезненно; приспособиться к ситуации; решение проблемы; явление, отмеченное экспертами; много раз и ранее; строительство новых дорог приводит к увеличению потока машин; психологический эффект на людей; городской человек; сесть за руль автомобиля; избитая тема юмористов; начать драку с другим водителем; дышать выхлопными газами; с одной стороны; с другой стороны; фактически; различные причины; современные автомобили; фары и тормоза; одна очевидная причина; какие бы ни были причины; другой значимый фактор; одна из немногих стран мира; как Япония; левостороннее движение; в любом случае; маленькие страны; найти причину; не переходить на общественный транспорт; во многих случаях; предсказуемые последствия; лондонское метро (2); первая линия метро в мире; исключительно быстрая и эффективная; ломаться; открытие тоннеля под Ла-Маншем; триста километров в час; вынужден замедлить скорость; высокоскоростная линия.

6. Make word combinations, translate them and find them in the text.

dominant
natural

solution
beings

rural	traffic
over-crowded	jam
simple	shell
massive	role
dramatic	philosopher
generate	effect
overloaded	process
traffic	motorway
psychological	roads
human	immediately
Canadian	communities
aggressive	example

* * *

urban	rage
get behind	reasons
common	the wheel
road	accident
start	law
commit	fight
exhaust	line
road	man
underground	record
various	fumes
modern	cars
better	factor
significant	murder
seat belt	theme

* * *

driving	reason
island	consequences
road	embarrassment
little	nation
find a	trains
public	culture
serious	investment
government	delay
predictable	lack
terrible	traffic
electrical	line
considerable	story

Eurostar	engineering
high-speed	oddities
sad	transport

7. Match the synonyms in columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

very fast	overloaded
overcrowded	carapace
highway	huge
immediately	frequently
people	rapidly
shell	human beings
very often	anger
large	clear
common	motorway
rage	usual
obvious	at once

8. Match the antonyms in columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

on the whole	urban
rural	evil
simple	on the other hand
good	in particular
worst	low-speed
slow	island
continent	quiet
on one hand	best
increase	slow down
speed up	fast
aggressive	private
state-owned	decrease
high-speed	difficult

9. Form antonyms using negative prefixes *un-*, *in-*, *il-*, *im-*, *dis-*, *mis-*. Consult the dictionary if necessary. Translate the pairs.

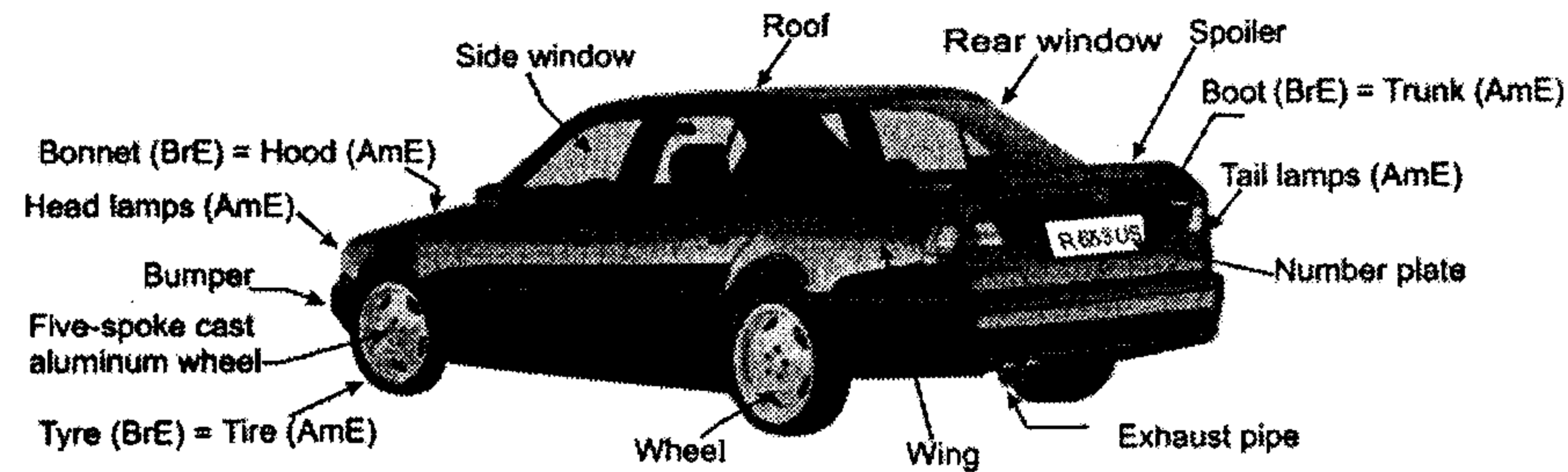
Pleasant, significant, mature, expensive, predictable, considerable.

10. Give plural forms of the following nouns:

Phenomenon, oddity, bus, story, century, law, man, community, line, case.

11. Make a summary of the text.

12. Study the car appearance. Describe the car (at least 12—15 sentences).



13. Match the words with definitions.

Engine	— covered space in the back where you put and carry your luggage.
Driver or motorist	— a circular object that turns around on a rod attached to its center, four such things fixed underneath the vehicle and actually move it.
Hood or bonnet	— a metal cover over the engine of the vehicle.
Trunk or boot	— the part of the vehicle that produces the power to make it move.
Wheel	— a person who drives the vehicle.
Steering wheel	— a pedal in a vehicle which is pressed to make the vehicle go faster.
Speedometer	— the circular object held by the driver when driving, used to direct the vehicle's movement.
Accelerator	— the gauge that shows the speed you are driving at.

14. Make at least 12—15 sentences about other things necessary for the car. Study the vocabulary.

The Car Vocabulary

windscreen — лобовое стекло
rear window = back window — заднее стекло
side window — боковое стекло

windscreen-wiper, steering wiper (AmE) — дворник на лобовом стекле
back wiper — задний дворник
bonnet (BrE) = hood (AmE) — капот
boot (BrE) = trunk (AmE) — багажник
short range light — ближний свет
long-range light — дальний свет
headlights — фары
head lamps (AmE) — передние фары
tail lamps (AmE) — задние фары
indicator — индикатор поворота
spoiler — спойлер
front — передний
rear — задний
steering wheel — руль
backward movement — задний ход
number plate — табличка с номером автомобиля
wing — крыло
bumper — бампер
seatbelt — ремень безопасности
wheel — колесо
five-spoke cast aluminum wheel — литое пятиспицевое алюминиевое колесо
tyre (BrE) = tire (AmE) — шина/покрышка
disk — диск
roof — крыша
door — дверь
handle — ручка двери
exhaust pipe — выхлопная труба
driver's seat — сиденье водителя
bucket seat — переднее пассажирское сиденье, одиночное сиденье
bench seat — сиденье в виде скамьи, лавки
rear seat — заднее сиденье
dashboard — приборная панель
steering wheel — руль
speedometer — спидометр
fuel gauge — индикатор топлива
horn — клаксон/сигнал
glove compartment / glove box — бардачок
ignition — зажигание, замок зажигания
brake pedal — педаль тормоза
accelerator — педаль газа (акселератор)

clutch — сцепление, педаль сцепления

handbrake — ручной тормоз

transmission, gear box — коробка передач

gear lever — рычаг переключения скоростей

automatic — автоматический

manual — ручной

to rev — увеличивать скорость, увеличивать число оборотов двигателя

15. Choose the right word from the list below. Translate the article.

2005 HONDA CIVIC

Few carmakers offer the range or diversity Honda builds into the Civic _____. There are sedans, coupes and a hatchback, with an emphasis on convenience, performance or fuel efficiency and low _____ of operation. All are notable for their excellent _____ economy, free-revving engines and solid handling, including the electrically assisted Hybrid. Up-level Civics come with powerful VTEC engines that deliver brisk _____. The Si hatchback is the flagship performance model, and a favorite among young enthusiasts _____ for good reason. All provide superb comfort for front-seat passengers.

Three specialized Civics are designed specifically to _____ environmental impact and deliver better fuel economy than all but a few cars currently available. The Civic HX coupe drives on regular unleaded. There's also a Civic GX sedan that _____ natural gas; Honda claims it has the cleanest internal combustion _____ in the world.

Subtle styling changes were made for 2004 when bumpers, hoods, headlights and grilles on the coupe and sedan were _____ to emphasize a baby-brother resemblance to the slick, smooth Honda Accord. The sporty Si hatchback was trimmed with new head— and tail lamps. All Civics were improved with less visible updates that reduced _____ and vibration inside.

Nearly four decades after its introduction, the Honda Civic can rightfully be called an _____ icon. It remains one of America's best-selling small _____ for good reason.

By Mitch McCullough

Acceleration, engine, cars, line, noise, fuel, to redesign, cost, automotive, to burn, to minimize, drivers.

16. Say if these statements are true or false. Correct the false statements.

1. Private car ownership has grown greatly.
2. All the territory of Britain is covered with roads.
3. Britain doesn't build new roads any more.
4. Britain has no problems with traffic.
5. Road rage is an ancient phenomenon.
6. Road accident figures increase with the number of vehicles on the road.
7. In Britain the cars drive on the left.
8. Britain is the only country in the world where cars drive on the left.
9. There is no public transport in Britain.
10. There are many cars and drivers in Britain.

17. Say what you think about the following statements. Give your points.

Use:

I don't really know, but I think...

To tell the truth I know little about..., but ...

I don't actually know much about it, but ...

... is something I don't know very much about, but ...

1. Britain has a lot of problems with traffic.
2. The more roads people build the more traffic they create.
3. The Tube is modern and extremely efficient.
4. The Channel Tunnel is a high speed road.
5. Drivers create traffic jams themselves.
6. Road rage is a common phenomenon all over the world.
7. British government needs to invest more money into the Channel Tunnel.
8. The British are proud of driving on the left side of the road.

18. Discuss:

1. Road rage phenomenon exists in Russia and in Britain alike.
2. Road rules are respected by almost everybody in Britain. What about Russia?
3. British drivers prefer not to switch to public transport. Why?
4. Cars are the most dangerous means of transport.
5. The Channel Tunnel is a cause of a considerable embarrassment to the British. Will the situation change?

19. Speak about... seat belt laws in Russia. Compare them with British ones.

20. Explain why in Britain the cars still drive on the left.

DIALOGUE 1

Vocabulary

to rent a car — взять автомобиль напрокат

rental agency = rentals — прокат автомобилей

special weekend rate — специальная цена со скидкой на выходные

regular rate — обычная цена

equipment — снаряжение

I'm used to driving... — я привык водить ...

station wagon — автомобиль с кузовом «универсал»; многоместный, чаще всего пятидверный легковой автомобиль

automatic transmissions — автоматическая коробка передач

to pick up — забрать

to include — включать

insurance — страховка

Read, translate, memorize and dramatize the dialogue.

RENTING A CAR

Dug: Good afternoon. U-Drive-It rentals. May I help you?

Man: Hi, I'm interested in renting a car for the weekend and I want to know if you have a special weekend rate.

Dug: Yes, we do. What sort of car are you interested in?

Man: Well, we're a family of three and we have camping equipment. I'm used to driving a small car, but this time I need something larger because of the family and the equipment.

Dug: You can take a station wagon. Our cars are good models and have automatic transmissions. When will you be interested in renting the car?

Man: Well, we are leaving on Friday, July the 7th, and we'll return on Monday, that'll be the 10th. When do we have to pick up and return the car to get that special weekend rent?

Dug: For the weekend rate you'll have to pick up the car after four o'clock on Friday afternoon and then return by ten o'clock on Monday morning.

Man: After 4 on Friday and return by 10 on Monday. Okay. What will be the price for that?

Dug: Well, our regular rate is \$79.95, but for those special weekend rates you'll get it for \$59.95.

Man: Aha, that is \$59.95. Does it include insurance?

Dag: No, the insurance is 10 dollars more. But I really recommend it. Our rent is still the lowest in town.

Man: Well. I'd like to think about it. I'll call you back.

Dug: Sure. That's fine. Listen, when you call back, ask for Dug, that's me.

Man: Good bye.

Dug: Take care.

21. Role play.

Student A	Student B
<i>You are a customer. You want to rent a car (choose the period of time). Call a car rental agency and find out all necessary information about cars available, prices, discounts and requirement. Make your decision or call back later.</i>	<i>You are a manager at a car rental agency. Answer the customer's questions; give detailed information about cars available, prices and requirements. Offer a discount. Persuade the customer to rent the car at your agency.</i>

Swap roles.

22. Fill in the gaps with suitable prepositions and adverbs where necessary. Translate the article.

WHAT'S NEW FOR THE 2005 NISSAN SENTRA?

Body-colored door handles and a new front grille treatment are added ... all 2005 Nissan Sentras. Base 1.8 models have a new storage bin located ... the upper dash. The 2005 Nissan Sentra 1.8 S gets standard cruise control, a trip computer, and revised seat fabrics ... create a more compelling value equation. Sporty Sentra SE-R models also have new seat fabric, ... a revised shift knob ... the Spec V version. Spec V models also receive upgrades designed ... improve shift action. Four new colors and two new option packages debut ... 2005. The new 1.8 S Audio Pack-

age includes a 300-watt Rockford Fosgate sound system, a six-disc in-dash CD changer, and nine speakers including a subwoofer. The new 1.8 S Sport Appearance Package adds fog lights, a rear spoiler, 16-inch alloy wheels, the SE-R's front grille, and leather trim ... the steering wheel and shift knob. Last year's 2.5 S model is cancelled, but a new 1.8 S Special Edition takes its place, blending the Audio and Sport Appearance packages ... the SE-R's new seat fabric and unique badges.

Advantages of the 2005 Nissan Sentra:

- SULEV 1.8-liter engine ... base and S models
- High-powered 2.5-liter engine ... SE-R and Spec V versions
- Quality interior materials
- Competitive pricing

Objections to the 2005 Nissan Sentra:

- Cramped rear seat room
- Dowdy styling
- Archaic rear suspension design

AutoSite's Advice:

Consider the 2005 Nissan Sentra to be an also-ran ... the economy car sweepstakes. ... styling that has been cleaned up, this is an innocuous and forgettable ride unless you pop ... the sporty SE-R Spec V or your environmentalist leanings dictate that you must drive a vehicle ... ultra-low emissions (if this is the case, may we show you a Ford Focus ... a PZEV motor?). Add ... a lack ... rear seat room, and the Nissan Sentra gets lost ... a sea ... good ... excellent competitors such ... the Honda Civic, the Ford Focus, the Mazda 3 and the Hyundai Elantra.

23. Translate into English.

АВТОСАЛОН В НЬЮ-ЙОРКЕ

В Нью-Йорке открылось самое представительное автошоу за последние 100 лет. Выставка расположена на 11-й авеню в Манхэттене. Как ожидают организаторы, с 26 марта на 76 тысячах квадратных метров выставки побывает более 1.5 млн. человек.

Английская компания Bentley покажет Bentley Continental — Flying Spur, премьеры которой уже состоялась в Москве. Собранный вручную автомобиль мощностью в 552 лошадиные силы разгоняется до 312 километров в час. Салон выполнен из кожи молодых телят, выращенных в Северной Европе и ни разу не покусанных насекомыми.

Ford в очередной раз показывает свой Mustang. За почти 50-летнюю историю этой модели любовь публики несколько спала, но Ford продолжает попытки подогреть к ней интерес. На этот раз на стенде появились Ford Mustang кабриолет, а также Shelby Cobra GT500.

Из громких премьер стоит отметить самый мощный Cadillac XLR. Под капотом разместился двигатель V8 Northstar мощностью 440 л.с. Кадиллак развивает скорость в 100 км/ч менее чем за 5 секунд. Кроме мощного мотора новинку отличают задний привод и автоматическая коробка передач с шестью скоростями. Если зрители проявят к новинке должный интерес, то вполне возможно, что XLR появится на рынке в конце 2006-го либо в начале 2007 года.

Немецкие концерны тоже привезли в Америку свои новинки. Mercedes-Benz привез в США новый R-класс. По размерам он больше всего напоминает Chrysler Pacifica. Выпускать новинку будут на том же заводе, где сейчас делают ML. Что же касается начала продаж, то немцы обещают продать первые экземпляры уже в конце этого года.

У концерна BMW дела на американском рынке идут великолепно. Спрос на их не самые дешевые автомобили намного превышает предложение. В день открытия салона было объявлено, что X3 теперь будут собирать даже ночью. Благодаря этому, а также небывалому спросу на автомобили пятой серии и MINI, BMW может установить в этом году абсолютный рекорд продаж.

24. Write an essay on the topic "My / My Friend's Driving Experience".

TEXT 2

Vocabulary

- driver's license** — водительское удостоверение, водительские права
- to drive** — водить автомобиль
- wheel** — колесо
- steering wheel** — руль
- at the wheel, behind the wheel** — за рулем
- casual ease** — непринужденность, легкость
- to honk** — сигналить
- itinerary** — курс, маршрут
- front passenger seat** — переднее пассажирское кресло

hastily — поспешно
to run a company — управлять компанией
DMV (department of motor vehicles) — управление автомобильным транспортом
gulp — глоток
buckled — пристегнутый
to buckle up — пристегнуть ремни в автомобиле
chauffeur — шофер
to veer — менять направление, поворачивать, отклоняться
beholden — обязанный
feasibility — осуществимость, выполнимость
a daylight-hours-only license — право на управление автомобилем только в светлое время суток
make of auto — модель, марка автомобиля
visibility — видимость
learner's permit — ученические водительские права (AmE)
tutorial — урок
station wagon — автомобиль с кузовом «универсал»; многоместный, чаще всего пятидверный легковой автомобиль
going at a speed of ... miles per hour — ехать со скоростью ... миль в час
misjudge — не рассчитать, неверно рассчитать дистанцию
cone — конус (ограничитель дороги при дорожных работах)
road workers — дорожные рабочие
to dash — бросаться, ринуться, мчаться, нестись (сломя голову)
ample — богатый, обильный, достаточный, обширный
chunk = bulk — большое количество
to feel left behind — чувствовать себя покинутым, брошенным
to be stuck — завязнуть, застрять
drudgery — тяжелая, нудная, монотонная работа
traffic jam — «пробка»
self-service gas pump — автозаправочные станции самообслуживания
convertible — кабриолет
highway — автострада
adolescent — подросток
sophistication — изысканность, утонченность, изощренность, искусственность
worldliness — опыт, мудрость
cab — такси (государственное такси в США)
car service — такси (частное такси в США)

hardware store — хозтовары, хозяйственный магазин
feeling of abandonment — чувство заброшенности, покинутости
unstinting — неограниченный
contemplating — спокойно ожидающий, понимающий
motorist — автомобилист
to pledge — класться
ineffable — невыразимый, несказанный, неопиcуемый (inexpressible, indescribable, unspeakable)
Starbucks — название сети кофеен в США
dunkin' donuts — название сети пончиковых в США
toys r us — название сети магазинов игрушек в США

Read and translate the text.

HOW I LEARNED A DRIVER'S LICENSE MEANS MORE THAN GETTING AROUND — IT MEANS FREEDOM

Looking out the window, I smile at the familiar sight of my five-year-old son and three-year-old daughter playing in the parked car. Matthew "drives" with my husband's casual ease, hands resting lightly on the wheel, honking at regular intervals to signal another stop on the itinerary: McDonald's, Dunkin' Donuts, Toys R Us.

"We're playing Daddy and Mommy," Karen announces when I come outside. "I'm sitting in your place," she says, patting the front passenger seat. "Girls don't drive."

"No, no, sweetheart," I say hastily, giving her my girls-can-do-anything lecture ("Your pediatrician, Dr. Beth, is a girl, and Jared's mommy runs a big company and she's a girl"): "Girls *do* drive. It's just that *I* don't drive."

It isn't that I don't know how to drive. I'm not what an out-of-state friend refers to as "one of those neurotic non-driving New Yorkers." It's that I was born with a brand of nearsightedness that even glasses could never correct enough to let me pass the vision test at the DMV.

When my 16-year-old classmates were having their first big gulp of freedom, I was still buckled into the passenger seat. My friends Jill, Pam and Marilyn, rather than my mother and father, became my chauffeurs. I veered between feeling endlessly beholden and eternally babyish.

My parents did what they thought was helpful, suggesting — ophthalmologist's report to the contrary — that it was nerves rather than nearsightedness that was grounding me. They arranged for private lessons, looked into the feasibility of a daylight-hours-only license, and researched

what make of auto provided particularly good visibility. When I got my learner's permit (no vision exam required), my mother even hustled me into her station wagon for a tutorial.

It was brief. Going at a speed of 25 miles per hour down a suburban road, I misjudged the distance between the car and a long queue of orange cones, knocking them down clean as a strike. "Out," said Mom. A half-dozen road workers witnessed my humiliation as I dashed out the driver's side to my old seat.

Twenty years later, I have ample experience at being out of step with a large chunk (bulk) of the population. I often feel left behind when others take off, stuck when I'd like to be gone.

I'm constantly told by those who wish to be comforting that driving is mostly drudgery: car pools, traffic jams, self-service gas pumps, trips to the airport for an aunt you wish had stayed home. But there's no talking to me. I'm caught up in the romance of the road, sitting behind the wheel of a convertible on — well, it just has to be the Pacific Coast Highway, the wind blowing through my hair, a Beach Boys song blasting on the radio. I view a set of car keys dangling casually from someone's hand in much the way, as an adolescent, I viewed a cigarette poised between someone's fingers: the height of worldliness and sophistication.

After college, I moved to New York, a city that made as much sense for my "condition" as for my career. Journalists sometimes have to go out of town, however, so my first order of business is always to check into the availability of public transportation (frequently nonexistent), car services (often unreliable) and cabs (always expensive). I'm convinced I'll lose work to colleagues with more dependable vision. On weekends in the country when my husband heads out alone for his cherished hardware store, I stand on the deck and watch the car become a dot in the distance, trying to shake my feeling of abandonment.

My husband is an unstinting and uncomplaining chauffeur, and my son, contemplating his own future as a motorist, has already pledged to take me to my beloved Starbucks. I have transportation. What I'm denied is that ineffable feeling of independence, the sweet awareness that without anyone's assistance I can light out for the territories or anywhere at all, far beyond what the eye can see.

By Joanne Kaufman

TEXT WORK

1. Pronounce correctly and transcribe. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Familiar, daughter, ease, casual, lightly, wheel, sweetheart, lecture, know, neurotic, nearsightedness, glasses, enough, vision, buckled, chauffeur, eternally, nerves, feasibility, license, daylight, hours, research, learner's permit, required, hustle, suburban, station, misjudge, queue, knock, witness, humiliation, experience, drudgery, caught, view, adolescent, height, sophistication, career, however, availability, frequently, unreliable, colleagues, hardware, future, pledged, beloved, denied, awareness, beyond, eye.

2. Compare and mind the difference:

BrE	AmE
Petrol	Gas
Petrol station	Gas pump
Kilometre	Kilometer

3. Answer the questions.

1. What are children playing and how?
2. Why does the author give her daughter her girl-can-do-anything lecture?
3. Why doesn't the author drive?
4. Why her classmates were having their first gulp of freedom at 16?
5. What about her at the age of 16?
6. What did her parents do to help?
7. What did her mother do when the author got her learner's permit?
8. What happened at the first tutorial?
9. How does the author feel twenty years later?
10. What do people say about driving? Why?
11. What does the author dream about?
12. What is author's profession?
13. What did she do after college to have a career?
14. What is her first order of business when she goes out of town?
15. What usually happens on the weekends?
16. How does the author feel about that?
17. What has her son promised her?
18. What is the author denied?

4. Translate the sentences. Convert distances in miles into kilometers:

- She drove at 25 miles per hour.
- City speed limit is 35 miles per hour.
- Highway speed limit is 90 miles per hour.

5. Give Russian equivalents to the following words and word combinations. Find and translate sentences with them in the text.

To drive with casual ease, hands resting lightly on the wheel, to honk at regular intervals, front passenger seat, girls-can-do-anything lecture, those neurotic non-driving New Yorkers, a brand of nearsightedness, DMV, buckled into the passenger seat, my chauffeurs, feeling endlessly beholden, eternally babyish, ophthalmologist's report to the contrary, daylight-hours-only license, learner's permit, station wagon, suburban road, to knock something down clean as a strike; "Out," said Mom; to be out of step, large chunk (bulk) of the population, to take off, I'd like to be gone, I'm constantly told, those who wish to be comforting, car pools, traffic jams, trips to the airport for an aunt you wish had stayed home, a set of car keys, the height of worldliness and sophistication, my first order of business is, frequently nonexistent, car service, cab, cherished hardware store, to watch the car become a dot in the distance, unstinting and uncomplaining chauffeur, my beloved Starbucks, ineffable feeling of independence, sweet awareness, I can light out for the territories, far beyond what the eye can see.

6. Give English equivalents to the following words and word combinations.

Смотря из окна; привычный вид; пятилетний сын; припаркованный автомобиль; объявить следующую остановку; по маршруту/в пути; управлять большой компанией; девочки водят машины, просто я не вожу; друг из другого штата; пройти проверку зрения; мои шестнадцатилетние одноклассники; первый большой глоток свободы; нервы, а не близорукость; организовать частные уроки; возможность получения водительского удостоверения на право вождения только в светлое время суток; марка/модель автомобиля; проверка зрения не требуется; для урока; со скоростью 25 миль в час; я неверно оценила расстояние; длинная очередь оранжевых конусов; полдюжины дорожных рабочих; были свидетелями моего унижения; двадцать лет спустя; обширный опыт; чувствую себя покинутой/оставленной, застрявшей; вождение автомобиля — это

нудная работа; заправочная станция самообслуживания; я очарована романтикой дороги; сидя за рулем кабриолета; как подросток; я переехала в Нью-Йорк; проверить наличие общественного транспорта; часто ненадежный, всегда дорогой; я убеждена; коллеги с более надежным зрением; по выходным за городом; мой муж отправляется в...; я стою на крыльце; пытаюсь отогнать чувство, того, что меня бросили; поклялся отвезти меня; чего мне не хватает — это ...; невыразимое чувство независимости; без чьей-либо помощи; куда угодно.

7. Make word combinations, translate them and find them in the text.

familiar	seat
parked	visibility
casual	ease
regular	keys
another	nearsightedness
front passenger	permit
big	babyish
brand of	auto
vision	sight
gulp of	wagon
endlessly	beholden
eternally	stop
ophthalmologist's	lessons
private	test
make of	road
car	car
good	freedom
learner's	intervals
station	report
suburban	company

* * *

misjudge	queue
long	vision
road	experience
ample	pump
feel left	unreliable
traffic	jam
gas	store
romance of	chauffeur

frequently	nonexistent
car	beyond
often	workers
always	abandonment
dependable	awareness
hardware	behind
feeling of	assistance
uncomplaining	feeling
ineffable	the distance
sweet	expensive
anyone's	the road
far	services

8. Match the synonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

signal	itinerary
route	brief
sweetheart	eternally
driver	assistance
endlessly	honk
ophthalmologist	motorist
lesson	eye doctor
short	tutorial
chunk	darling
feel left behind	head out for
constantly	fell abandoned
deck	porch
help	bulk
light out for	all the time

9. Match the antonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

front	independence
driving	suburban
nearsightedness	bitter
city	non-driving
with	lose
sweet	uncomplaining
find	back
dependence	without
complaining	farsightedness

10. Form antonyms using negative prefixes *un-*, *in-*, *il-*, *im-*, *ir-*, *dis-*, *mis-*, *non-*. Consult the dictionary if necessary. Translate the pairs.

Familiar, regular, driving, particular, to judge, available, existent, reliable, expensive, stinting, complaining.

11. Retell the text in the 3d person singular.

12. Match the type of auto with its description.

Coupe	— a large car with more than five passenger seats and usually five doors; rear seats can be folded or removed.
Convertible	— a long, extended variant of a saloon/sedan, has up to six doors; number of seats varies; commonly used for fashionable occasions or by celebrities.
Saloon/Sedan	— a large car that looks like a small bus with at least six passenger seats; a popular family car.
Hatchback	— a car with a soft roof that can be folded or removed.
Station wagon	— a car with seats for four or five people with four doors, a fixed roof and a boot/trunk separated from the rear seats.
Minivan	— a car with seat for four or more people with boot/trunk not separated from the rear seats; rear seats can be folded or removed; has either three or five doors.
Limousine	— a car with seats for two or more people with two doors, a fixed roof and a boot/trunk separated from the rear seats.

13. Say which type of car you prefer and why.

14. Choose the right word from the list below. Mind the forms of the verbs. Translate the article.

WHAT'S NEW FOR THE 2006 BMW 5 SERIES?

BMW adds a station _____ variant to the 5-Series line-up, as well as new inline six-_____ engines and an xDrive all-wheel-drive _____. Based on the same fully-automatic, rear-biased xDrive in the X3 and X5 sport models, the AWD system is offered only on 525i and 530i _____. Both of those models

get new _____ for 2006. The 2.5-liter inline six _____ 218 horsepower, while the 3.0-liter engine makes 258 _____. Station wagon models are _____ only with the larger six, and only with xDrive. The 530xiT can _____ up to 56.5 cubic feet of cargo with the rear seats folded down.

Advantages of the 2006 BMW 5 Series:

Strong and smooth engines
 Superb _____
 Lush cabin materials
 _____ performance
 Fascinating Active Steering system
 Slick optional xDrive AWD

Objections to the 2006 BMW 5 Series:

Fussy iDrive _____ system
 Prices rise dramatically when desirable options are added

AutoSite's Advice:

If its Bangled styling pleases you, so will the rest of the 2006 BMW 5-Series. This is a fantastic luxury _____ sedan, and remains the benchmark against which others must be _____, especially now with all-new six-cylinder engines and an available all-wheel-drive system. If you don't mind the penalty of diminished ride _____, opt for the Sport package, which includes Active Steering and Active Roll Stabilization. Once you live with these two technologies, you'll wonder if you could ever _____ another car without them.

Horsepower, comfort, to measure, to make, wagon, engines, to carry, models, quality, sports, to equip, wagon, cylinder, impressive, system, to buy.

15. Make at least 10 questions to the article above.

16. Fill in the blanks with prepositions where necessary.

WHAT'S NEW FOR THE 2005 FORD MUSTANG?

Taking its design cues ... the classic Mustangs ... the late 1960s, the completely redesigned 2005 Ford Mustang is more powerful, more comfortable and more sophisticated than ever before, and prices start ... \$20,000 ... the base model.

Advantages of the 2005 Ford Mustang:

Superb deal ... money
 Ultra-cool styling
 Slick retro interior
 Plenty ... room ... two adults and two kids

Objections to the 2005 Ford Mustang:

Low driving position; tall beltline
 Glare off ... the dash
 Unimpressive interior materials

AutoSite's Advice:

Yeah, this car rocks. However, if you want one anytime soon, plan to pay a significant premium. Dealers have long waiting lists ... this point, and we expect this car to sell itself least a year or more. Don't expect dealer discounts, don't expect rebates, and don't expect your salesperson to bend ... backwards to sell you the car, because the next guy walking ... the door will pay what the dealer wants.

17. Agree or disagree with the following statements. Give your reasons.

For agreement use:

I entirely agree.
I think it is so.
I'm with you here.
As far as I know it's true.

For disagreement use:

I don't really agree.
I don't think so.
I think you are mistaken here.
As far as I know that's not right.

1. Women drive more carefully than men, so women drive better.
2. Men are reckless drivers mostly.
3. Women are usually afraid of driving.
4. The more you drive, the better you drive.
5. The driving age should be 16 all over the world.
6. You don't need a car if you live in a big city.
7. Men don't like when women drive.
8. Politeness is the key to safe driving.
9. Speeding is the main reason for car accidents.
10. Mercedes-Benz are the best cars in the world.

18. Discuss:

1. Driver's license means more than getting around it, means freedom.
2. Women don't drive.
3. Driving is drudgery.

4. Women can do everything.
5. Think before you drink before you drive.

19. Read and translate the advertisements of the cars. Compare them.

- Do they give the same information?
- Do they give complete information needed for choosing a car?
- Which advertisement do you find more attractive? Why?

2006 Volkswagen Passat

Featuring a 2.0T or 3.6L engine with fuel-stratified injection, the new Passat is engineered to be even more fun to drive. And it's got plenty of not-so-standard features. 120 of them to be precise.

2005 Toyota Corolla

2005 Toyota Corolla is among the best of the compact sedans: reliable and economical yet refined and comfortable. The 2005 Corolla line sees the addition of a sporty new XRS model, while the entire line gets some enhancements. All 2005 Corollas feature a restyled front fascia and redesigned tail lamps.

2005 Honda Civic Sedan

Big satisfaction in a small package.

Efficient, practical, affordable, polished and pleasant to drive, if not downright fun, with a reputation for reliability: These are the Honda Civic's hallmarks, and nothing about the 2005 model suggests anything has changed.

20. Write your own car advertisement. Include all necessary details.

21. Speak about... the car you want to drive. Give as many details as possible. State the most important details for you.

DIALOGUE 2

Read, translate, memorize and dramatize the dialogue.

DRIVING IN THE CITY

Mr. Dawson: How did you get here, Gabriel?

Gabriel: By car. You know, I drive, don't you?

Mr. Dawson: Oh, good. Do you find it difficult to drive in New York? There's lots of traffic here.

Gabriel: Yes, but I'm accustomed to it now. I used to feel nervous at first and was always afraid that someone was going to bump into me, but I've got over that now. I try not to drive in Manhattan though.

Mr. Dawson: Me neither. How do you find driving here compared with driving in Europe?

Gabriel: It is practically the same. Of course, at first it seems more difficult because of the traffic, but when you get used to it, it's all right. And if you go out of the city, you feel so relaxed at the wheel.

Mr. Dawson: What do you mean?

Gabriel: As soon as you leave the city and go north, for example, you see almost no traffic at all. And the roads are good and well marked. And drivers are so polite.

Mr. Dawson: Have you been in an accident while you have been driving?

Gabriel: No, at least so far.

Mr. Dawson: Oh, good. I've been in a couple of accidents myself, but they were not serious, thanks God, so I won't tell you about them. Let go to the dining room. The dinner is ready.

22. Role play.

Student A	Student B
<i>Tell your friend about your driving experience. Describe your last trip by car.</i>	<i>Ask your friend about his/her driving experience and about his/her last trip by car.</i>

Swap roles.

DIALOGUE 3

Read, translate, memorize and dramatize the dialogue.

AT THE GAS STATION

- Driver:** Fill it up, please.
Attendant: What kind of gas do you need? Regular, premium or super?
Driver: Regular, please. Here is the key to the tank.
Attendant: Would you like me to check the oil for you?
Driver: Yes, please. And the tyres, please.
Attendant: Certainly, sir. Would you open the hood for me?
Driver: Sure. And the windscreen, can you clean it?
Attendant: Yes, sir. Anything else?
Driver: No, thanks a lot. How much do I owe you?
Attendant: That'll be \$21.45, sir.
Driver: Here you are. Keep the change.
Attendant: Thank you. Have a good day!

23. Role play

Student A	Student B
<i>You are a motorist and you come to a petrol station. Tell the attendant how much petrol you need, what kind of petrol you need, request other services if necessary.</i>	<i>You are a petrol station worker. Serve the customer.</i>

Swap roles.

24. Explain why driving in the city can be difficult.

25. Translate into English.

1. Дорожное происшествие

- Привет, Тревор! Что случилось? С тобой все в порядке?
 — Привет, Джон! Не волнуйся! Я попал в небольшую аварию, вот и все.
 — Как это случилось? Ты — водитель с большим стажем. Ты нарушил правила?

- Нет, конечно, нет. Я вел свой «Форд» на средней скорости, как обычно. Все, казалось, было в порядке — дорога была сухой. Я увидел красный свет и нажал на тормоз, но он не сработал.
 — И что было дальше?
 — Я сделал все возможное, чтобы избежать столкновения. Там были пешеходы и другие машины. Я повернул руль и въехал в столб с рекламным щитом.
 — Кто-нибудь пострадал?
 — Нет. Кроме меня.
 — Что случилось с тормозами?
 — Не знаю. Всякое бывает. На днях я заезжал на бензоколонку, и один из рабочих сказал мне, что мне нужно отрегулировать тормоза, но я не придал этому значения.
 — Да, стоило бы это сделать. Машина сильно пострадала?
 — К счастью, нет. Я смогу ее восстановить.
 — Хорошо.

2. Мой автомобиль

- Как твой «Рено»?
 — Ездит нормально, но требуется много усилий, чтобы поддерживать в порядке (maintain) старый автомобиль.
 — Давно ты его купил?
 — Полтора года назад. Но ему уже 10 лет, пора купить новый.
 — Да, я думаю, ты уже можешь себе позволить совсем новый (brand new) автомобиль.
 — Я тоже об этом думал. Но для начала я куплю новый аккумулятор, а то вчера я не мог завестись. Хотя я заряжал аккумулятор на прошлой неделе.
 — Может, дело в стартере?
 — Нет, я уже был на станции техобслуживания, и механик сказал, что нужно просто поменять аккумулятор.
 — Понятно.

26. Write an essay on the topic "My Last/Best Trip by Car".

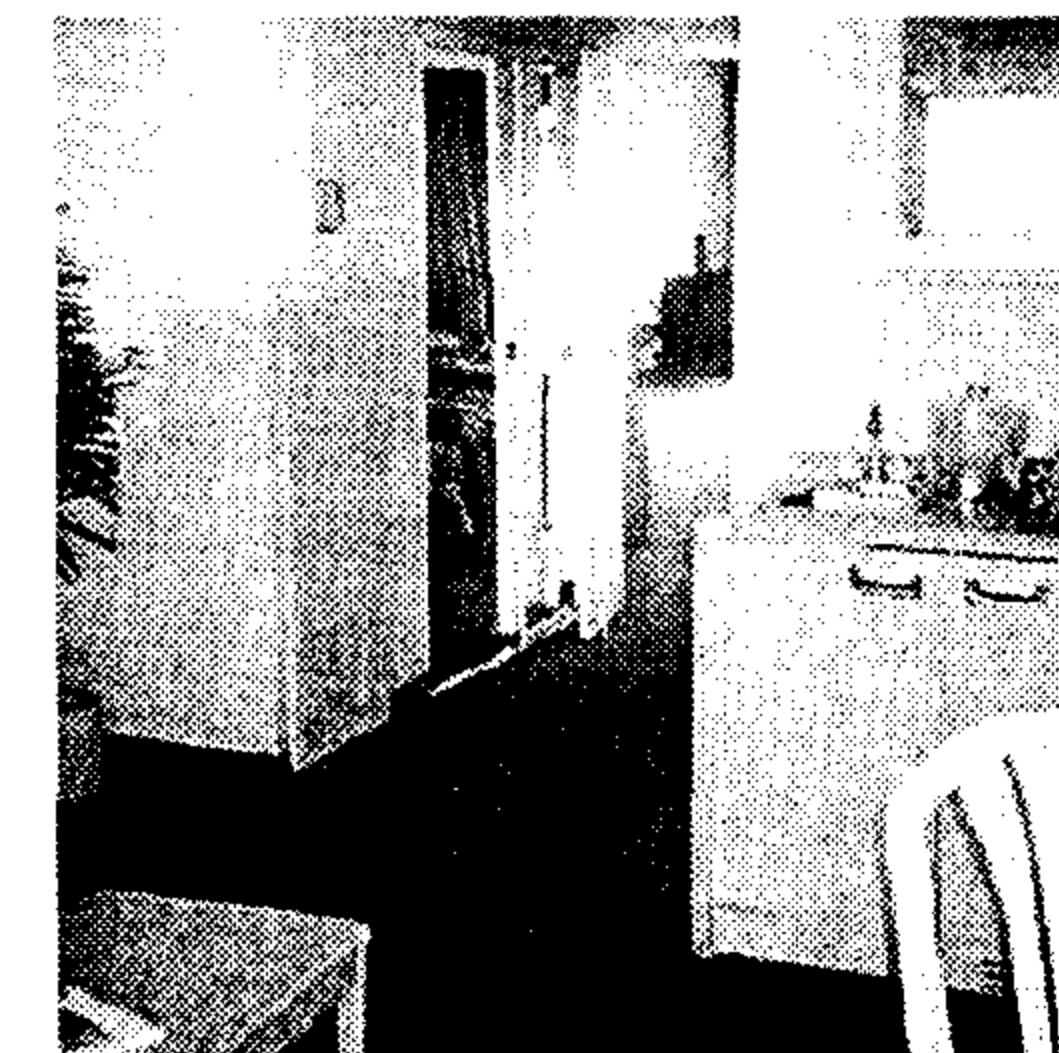
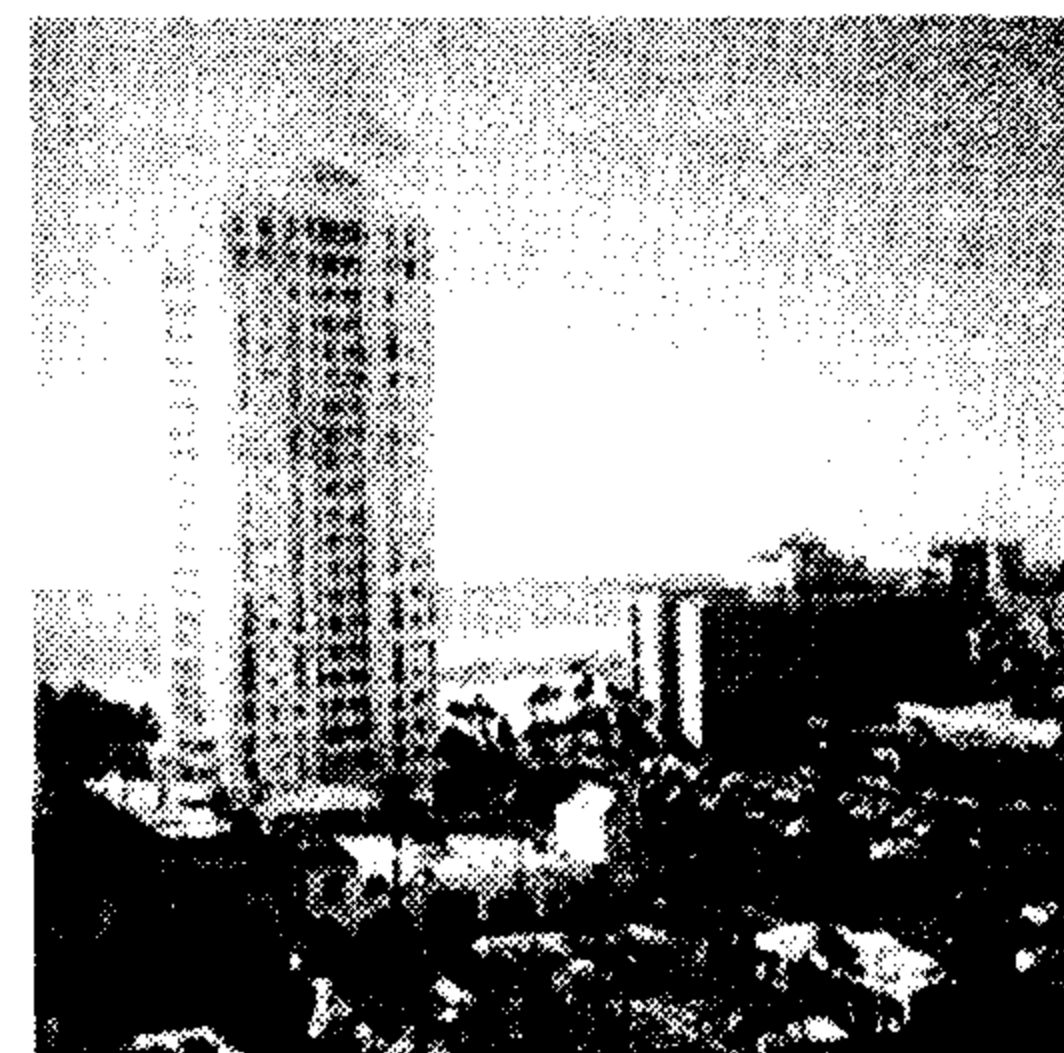
PROJECT WORK

1. You are a **travel agent**. Your customer wants to travel by car to ... (choose any country or city). **Make up an itinerary** for him/her. Give details of car rentals or/and the requirements for car lease. Give information on parking available at hotels and in cities, quote the prices. Comment on the driving licensing, road rules and rule violation law of the chosen city or country. Make a presentation to your customer. Use real information.

2. You are a **manager** at a car show. **Make an advertisement** of the chosen car. Make a presentation to customers. Use real information.

Unit 6. Hotels

.....



GROUP TALK

1. Have you ever stayed at a hotel?
2. When and where was it?
3. How big was the hotel? Describe the facilities and services you used at that hotel.
4. Would you like to stay at that hotel again? Why?



Vocabulary

accommodation — размещение
bed and breakfast (B&B) — небольшая частная гостиница
budget hotel — недорогая гостиница
apartment — квартира
hostel — общежитие, используемое как гостиница для туристов
university residence = university hall of residence — университетское общежитие
expensive hotel — дорогая гостиница
counterpart — противник, конкурент, двойник
quiet close — тихое закрытое место
en-suite room — многокомнатный номер в гостинице
a wide range on offer — широкий диапазон предложений
guest-house — дом для гостей
bustling city — суетливый, беспокойный город
accessible — доступный
suburb — пригород
self-catering apartment — квартира без обслуживающего персонала
fully-equipped flat — полностью оборудованная квартира
available — доступный, имеющийся в наличии
waterside restaurant — ресторан на берегу водоема
hotel chain — сеть гостиниц
superb deal — прекрасная сделка, очень выгодное предложение
dormitory bed — кровать в общежитии
to include — включать
facilities — удобства, оборудование, помещение для чего-либо
linen — постельное белье
laundry — прачечная
dry cleaning — химчистка
premises — территория, владение, дом с прилегающими к нему постройками и двором
amenities — удобства
mediterranean — средиземноморский
twin room — комната на двоих
family room — комната для семьи
lounge — гостиная
flagship hostel — флагманское общежитие
to book online — заказать, забронировать, зарегистрировать через Интернет

cooking facilities — кухня, место, где можно готовить, со всеми необходимыми принадлежностями
entertainment — развлечение
ale-and-pie house — пивная
family-run hotel — семейная гостиница
accredited to the London Tourist Board — аккредитован лондонским отделом туризма
uptown reservations — заказ гостиничного номера в самой престижной части города
last but not least — последний по списку, но не по значимости

TEXT 1

Read and translate the text.

GUIDE TO ACCOMMODATIONS IN LONDON

London is one of the world's most exciting cities — but is it possible to find reasonably priced accommodation there? Once you start delving you soon find that there are all sorts of good-value options, including bed and breakfasts, budget hotels, apartments, hostels and university residences, often with a lot more character than their more expensive hotel counterparts.

What could be more elegant than the house, in fashionable Knightsbridge, where writer Virginia Woolf was born in 1882 and spent her childhood? Situated in a quiet close, once also home to statesman Sir Winston Churchill, a stay costs £75 in a room for two, including a full breakfast served in the sitting room. It is one of dozens of bed and breakfast properties in London, several such agencies offer an en-suite room for two or more guests in private homes for less than £95 per night with breakfast. Depending on location and type of accommodation, the agencies' prices start as low as £19 per person.

B&B is a particularly British way of enjoying good, comfortable accommodation with a home-from-home feeling. Many visitors are surprised to discover such a wide range on offer in a bustling city like London. Agencies have portfolios of accommodation in small guest-houses or with families, some centrally-located, some in accessible suburbs, all offering a warm welcome to visitors. With B&B GB, under-7s go free.

Self-catering apartments are ideal for those on a budget and West London's Clarendon House Apartments, about 30 minutes by Underground from Piccadilly Circus, has fully-equipped flats available from

around £250 per week. Westminster University Halls of Residence offer self-catering summer stays in central locations such as Victoria, Waterloo and the City — at prices from £21.

As in any big city, accommodation is less expensive if you are prepared to travel to reach the centre. Hotels are springing up in Docklands, near Canary Wharf, with its waterside restaurants, concert-hall and shopping, at amazingly good-value prices. Here and in other easy to reach locations such as Greenwich and Kew (some are in central London, too) are hotel chains such as Formule 1, Etap, Ibis, Travel Inn, Travelodge and Holiday Inn Express — with en-suite rooms sleeping up to four at between £27.50 and £83 per night. Breakfast may not be served in the traditional way: it could be in the café next door or from the bar, but for the budget-conscious these hotels offer a superb deal.

Younger — and young-in-heart — travellers may find one of London's newest hotels is ideal for them. The Piccadilly Hotel, beside Piccadilly Circus, is a backpackers' dream, with dormitory beds available at £12 per night, including breakfast and linen. There are twin and family rooms, too; a lounge with 100-channel TV and an internet suite. Fresh, smart and sunny, this hostel opened in early 2003 and already promises to be as popular as the longer established St. Christopher's Inns group with its flagship hostel on the South Bank, or The Generator. Bookable online with beds from £10 (£23 for a twin room) and cooking facilities available as well as a café providing hot meals, The Generator is near the British Museum and is definitely a fun place to stay — its bar offering nightly entertainment.

The smaller hotel groups, such as Fullers Hotels (rooms available at weekends for £85) with their excellent pub-restaurants attached, bring a flavour of old London to their guests. They include the Chamberlain near Tower Bridge and the Sanctuary House near Westminster Abbey, with its ale-and-pie house on the ground floor.

London has many small hotels, generally clustering around main rail termini such as Victoria or King's Cross. Some are family-run, most fully accredited to the London Tourist Board (do check before booking) and so of good standard.

Last but not least, those seeking value-for-money can live like a lord. One of B&B agency Uptown Reservations' hosts opens his elegant home to guests at £95 per room — and is indeed a Lord!

by Polly Larner

TEXT WORK

1. Pronounce correctly and transcribe. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Exciting, fashionable, statesman, guest, en-suite, bustling city, accessible suburbs, budget-conscious, available, lounge, café, termini.

2. Answer the questions.

1. What are the good value options for accommodations in London?
2. Why is B&B so notable?
3. What is the price range for different hotels? What is the price for children under 7?
4. What is the alternative accommodation for those who don't want to stay at a hotel? How much is that?
5. Which hotels are the cheapest and why?
6. What can young travellers choose as accommodation?
7. What are the features of dormitories and hostels? In what way are they different from hotels or self-catering apartments?
8. What can smaller hotels and hotel groups offer to the tourists?
9. Can you live like a lord in London for a reasonable price? How?

3. Give Russian equivalents to the following words and word combinations. Find and translate sentences with them in the text.

Reasonably priced accommodation, good-value options, elegant house, home to statesman, a quiet close, en-suite room for two, type of accommodation, a particularly British way, wide range on offer, portfolios of accommodation, self-catering summer stays, hotels are springing up, amazingly good-value prices, budget-conscious travellers, young-in-heart travellers, backpackers' dream, bookable online, cooking facilities, excellent pub-restaurants attached, a flavour of old London, B&B agency Uptown Reservations' hosts, indeed a Lord.

4. Find English equivalents to the following words and word combinations.

Гостиница (3); университетское общежитие (2); бар (2); полный завтрак подается в гостиной; 95 фунтов за ночь; гость; частный дом; в зависимости от местоположения (от расположения); беспокойный суетящийся город; комфортабельное размещение; распо-

ложенный в центре; доступный пригород; дети до семи лет бесплатно; около 30 минут на метро; полностью оборудованные квартиры; менее дорогой; добраться до центра; легко добраться; сеть гостиниц; отличная сделка; включая завтрак и белье; комната на двоих; комната на семью; блок; гостиная с телевизором, транслирующим 100 каналов; кафе; горячая еда; ночные развлечения; на первом этаже; сосредоточены вокруг главных железнодорожных станций; аккредитованы Лондонским Отделом туризма; последний по списку, но не по значимости; управляющий службой резервирования одного из агентств по размещению в частных гостиницах; жить как лорд.

5. Make up word combinations and find them in the text.

exciting	restaurant
guest	hotel
warm	welcome
accessible	bed
self-catering	suburb
waterside	chain
hotel	house
traditional	way
good-value	apartment
private	entertainment
newest	home
dormitory	city
cooking	price
nightly	facilities

6. Give plural of the following words. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Residence, terminus, terminal, statesman, agency, portfolio, suburb, café, B&B, family, stay, linen.

7. Match the synonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs. Find them in the text.

flat	rate
hotel	to reserve
dormitory	ale house
sitting room	next door
downtown	apartment
superb deal	center

near	halls of residence
price	bed & breakfast
pub	lounge
to book	to reserve
online	really
to seek	via internet
indeed	good-value price
located	to delve

8. Match the antonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs. Find them in the text.

cheap	expensive hotel
new	suburb
guest	more
budget hotel	uptown
less	expensive
downtown	weekdays
old-fashioned	long-established
weekend	owner
center	fashionable

9. Make a summary of the text.

10. Match the word with its definition and compare the meanings.

Hotel	— system of accommodation in which you pay for a room for a night and for breakfast the following morning
Inn	— accommodation with large bedrooms where several people sleep, usually students of a particular university
Bed & Breakfast	— blocks of rooms or flats belonging to a university or college which are used by students
Hostel	— a house owned by local government authorities or charities or sometimes universities where people can stay cheaply for a short time
Dormitory	— a building where people stay for some time usually when on holidays or in business, and pay for their rooms and meals
Halls of Residence	— a small hotel, or just another name for a hotel used in AmE to make it sound old-fashioned or more attractive

11. Explain the differences between each type of accommodation.**12. Agree or disagree on the following statements. Give your reasons.***For agreement use:**I think so.**I agree...**Yes, I should think so.**Certainly it is.**Exactly.**For disagreement use:**I don't think so.**I disagree...**I don't agree with you here.**Definitely not.**Not in the least.*

1. It is so convenient that children under 7 go free in most hotels.
2. It is no good for me to stay in B&B, because I never eat breakfast anyway. Why should I pay for it?
3. The easiest way to find accommodations in London is to go to an accommodation agency.
4. The cheapest accommodations are in the suburbs.
5. If you rent a self-catering apartment in the suburb, you'll spend all your time cooking and cleaning for yourself, and you'll have no time to enjoy the city's life.
6. 100-channel TV is the last thing I need on holidays.
7. Every hotel should have an internet suite.

13. Translate into English.

1. Самый легкий способ забронировать гостиницу — через Интернет.
2. Что может быть лучше эlegantного особняка в викторианском стиле в модном районе Кингсбридж?
3. В маленькой гостинице я чувствую себя как дома.
4. Агентство предлагает комнату на двоих в частном доме с кухней и отдельной ванной за 75 фунтов в сутки. Как ты думаешь, это хорошая сделка?
5. Общежитие расположено в 20 минутах езды на метро от центра города.
6. Мечта туриста — молодежная гостиница в центре, похожая на общежитие, за всего лишь 12 фунтов в сутки.
7. Возле гостиницы есть ресторан и кафе, где можно недорого заказать горячий обед.
8. Бар на первом этаже предлагает широкий ассортимент пива и ночные развлечения в пятницу и субботу.

9. В небольших гостиницах в стоимость проживания включены завтрак и белье.
10. Частные семейные гостиницы чаще всего расположены около больших железнодорожных станций.

14. Discuss:

1. Choosing a hotel you always face a dilemma: good-value price or good location and service.
2. Internet offers a lot of advantages to travellers because they can book hotel online, but steals business from the travel and accommodation agencies.
3. It doesn't matter if the hotel is family-run or government-owned.
4. The best accommodation is a fully-equipped flat in a private house.
5. A good hotel is always an expensive hotel.

15. Speak about accommodations in your city. Describe hotels, inns and halls of residence. Give expert advice to travellers.**16. Write an essay on the topic "Accommodations in My City".****TEXT 2****Vocabulary****tips** — чаевые**gratuities** — чаевые**to tip** — давать (оставлять) чаевые**pub** — пивная**owner** — владелец**promptness** — проворство, расторопность**reward** — награда**bribe** — взятка**to ensure** — гарантировать, обеспечивать, ручаться**concierge** — консьерж**doorman** — швейцар**juggle** — жонглировать**luggage** — багаж**neatly** — аккуратно**bills** — банкноты, денежные купюры**change** — сдача

according to... — согласно...
awkward — неловкий, неуклюжий
to skip — пропускать
aware — знающий, осведомленный, сведущий
unconscious — бессознательный
studies — исследования
generously — щедро
fall under... — подпадать под...
fee — плата
doubt — сомнение
housekeeping staff — сотрудники, убирающие в гостинице
hotel staff — все сотрудники гостиницы
driver — водитель
discretion — свобода действий, свобода выбора
obligated — обязанный, вынужденный
stand-out — замечательный, выдающийся, выделяющийся
unless — если не
lacking — недостающий, отсутствующий
guidelines — руководящие принципы
expectations — ожидания
amount — сумма
proper — правильный, должный, надлежащий
appropriate — подходящий, соответствующий
shuttle driver — водитель, отвозящий и привозящий из аэропорта
on the higher end — больше, выше, лучше, более передовой
porter, bell staff — привратник, носильщик
to appreciate — ценить
room service — обслуживание номера, подача напитков и еды в номер
to share — делить, делиться, разделять
confusion — путаница, недоразумение
to belong — принадлежать
maintenance — поддержание в рабочем состоянии, текущий ремонт
maid — горничная
missing — пропавший
to fix — чинить, ремонтировать
item — предмет
to hail — звать
to hail a taxi — поймать, остановить, найти такси
valet — камердинер, лакей, слуга, служащий гостиницы

attendant — сопровождающее или обслуживающее лицо, сотрудник гостиницы, слуга
to retrieve — ставить на место
optional — необязательный
directions — инструкции, направление движения
hair stylist — парикмахер, стилист
manicurist — специалист по маникюру
massage therapist — массажист
swimming pool attendant — работник бассейна, спасатель
to inflate — наполнять воздухом
to float — плавать, покачиваться на поверхности

Read the text and find out the meanings of the underlined words and phrases from the context.

TIPPING ETIQUETTE

Legend has it, the word “tip” itself came years ago from a pub owner who used the acronym on a box “To Insure Promptness.” In that spirit, tipping should be thought of first and foremost as a reward for prompt and attentive service.

In reality, tipping etiquette has evolved into a secret subculture with hidden expectations that aren't always well understood by travellers. Break the secret code behind tipping etiquette.

Time Your Tipping

Depending on the timing, tipping can be a reward for good service rendered, or a subtle bribe. If you are using the service of one person repeatedly throughout your trip (say, a doorman) feel free to tip all at once at the end of your stay. If, however, you would like to ensure special service throughout your stay (say, from the concierge), a larger tip up front is a good idea. Tipping etiquette says either is acceptable.

Keep Bills Handy For Tipping

Keep several one dollar bills handy in an accessible pocket. You don't want to be digging for them when you're juggling luggage. Keep the bills neatly folded in groups of one or two bills.

Don't Ask For Change

According to tipping etiquette, it creates a very awkward situation to ask for change from the person you are tipping. If for some reason you don't have a tip ready, just skip it. You can get change from somewhere else, and return with your tip at some point in the future.

Know Your Tipping Tendencies

Be aware of your own unconscious tipping tendencies. Studies show women tend to tip men more generously (and men tip women better). Tipping goes up universally when the weather is good, lower when it is not. Attractive women earn higher tips, as do attentive men, so don't make mistakes.

Know the Tipping Policy

Increasingly, higher-end hotels are instituting "no tipping policies" that include gratuities in the price of the room. Some, particularly resorts, are charging a daily fee that covers all gratuities. Ask when you book.

Bed and Breakfast Tipping Etiquette

In general, tipping etiquette dictates that business owners are not given tips. Most B&Bs fall under that category, and indeed, most have "no tipping" policies in place. If you are in doubt, ask about their tipping policy when you book your room. (If the housekeeping staff is not part of the family, do tip them as you would in a hotel.)

Tipping Is Never Required

It may be expected in many situations, but tipping is never required. Tipping hotel staff and drivers should be at your discretion, and should be thought of as a reward for excellent service. Don't feel obligated to give a tip if the service given was not very good. On the other hand, consider giving a larger tip for those who go out of their way to provide personalized or stand-out service. Although it is not required, tipping etiquette says that unless service was severely lacking in some way, do give a tip of some sort (or at least a smile and a thank you).

Tipping Etiquette Varies Worldwide

These tipping guidelines are for the United States only. Expectations (and tipping amounts) can be quite a bit different in other countries. Check a travel guide for the particular country you will be visiting for the proper tipping etiquette.

From Charlyn Keating Chisholm

TEXT WORK

1. Pronounce correctly and transcribe. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Etiquette, owner, thought, reward, subtle, throughout, however, concierge, acceptable, accessible, awkward, generously, gratuities, increasingly, discretion, obligated, required, severely.

2. Answer the questions.

1. Where does the word "tip" come from?
2. Why are tips given?
3. Who are tips given to?
4. When and where are tips required?
5. When is better to tip: up front, daily throughout your stay or at the end of your stay?
6. How much tips should you leave to whom?
7. What is inappropriate when tipping?
8. What are the most common unconscious tipping tendencies?
9. What different tipping policies hotels can have?
10. What is peculiar about tipping at Bed & Breakfasts?
11. What special services can you tip for?
12. When can you do without tipping?

3. Give Russian equivalents to the underlined words and word combinations in the text.

4. Give English equivalents to the following words and word combinations.

Прежде всего; своевременное и внимательное обслуживание; оставить чаевые (2); утонченная взятка; на протяжении всего путешествия; храните банкноты аккуратно сложенными; согласно этикету чаевых; неловкая ситуация; просить сдачу; просто пропустите это; более щедро; привлекательные женщины; внимательные мужчины; чаевые включены в стоимость; ежедневная плата; спрашивайте, когда заказываете номер; если вы сомневаетесь; чаевые не обязательны; по вашему желанию; с одной стороны; с другой стороны; если не; по крайней мере.

5. Make up word combinations, translate and find them in the text.

pub	etiquette
attentive	women
tipping	bribe
hidden	service
subtle	amount
accessible	tendencies
awkward	situation
unconscious	staff
attractive	owner

housekeeping	country
tipping	pocket
particular	expectations

6. Discuss tipping tendencies in this country.

1. Who do you usually leave tips to?
2. Do you always give tips to people who serve you?
3. How much do you leave in tip at a restaurant? Taxi? Hairdresser's? Hotel?

7. Write an essay on the topic "Tipping Policies In My Country" (200 words).

8. Match the word with its definition and compare the meanings.

- Maid / housekeeping staff** — a person whose job is to bring you something to your room, e.g. your breakfast, or if something is missing or if you just want extra service
- Room service** — a person who leads the guests to their rooms and show them around the hotel
- Maintenance** — a person who opens the front door for you
- Doorman** — a person whose job is to deal with people when they first arrive, to answer the phone and to arrange reservations or appointments
- Porter** — a person who cuts and dyes your hair, or just does your hair and helps you to choose the haircut to match you perfectly
- Bell boy** — a person who does you nails
- Concierge** — a person or people who keep the building and the building's facilities in good working conditions, they also do minor repairing
- Front desk / receptionist** — a person who parks your car when you arrive at a party or at a hotel
- Manicurist** — a person whose job is to carry things
- Hair stylist** — a person whose job is to serve people in a place
- Massage therapist** — a person whose job is to clean the rooms of the hotel
- Swimming pool attendant** — a person who does you the massage
- Parking attendant** — a person who keeps the keys from the rooms, takes and gives messages, deals with incoming and outgoing post

9. Choose the right word from the list below. Translate the article.

SPINDRIFT INN

As an alternative to a _____ we recommend the Spindrift Inn, a _____ hotel with a great _____ overlooking Monterey Bay. Just down the street from the fabulous Monterey Bay Aquarium and within _____ distance of downtown Monterey.

In the heart of Cannery Row and directly on the _____ sits the Spindrift Inn. The Inn's distinctive _____ — hand tiled floors, Oriental _____, antiques, original art and wood burning _____ — invites you in to this unique property. Each _____ of the Spindrift has a wood-burning fireplace, goose down feather _____, comforters and pillows and _____ brass baths. Some rooms have ocean _____ .All 42 rooms have in-room robes, all cotton pastel _____, nightly turn down service, _____ telephone, in-room CD players, special toiletries, soaps and other _____.

Rooms include: Continental _____ delivered to the rooms, afternoon _____ and cheese reception and newspaper _____.

This is a AAA four diamond and Mobil three _____ hotel.

Guestroom, marble, second, wine, bed and breakfast, guestroom, star, lobby, amenities, linens, beds, carpets, lovely, beach, delivery, breakfast, location, walking, fireplace.

10. Put the verbs in right forms and translate the text.

CORINTHIA AQUINCUM

The Corinthia Aquincum Hotel (to locate) on the Buda side of the Danube river, right at the Arpád Bridge, opposite to the beautiful Margaret Island. The inviting hills and forests of Buda (to be) just a few minutes away. As the Roman legions (to build) their first camp in the region right here and later the civil town of Aquincum (to be) established next to it, one can (to find) many remains from that period in the district. The nearby amphitheatrum once (to serve) as a circus and the ruins of the one-time city can (to find) in the Aquincum Museum, at just a small

distance from the hotel. Also downtown Budapest and the Danube Bend (to be) within easy reach of the hotel.

The hotel (to open) in 1991 as the Thermal Hotel Aquincum, as a tribute to the ancient city and its baths. The spa of the hotel (to receive) its healing water from a natural thermal spring on the nearby Margaret Island. A considerable part of the hotel's medical treatments, described as „balneotherapeutic treatments” (to base) on thermal water. In 2002 the medical section of the hotel (to transform) into a well-equipped, unique wellness center offering more than 50 health and wellness therapies.

The hotel (to have) 310 spacious, modern rooms with bathroom, minibar, direct dial telephone, radio, colour TV with satellite channels and easy, high-speed Internet access. (Most of them with view on the river Danube and Margaret Island). Guests can (to benefit) from 24-hour room service and all the other amenities of a 5 star hotel. A business centre, laundry service, beauty salon, boutiques and secured underground parking (to complete) the hotel's facilities.

11. Read, translate, insert missing prepositions.

Vocabulary

advertisement = ad (short) — рекламное объявление

circa — приблизительно, примерно

unique — уникальный

mansion — особняк, большой дом, дворец

grandeur — грандиозность, великолепие, роскошь, шедевр

bygone — прошлый

chandelier — канделябр

fireplace — камин

molding — лепнина, барельеф

down — пух

craftsmanship — искусство, мастерство, умение

throughout — повсюду, через весь...

neighborhood — окрестности, район

whisk — быстрое движение, быстро увозить

vibrant — живой, энергичный

proximity — близость, соседство, сходство

venue — место встречи

charm — очарование

eclectic — эклектический

access — доступ

VCR (video cassette recorder) — видеоманитофон

complimentary — включенный в обслуживание

cordial — ликер

voicemail — автоответчик

SWANN HOUSE

THE MOST ROMANTIC INN THE WORLD

Swann House welcomes you ... the American capital with nine uniquely decorated and well-appointed guestrooms and suites. Our circa 1883 mansion envelopes you ... the grandeur ... a bygone era while offering the modern conveniences necessary ... today's traveller. Crystal chandeliers, elaborately carved fireplaces and original plaster moldings reflect just a portion ... the nineteenth century craftsmanship that can be seen throughout Swann House.

Situated 12 blocks ... the White House, our location ... the historic Dupont Circle neighborhood makes Swann House the ideal home base ... your visit to Washington, DC. Just 4 blocks away you'll find the Metro, our world-class subway system, ready to whisk you in ... matter ... minutes ... the famous monuments and museums ... our capital. Taxis are easily hailed offering yet another convenient mode ... transportation. Dozens ... restaurants and cafes are within walking distance allowing our guests to experience one ... Washington's most vibrant and beautiful neighborhoods.

Our proximity ... several universities makes Swann House ideal ... parents visiting students. George Washington University, Georgetown University, American University and Howard University are all ... easy reach. Business travellers will find several conference venues including the new Washington Convention Center just minutes away. Discover the historic charm ... Georgetown, the ethnic restaurants ... Adams Morgan or eclectic nightlife & shops ... the U Street Corridor, all within easy access ... Swann House.

Come see why Guides and Travelogues call Swann House the “Best B&B ... Washington” and put us ... their “Top 10 Most Romantic Inns” ... the world. We invite you to make our home **your home** while visiting Washington, DC.

- All Private Baths
- Deluxe Continental Breakfast
- Fireplaces, Jacuzzi Tubs
- Luxurious down feather beds
- Cable TV, VCR's

- Complimentary High Speed & Wi-Fi internet service
- Afternoon Refreshments & Evening Cordials
- Phones ... Voicemail & Data Port
- Swimming Pool
- Complimentary Local Calls
- Business Meetings

12. Explain why?

- Swann House is called the most romantic inn in the world.
- Swann House's location is very good.
- It is ideal accommodation for parents visiting students.
- Swann House is ideal place for businessmen.
- Swann House is ideal place for traveller.

13. Describe:

- What reflects the 19th century craftsmanship in Swann House?
- What modern conveniences does Swann House offer to its guests?

14. Read the advertisements of three most popular hotels in Milan. Compare the facilities and services of the hotels. Answer the questions:

1. What makes these hotels attractive for tourists, businessmen?
2. Which of these hotels would you recommend for a family with 2 children, an elderly couple on holidays, a CEO on business, your friends and/or relatives?
3. Which of the ads do you find more attractive? Why?
4. Which ad gives better overview of the hotel, do you think?

FOUR POINTS BY SHERATON MILAN CENTER, MILAN

— *Rated # 6 in Milan*

From \$174.54/night

Easy 5 minute walk from the Central Station. Very personable, friendly staff, quick to help. English spoken. Mostly non-smoking rooms. Rooms nice decorated with wood.

This property is situated in the heart of Milan's business district, walking distance from the main railway station, and approximately five miles from Milan-Linate Airport. Local attractions include Poldi Pezoli Museum, Aquarium Milan, Brera Art Gallery, La Scala Opera

House, Sforzesco Castle, Navigli Canals, and San Siro Football Stadium, all within four miles of the hotel.

Hotel amenities include 24-hour front desk, 24-hour room service, pay parking facilities, laundry/valet service, business services, currency exchange, car rental desk, doorman, luggage storage, multilingual staff, safe deposit box, babysitting, dry cleaning, limousine service, massage treatments, and a complimentary 24-hour fitness center. Onsite dining is available via L'Arcimboldo, a casual buffet-style venue offering Italian and International fare. There is also a cocktail bar, Malibrán, where guests can enjoy drinks and live piano music.

Guest rooms feature A/C, in-room safes, direct-dial dual-line telephones, mini-bars, individual climate controls, work desks, make-up/shaving mirrors, hairdryers, coffeemakers, dataports, satellite TVs, in-room movies, alarm clock radios, and spacious bathrooms with telephones and bathrobes.

Hotel Details

- 205 Rooms / 12 Floors
- Built in 1961
- Fax (For Guests)
- Babysitting or Child Care
- Laundry/ Dry Cleaning Service
- Business Center
- Car Rental
- Concierge Services
- Administrative Services
- Common/Public Areas Accessible to Wheelchairs
- Pets Allowed
- Currency Exchange
- Smoke Alarm in Rooms
- Computer Use Available
- Photocopy Service
- Meeting Facilities
- Electronic Key
- Common Area High speed Access
- A-V Equipment Rental
- Room Service
- Multi-lingual Staff
- Restaurant in Hotel
- Health Club

Room Amenities

- Air Conditioning (In Room)
- Newspaper (Free)
- Telephone
- Television (Cable/Satellite)
- Non-Smoking Rooms
- Television
- Daily Maid Service
- In Room Broadband Internet Access
- Safe (In Room)
- Coffee Maker
- Telephone (Voicemail)
- Balcony/Terrace
- Mini-Bar

PRINCIPE DI SAVOIA HOTEL, MILAN

— *Rated # 1 in Milan*

- Piazza Della Repubblica 17, Milan, 20124 Italy
- **From \$582.00/night**

Located in Milan's business center on the Piazza della Repubblica, the five-star, 399-room Principe di Savoia is highly regarded for its charm, elegance, and attentive service. On the premises are two restaurants, the five-star Ristorante Galleria serving typical Italian specialties, and Cafe Doney, an intimate setting where snacks, light meals and afternoon tea are served. There is also the Bar Giardino d'Inverno, a salon where guests can sip cocktails or coffee and listen to piano music. Guests are offered the use of an on-site fitness facility, indoor pool and health spa. Hotel services include complimentary car service, dry cleaning and laundry, 24-hour concierge, 24-hour room service, complimentary shoe shine, and nightly turndown.

Hotel Details

- 404 Rooms / 11 Floors
- Built in 1927
- Laundry Room
- Fax (For Guests)
- Babysitting or Child Care
- Uniformed Security on Site
- Laundry/ Dry Cleaning Service
- Business Center

- Car Rental
- Concierge Services
- Administrative Services
- Common/Public Areas Accessible to Wheelchairs
- Barber/Hair Stylist
- Pets Allowed
- Currency Exchange
- Smoke Alarm in Rooms
- Computer Use Available
- Photocopy Service
- Meeting Facilities
- Sprinkler in Rooms
- Electronic Key
- Common Area High speed Access
- A-V Equipment Rental
- Room Service
- Multi-lingual Staff
- Restaurant in Hotel
- Health Club
- Pool (Indoor)
- Health Spa/Massage
- Hot Tub

Room Amenities

- Air Conditioning (In Room)
- Newspaper (Free)
- Refrigerator
- Telephone
- Television (Cable/Satellite)
- Non-Smoking Rooms
- Television
- DVD/VCR
- Daily Maid Service
- In Room Broadband Internet Access
- Safe (In Room)
- Whirlpool
- Telephone (Voicemail)
- Balcony/Terrace
- Mini-Bar

THE WESTIN PALACE, MILAN**From \$290.87/night**

Comfortable luxurious meeting place for local socialites and business people.

Inside the modern facade, The Westin Palace welcomes its guests with a sumptuous lobby that leads to exquisite accommodations appointed with 19th century antiques and elegant bathrooms in pink.

Located only minutes from the Duomo and the glass-domed Galleria Vittorio Emanuele in the heart of Milan, the 216-room Westin Palace offers discreet, attentive service in a setting that combines Renaissance opulence with modern amenity. On the premises are the Casanova Grill, serving Mediterranean inspired pastas, risottos, and seafood dishes, and Bar Campigli, which features live piano music nightly. Hotel services include a concierge, dry cleaning and laundry, and nightly turn-down. The hotel also offers guests use of an on-site fitness facility.

Hotel Details

- 257 Rooms / 14 Floors
- Built in 1950
- Fax (For Guests)
- Babysitting or Child Care
- Uniformed Security on Site
- Laundry/ Dry Cleaning Service
- Business Center
- Car Rental Concierge Services
- Administrative Services
- Pets Allowed
- Currency Exchange
- Smoke Alarm in Rooms
- Computer Use Available
- Photocopy Service
- ATM/Bank
- Childrens Programs
- Meeting Facilities
- Sprinkler in Rooms
- Electronic Key
- Common Area High speed Access
- A-V Equipment Rental
- Room Service
- Multi-lingual Staff

- Restaurant in Hotel
- Health Club

Room Amenities

- Air Conditioning (In Room)
- Telephone
- Television (Cable/Satellite)
- Non-Smoking Rooms
- In Room Wireless Internet Access
- Television
- DVD/VCR
- Daily Maid Service
- In Room Broadband Internet Access
- Safe (In Room)
- Coffee Maker
- Whirlpool
- Telephone (Voicemail)
- Balcony/Terrace
- Mini-Bar

15. Speak about hotels in your city. Describe their location, facilities and services. Give recommendations to travellers.

16. Agree or disagree with the following statements. Give your reasons.

For agreement use:

I fully agree with you here.

That's quite right.

Sure.

It really matters.

Yes, I think so.

For disagreement use:

I can't agree...

I think you are mistaken...

I don't think you are right.

Far from it.

Nothing of the kind.

1. When you live at a hotel the view matters a lot.
2. The hotel in the center is better than a hotel in the suburb.
3. All hotels should have non-smoking premises.
4. Tips are a sign of appreciation of the service you were given.
5. Tipping policies are universal.
6. "No tipping" policy is a good policy.

17. Translate into English.

В БРИТАНСКИХ ТРАДИЦИЯХ

Столичный отель «Аврора Мариотт Роял» первым в Восточной Европе предложил своим гостям услуги дворецких. Этот сервис предоставляется в гостинице с момента ее открытия в 1999 г. Идея создать службу дворецких принадлежала первому генеральному менеджеру отеля Джерону Хересси и директору гостевых услуг Хезер Тодд-Хайзер. Как рассказывает г-жа Тодд-Хайзер, учитывая, что услуги дворецких — уникальный вид сервиса не только в Москве, но и в мире в целом, такое решение должно было сразу поставить «Аврору» в ряд лучших отелей столицы.

Вначале в гостинице работали только шесть дворецких, которые обслуживали гостей, останавливающихся в люксах, и владельцев клубных карт сети Marriott Platinum и Golden Marquis. Начиная с 2000 г. сервис дворецких был включен в стоимость номеров всех категорий и сейчас предоставляется всем гостям отеля. В связи с этим штат дворецких был расширен до 17 человек. Все сотрудники, занимающие эту должность, имеют высшее образование или учатся на старших курсах институтов, в основном по специальности «гостиничный бизнес». Большинство дворецких прошли тренинг в частной британской школе, высокий уровень подготовки десяти из них подтвержден соответствующим сертификатом. Менеджер службы Лейла Усубова стажировалась в лондонском отеле The Lanesborough и теперь сама может проводить тренинги. Кстати, необычная униформа дворецких — фрак и белые перчатки — также шьется в Великобритании.

Дворецкие «Авроры» встречают гостей на пороге номера с бокалом шампанского и знакомят с инфраструктурой отеля. В дальнейшем постоялец сможет в любое время обратиться за помощью к дворецкому, нажав кнопку butler на телефоне. По словам Лейлы Усубовой, служба дворецких отличается от службы консьержей тем, что если последние занимаются «внешними» задачами, т.е. обеспечивают гостя информацией о городе, то дворецкие решают «внутренние» проблемы постояльца, связанные непосредственно с отелем. Так, в обязанности дворецкого входят распаковка и упаковка чемоданов, так называемый butler breakfast — доставка утреннего чая, кофе или сока и свежих газет в номер, а также заказ такси, бронирование билетов, чистка обуви и т. п.

18. Write an essay on the topic "My Ideal Hotel".

DIALOGUE 1

Read and dramatize the dialogue. Find out the meanings of the underlined words and phrases.

HOTEL RESERVATION

Clerk: Good afternoon. Seaside Motel.

Carol: This is Carol Taylor. I'd like to make reservation for three people for the Labour Day Weekend. Do you have any rooms available then?

Clerk: Let me check. How long do you plan to stay?

Carol: Only two days, Saturday and Sunday.

Clerk: Yes, we still have some rooms available. Would you prefer one room or two rooms that adjoin each other?

Carol: How much do the rooms cost?

Clerk: The cost of one room with two double beds is \$79 a night and the rate for adjoining rooms with one double bed each is \$49.

Carol: In that case, let me have just one room.

Clerk: All right. Can you spell your name, please?

Carol: Sure. It's T-A-Y-L-O-R. Do you need a deposit?

Clerk: No, thank you. We can hold the room for you until 6:00. When do you plan to get here?

Carol: We should be there by 5 o'clock at the latest.

Clerk: That's wonderful. We'll look forward to seeing you then.

19. Call a hotel and reserve a room for your friends, who will visit this city for some time next week. Call another hotel if this one is full for the time you need. Dramatize the conversations.

DIALOGUE 2

Read and memorize the dialogue.

CHECK-IN

Receptionist: Good morning, sir. Can I help you?

Dr. Gilbert: Yes, I've got a reservation. My name is Jason Gilbert.

Receptionist: Just a moment, please. Could you spell your name, please?

Dr. Gilbert: G-I-L-B-E-R-T.

Receptionist: Right, Dr. Gilbert. A single room with a bath and continental breakfast for two nights, is that right?

Dr. Gilbert: No, it's three nights, from the 15th to the 18th of September.

Receptionist: No problem, I'll change it for you. May I see your passport, please? Thank you. Could you fill in this form, please?

Dr. Gilbert: Sure. Have you got a pen?

Receptionist: Here you are.

Dr. Gilbert: Thanks.

Receptionist: All right, sir. Here is your key, room 308 on the third floor. The lifts are over there.

Dr. Gilbert: Thanks. What time is breakfast?

Receptionist: Any time from 7 to 10 o'clock. The dining room is on the first floor, but you can have breakfast in your room, sir, if you want, you just need to tell me now or call the reception from your room in the morning.

Dr. Gilbert: No, thank you, I'll come downstairs.

20. Role-play the conversation changing roles of the guest and the receptionist.

DIALOGUE 3

Vocabulary

hairdresser's — парикмахерская

drapes — шторы, портьеры

directory — телефонный справочник

coffee shop — кафе

room service — обслуживание в комнате, уборка комнаты

available — доступно, имеется в наличии, имеется в распоряжении

news stand — газетный киоск

lobby — фойе

cocktail lounge — бар

basement — цокольный этаж, подвал

facilities — средства обслуживания, удобства, услуги

Read, memorize and dramatize the dialogue.

BELLBOY

Bellboy: Well, here's your room, Madam. After you.

Lady: Thank you. What a nice large room!

Bellboy: Oh, yes. All the rooms here at the hotel are quite large and the rooms on this side of the building have a lovely view. Let me open the drapes for you.

Lady: Oh, you're right. The view is wonderful.

Bellboy: Yes, it is. Now you'll find information about the facilities of the hotel in the directory which is next to your telephone. The TV is across the room in the corner.

Lady: That's fine, thank you.

Bellboy: Now, in the directory you'll find the phone numbers and information about room service, our restaurants and coffee shops. Our two restaurants are on the first floor and the coffee shops are in the lobby.

Lady: Oh, that's fine. Thank you very much.

Bellboy: There's also a hairdresser's and a news stand just off the lobby to the right of the desk. I think the hairdresser's is closed on Monday.

Lady: When is the room service available?

Bellboy: Oh, our room service is available 24 hours a day here.

Lady: Oh good, thank you very much!

Bellboy: Yes. Now. We have a cocktail lounge on the top floor and a swimming pool in the basement.

Lady: I see, I see. I think I have it all done now. Thank you very much. Why don't you take this, just a little something for your trouble?

DIALOGUE 4

Read, memorize and dramatize the dialogues.

RECEPTION

1

Receptionist: Reception. Can I help you?

Mr. Thompson: Yes, could I have a coke and a cheese sandwich for room 149, please.

Receptionist: Certainly, sir. Would you like anything else?

Mr. Thompson: No, thanks.

(Several minutes later Mr. Thompson hears a knock on the door)

Bellboy: Room service.

Mr. Thompson: Thank you. Can you put it on my bill, please?

Bellboy: Yes, of course.

2

- Receptionist:** Good afternoon.
Ms. Kelly: Hello, is that reception?
Receptionist: Yes, madam. Can I help you?
Ms. Kelly: Yes, the TV in my room doesn't work. Could you repair it, please?
Receptionist: Yes, of course. I'll do it immediately. What's your room number?
Ms. Kelly: Room 307.

3

- Receptionist:** Reception.
Mr. Simpson: Hello, this is Mr. Simpson from room 637. There aren't any towels in my room. Could you bring me one, please?
Receptionist: I'm very sorry, sir. I'll bring you one right away.
Mr. Simpson: Thanks.

4

- Receptionist:** Reception, can I help you?
Br. Brown: Yes, this is room 418. Could you wake me up at 6.45 tomorrow morning?
Receptionist: 6.45, room 418. Yes, of course, sir. That's fine.
Br. Brown: Thank you very much.

21. Make up and role-play your own dialogues in pairs. You are the hotel guest, ask or request something. Your partner is the receptionist. Swap roles. Use the suggestions below and think of your own.

- *A white coffee and a pork roll*
- *Air-conditioning*
- *Heating*
- *Blankets*
- *Toilet paper*
- *7:30*

DIALOGUE 5

Read, memorize and dramatize the dialogues.

CHECK OUT

Dr. Gilbert: Hello. Can I have my bill, please?

- Receptionist:** Certainly, sir. Are you leaving?
Dr. Gilbert: Yes. What is this \$200 for?
Receptionist: That's for your phone calls.
Dr. Gilbert: Oh, right. Do you accept American Express?
Receptionist: Yes, sir, that's fine.
Dr. Gilbert: Could you call me a taxi to the airport, please?
Receptionist: Certainly, sir. Have a good flight. Thank you for staying at our hotel. Welcome back.
Dr. Gilbert: Thank you.

DIALOGUE 6

Continue the conversations.

1

- Receptionist:** Sheraton Hotel. Can I help you?
Guest: Good morning. I'd like to know the price of a double room for one night.
Receptionist: During the week it's £85 a night, but there's a special weekend offer of £66 for Friday and Saturday nights. When do you want to stay?

2

- Receptionist:** Hello. Holiday Inn. Mary Spenser speaking. How can I help you?
Guest: Hello, my name is Michael Schneider. I've got a reservation for Tuesday next week, but I want to change it.

22. Make up your own conversations between the guest and the receptionist at a hotel.

23. Translate into English.

1. — Гостиница «Солнечная», добрый день!
 — Я бы хотел забронировать одноместный номер с ванной на два дня.
 — Вы хотите обычный номер или люкс?
 — Обычный, пожалуйста.
 — На сколько дней и какого числа вы приезжаете?
 — Я приезжаю 12-го, пробуду неделю, может больше. У вас сейчас много постояльцев? Я смогу продлить проживание в том же номере, если мне придется задержаться на дольше?

— В это время года мы обычно очень загружены, но я уверена, мы сможем что-нибудь для вас придумать. Вы хотите комнату с видом на море? Или это не обязательно?

— Вид на море — это, конечно, хорошо. Отличаются ли они по цене?

— Да, номер с видом на море на 100 руб. в сутки дороже.

— Это не большая разница в цене для меня.

— Хорошо. На чье имя забронировать номер?

2. — Простите, вы администратор?

— Да, чем могу помочь?

— Я уезжаю сегодня вечером. Могу я освободить номер до обеда, но оставить вещи в гостинице до 6 часов вечера? Не хотелось бы ездить по городу с сумками.

— Да, конечно, вы можете расплатиться сейчас, освободить комнату до полудня и оставить вещи у горничной на первом этаже.

— Это надежно?

— Конечно, надежнее, чем в камере хранения. Вот ваш счет.

— Спасибо.

3. Если вы хотите погрузиться в атмосферу поистине незабываемого, далекого от повседневной суеты и забот отдыха, то в одном из самых живописных и экологически чистых мест сочинского побережья вас ждет гостиничный комплекс «Волна» — современный клубный комплекс европейского уровня!

4. В пансионате «Шексна» есть все необходимое для разнообразного отдыха. Комфортабельные корпуса комплекса, соединенные между собой изящными стеклянными галереями, оборудованный пляжный корпус, крытый плавательный комплекс с элементами аквапарка (бассейны для детей и взрослых, водные горки, джакузи, подводные гейзеры, сауна, солярий), закрытый и летний киноконцертные залы, 2 ресторана, один из которых — ночной с шоу-программой, 4 бара — бар у кегельбана, ночной дискотек, бар-кафе на пляже, фитобар, а также шашлычная, вареничная, зал русского и американского бильярда, компьютерная игровая комната с доступом в сеть Интернет, детские игровые комнаты, 2 тренажерных зала, открытые спортивные площадки: 2 теннисных корта с тартановым и синтетическим покрытием, волейбольная и бадминтонная площадки, площадки для игры в баскетбол и мини-футбол. А также — парикмахерская, фотоуслуги, магазин курортных товаров, различные киоски и медицинский реабилитационный центр с са-

мым современным оборудованием. К услугам автолюбителей — автостоянка.

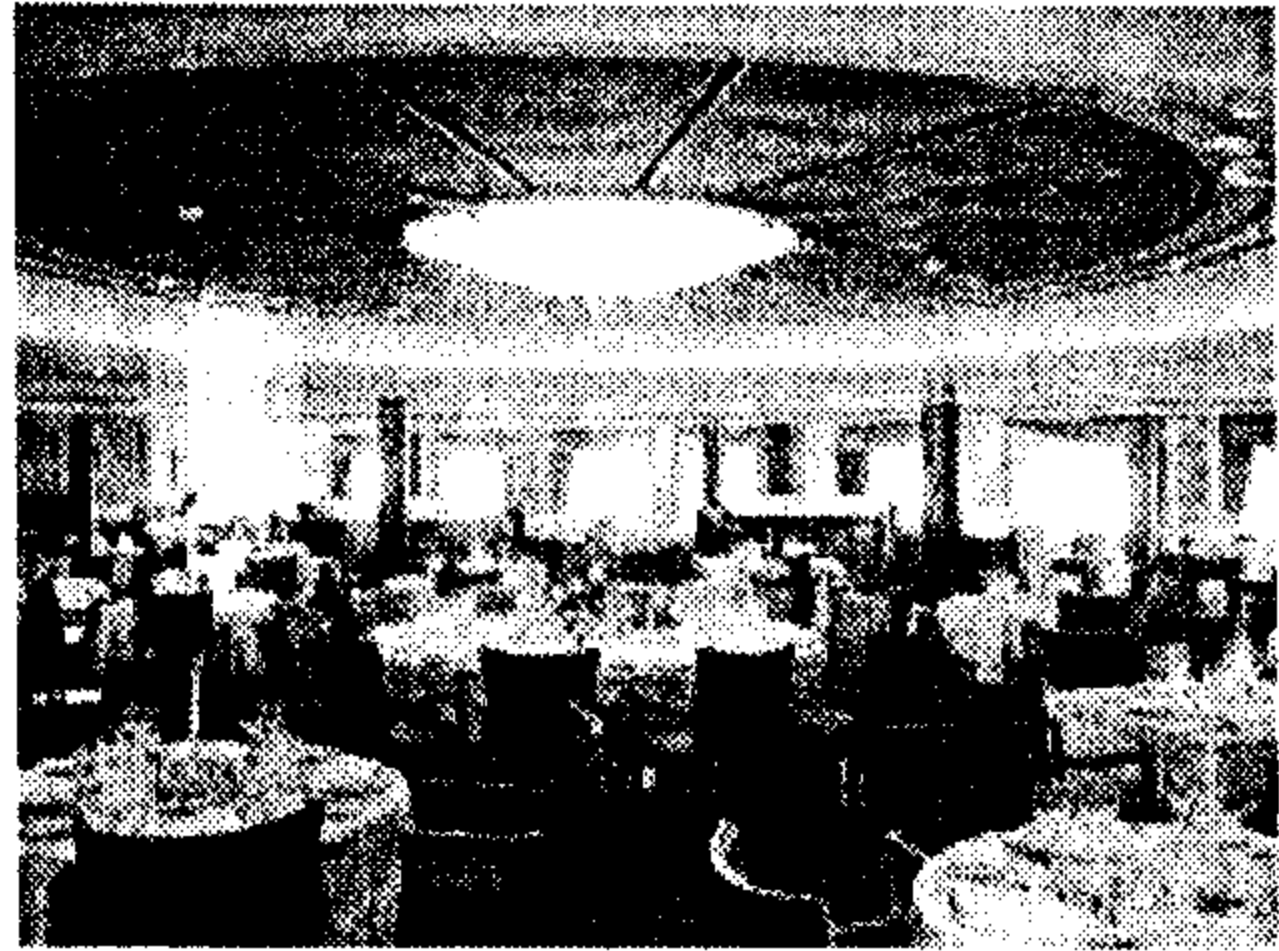
Вся территория комплекса круглосуточно находится под охраной.

PROJECT WORK

1. For your ideal hotel **make a booklet** for travel agencies. Include name, location, facilities and services and as many details as possible in the booklet. Present your booklet to your group.

2. **Write an advertisement** of your hotel for the travellers' magazine. Make the advertisement compact and attractive. Present your advertisement to your group.

Unit 7. Restaurants



GROUP TALK

1. Have you ever been to a restaurant?
2. Did you like it?
3. When and where was it?
4. What kind of restaurant was it?
5. What was the food like?
6. What was the service like?
7. Do you often go to restaurants?
8. Do you enjoy going to restaurants? Why?
9. Would you like to work at a restaurant? Why?

TEXT 1

Vocabulary

restaurant — ресторан
establishment — учреждение
menu — меню
food — еда (пища)
beverage — напиток
to consume — потреблять
premises — территория заведения
venue — место сбора, встречи; *устар.* район
diversity — разнообразие

cuisine — кухня (напр. национальная)
revenue — доход
rich — жирный, питательный (о еде)
whilst — пока
antiquity — древность
retinue — свита
servant — слуга
to flee — убегать
to dine out — обедать не дома
to flourish — процветать
to spread — распространяться
approach — подход
a la française — по-французски
a la russe — по-русски
to help oneself — обслужить себя (положить из общей тарелки в свою)
help yourself! — угощайтесь!
beyond — за пределами
nearby — поблизости
refined — утонченный, изящный, изысканный
waiter — официант
waitress — официантка
bill — счет
origin — происхождение
to prohibit — запрещать
restriction — ограничение
to license — лицензировать
merit — заслуга, достоинство, качество
to perceive — воспринимать, понимать, чувствовать
roughly — примерно, приблизительно
assessment — оценка
sample — образец
to sample — пробовать
to award — награждать
entire — полностью
thorough — тщательный
various — различный
supply — поставка, запас, снабжение, продовольствие
competition — конкуренция
profit — прибыль
obstacle — препятствие

consistent — постоянный

quality — качество

hassle — борьба, драка, ссора

liability — ответственность

accident — несчастный случай, происшествие

Read and translate the text.

RESTAURANTS (Part I)

A restaurant is an establishment that serves prepared food and beverages to be consumed on the premises. The term covers a multiplicity of venues and a diversity of styles of cuisine.

Restaurants are sometimes a feature of a larger complex, typically a hotel, where the dining amenities are provided for the convenience of the residents and, of course, for the hotel to maximise their potential revenue. Such restaurants are often also open to non-residents.

History

The term “restaurant” (from the French “restaurer”, to restore) first appeared in the 16th century, meaning “a food which restores”, and referred specifically to a rich, highly flavoured soup. The modern sense of the word was born in around 1765 when a Parisian soup-seller named Boulanger opened his establishment. The first restaurant in the form that became standard (customers sitting down with individual portions at individual tables, selecting food from menus, during fixed opening hours) was the Grand Taverne de Londres, founded in 1782 by a man named Beauvilliers.

Whilst inns and taverns were known from antiquity, these were establishments aimed at travellers, and in general locals would rarely eat there. The restaurant became established in France after the French Revolution broke up catering guilds and forced the aristocracy to flee, leaving a retinue of servants with the skills to cook excellent food; whilst at the same time numerous provincials arrived in Paris with no family to cook for them. Restaurants were the means by which these two could be brought together — and the French tradition of dining out was born. In this period the star chef Antonin Carême, often credited with founding classic French cuisine, flourished, becoming known as the “Cook of Kings and the King of Cooks.”

Restaurants spread rapidly to the United States, with the first (Julien’s Restarator) opening in Boston in 1794, and they spread rapidly

thereafter. Most however continued on the standard approach (Service a la française) of providing a shared meal on the table to which customers would then help themselves, something which encouraged them to eat rather quickly. The modern formal style of dining, where customers are given a plate with the food already arranged on it, is known as Service a la russe, as it is said to have been introduced to France by the Russian Prince Kourakin in the 1830s, from where it spread rapidly to England and beyond.

Types of Restaurants

Restaurants range from unpretentious lunching or dining places catering to people working nearby, with simple food served in simple settings at low prices, to expensive establishments serving refined food and wines in a formal setting. In the former case, clients are not expected to wear formal wear. In the latter case, clients generally wear formal clothing, though this varies between cultures.

TEXT WORK

1. Pronounce correctly and transcribe. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Diversity, cuisine, restaurant, feature convenience, appear, flavour, highly, antiquity, guild, retinue, whilst, thereafter, approach, service a la française, chef, encourage, beyond, unpretentious, wear, culture.

2. Compare and remember.

BrE	AmE
to maximise	to maximize
to minimise	to minimize
to specialise	to specialize
to organise	to organize
flavour	flavor

3. Answer the questions.

1. What is a restaurant?
2. Why are restaurants established as part of hotels very often?
3. Where does the word “restaurant” come from?
4. When, why and how did the modern meaning of the word “restaurant” come in use?

5. What establishments to serve travellers were known from antiquity and why?
6. What happened to foodservice industry in France after the French Revolution?
7. How was the French tradition of dining out born?
8. Who was Antonin Carême? Why is he remembered?
9. When did restaurants spread in the United States?
10. What is "service à la française"?
11. What is "service à la russe"?
12. Who introduced "service à la russe" to France? When was it?
13. When did restaurants spread in England?
14. What are different types of restaurants?
15. In which way does dining in expensive establishments differ from dining at unpretentious places?

4. Compare and explain the difference.

British / English
kitchen / cuisine
meal / food
chef / cook
service à la française / service à la russe

5. Give Russian equivalents to the following words and word combinations. Find and translate sentences with them in the text.

To be consumed on the premises, multiplicity of venues, dining amenities, fixed opening hours, inns and taverns, aimed at travellers, catering guilds, retinue of servants, tradition of dining out, star chef, thereafter, shared meal, modern formal style of dining, introduced to France, spread rapidly to England and beyond, unpretentious lunching place, dining place, dining establishment, in the latter case, though.

6. Give English equivalents to the following words and word combinations.

Дорогое заведение; еда и напитки; разнообразие кулинарных стилей; особенность / характерная черта; для удобства постояльцев гостиницы; открыт для посторонних; потенциальный доход; появляться; жирный питательный суп; в современном смысле; индивидуальные порции; выбирать блюда из меню; с древнейших времен; местные жители; умение готовить отличную еду; свита

слуг; в то же самое время; жители провинции; основать классическую французскую кухню; быстро распространяться; стандартный подход; обслуживание по-французски; обслуживание по-русски; по низким ценам; изысканная пища; в первом случае; парадная одежда.

7. Make word combinations, translate them and find them in the text.

dining	sense
potential	revenue
rich	approach
modern	guild
individual	cuisine
fixed	portion
catering	lunching
french	soup
spread	style
standard	food
shared	meal
formal	rapidly
unpretentious	amenities
refined	hours

8. Make adjectives from these names of countries.

France, Russia, the USA, Great Britain.

9. Make a summary of the text.

10. Make a historic survey. Write an essay on the topic "Russian Prince Kourakin".

Who is Russian Prince Kourakin? What were his relations with Russian monarch of that time? Why was he in France? What was his contribution to foodservice industry and to foreign affairs of the two countries? How did he manage that?

TEXT 2

RESTAURANTS (Part II)

Types of Restaurants

The standard way in which restaurants operate is that customers sit at tables, a waiter comes to take their order, and later brings the food, and the customers pay the bill afterwards. Depending on local custom, a tip of varying proportions of the bill (often 10–20 %) is added, which (usually) goes to the staff rather than the restaurant.

Restaurants often specialise in certain types of food. For example, there are seafood restaurants, vegetarian restaurants or ethnic restaurants. Generally speaking, restaurants selling “local” food are simply called restaurants, while restaurants selling food of foreign origin are called accordingly, for example, a Chinese restaurant and a French restaurant.

Depending on local customs and the establishment, restaurants may or may not serve alcoholic beverages. Often, laws governing the sale of alcohol prohibit restaurants from selling alcohol without a meal, because otherwise, such a sale would be an activity for a bar, which are meant to have more severe restrictions. Some restaurants are licensed to serve alcohol (“fully licensed”), and/or permit customers to “bring your own” alcohol (BYO / BYOB*).

Restaurant Guides

Restaurant guides list the best places to eat. One of the most famous of these, in Western Europe, is the Michelin series of guides which accord from 1 to 3 stars to restaurants they perceive to be of high culinary merit. Restaurants with stars in the Michelin guide are formal, expensive establishments; in general the more stars awarded, the higher the prices. In the United States, the Mobil Travel Guides and the American Automobile Association rate restaurants on a similar 1 to 5 star (Mobil) or Diamond (AAA) scale. Three, four, and five star ratings are roughly equivalent to the Michelin one, two, and three star ratings while one and two star ratings typically indicate more casual places to eat. The popular Zagat Survey compiles individuals’ comments about restaurants but does not pass an “official” critical assessment.

Nearly all major American newspapers employ restaurant critics and publish online dining guides for the cities they serve. American newspa-

* BYOB is short for “bring your own booze (alcohol)”

per restaurant critics typically visit dining establishments anonymously and return several times so as to sample the entire menu. Newspaper restaurant guides, therefore, tend to provide the most thorough coverage of various cities’ dining options.

Economics

In economics, restaurants are the end of the supply chain in the food-service industry. There is usually too much competition in most cities since barriers to entry are relatively low, which means that for most restaurants, it is hard to make a profit. In most First World industrialized countries, restaurants are heavily regulated to ensure the health and safety of the customers.

The typical restaurant owner faces many obstacles to success, including raising initial capital, finding competent and skilled labour, maintaining consistent and excellent food quality, maintaining high standards of safety, and the constant hassle of minimising potential liability for any food poisoning or accidents that may occur. This is why restaurants seem to come and go all the time.

TEXT WORK

1. Pronounce correctly and transcribe. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Foreign, guide, award, roughly, entire, thorough, ensure, health, success, liability, accident.

2. Answer the questions.

1. What is the standard way of restaurant operation?
2. What is a tip?
3. What does the tip depend on?
4. What can be restaurant specializations?
5. How do you distinguish by name the restaurants than serve “local” food and restaurants that serve food of foreign origin?
6. Why do restaurants serve or not serve alcoholic beverages?
7. What is a restaurant guide?
8. What is one of the most popular restaurant guides in Western countries?
9. What are the classifications of restaurants in Europe and America?
10. What are the differences and similarities in these ratings?
11. Why do American newspapers employ restaurant critics?

12. What is the job of a restaurant critic?
13. Why is a newspaper restaurant guide often more reliable than any other restaurant guide?
14. Why is competition in the restaurant business so high?
15. What are restaurant's biggest concerns in Western countries?
16. What obstacles does a typical restaurant owner face?
17. Why do restaurants seem to come and go all the time?

3. Give Russian equivalents to the following words and word combinations. Find and translate sentences with them in the text.

The standard way, to take the order, to pay the bill afterwards, to add, it goes to the staff, certain types of food, seafood restaurant, vegetarian restaurant, ethnic restaurant, generally speaking, food of foreign origin, to be licensed to serve alcohol, restaurant guide, high culinary merit, the more stars awarded, the higher the prices, roughly equivalent, star ratings, casual places, to visit dining establishments anonymously, the most thorough coverage, supply chain, foodservice industry, barriers to entry are relatively low, heavily regulated, food poisoning, bring your own booze.

4. Give English equivalents to the following words and word combinations.

Клиент /посетитель ресторана (2); в зависимости от местных традиций; принять заказ; оплатить счет; соответственно; алкогольные напитки; иначе; строгие ограничения; разрешать; в общем; критическая оценка; попробовать все блюда в меню; варианты пообедать; слишком большая конкуренция; трудно получать прибыль; накопить первоначальный капитал; найти компетентную рабочую силу; обеспечивать здоровье и безопасность; пищевое отравление; поэтому.

5. Make word combinations, translate them and find them in the text.

local	merit
seafood	restaurant
alcoholic	industry
culinary	coverage
roughly	quality
critical	menu

thorough	capital
various	beverages
entire	assessment
foodservice	poisoning
heavily	custom
initial	labour
skilled	regulated
consistent	equivalent
food	options

6. Match the synonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text (both parts).

wear	alcohol
work	customer
booze	sample
allow	operate
feel	rarely
check	entire
seldom	clothing
client	revenue
whole	bill
flee	diversity
labour	in general
variety	permit
profit	run away
try	staff
generally speaking	perceive

7. Match the antonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text (both parts).

permit	casual
modern	expensive
simple	prohibit
traveller	roughly
in the former case	individual
cheap	refined
exactly	local
competition	monopoly
shared	in the latter case
formal	ancient

8. Make a summary of the text.

9. Match the word with its definition.

PEOPLE WHO WORK AT THE RESTAURANT

Captain or Host or Hostess	— a person who serves drinks at the bar or in the bar if it is a separate establishment.
Waiter or Waitress	— the head cook.
Busboy	— a person who meets and sits the guests.
Sommelier or Wine Steward	— a person who washes dishes.
Bartender	— a person who takes the orders and serves the meals.
Buffet server	— a person who waits on guests at a buffet or helps people to choose from a buffet menu.
Floor supervisor	— a person who works in the kitchen but doesn't actually cook or just makes simple things like salads.
Cashier	— a person who pours water, clears and sets tables, and performs other similar chores.
Manager	— the head waiter or waitress.
Chef	— the person who operates the restaurant or manages the work of a restaurant.
Cook	— a person who actually prepares meals.
Kitchen aid	— a person who takes orders for wine and sometimes for other alcoholic drinks.
Dishwasher	— a person who receives payments from the guests.

10. Divide all people who work at a restaurant into two groups: kitchen staff and floor staff or serving staff.

11. Fill in the blanks with prepositions where necessary. Translate the story.

TIPPING GUIDE

Dining Out:

- **Waitstaff** — 15—20 % ... the bill, excluding tax and expensive wine. Many restaurants automatically add a 10—15 % gratuity ... parties ... six or more, so check the menu. You can add another 5 % ... exceptional service.

- **Wine Steward/Sommelier** — If they help you choose a bottle ... wine (or choose it ... you), 10—20 % ... the wine bill only. Use discretion based ... how much service was provided (did he allow you to taste before you selected?) If the wine is very expensive, it's generally acceptable to cap your tip ... a reasonable amount (say, about \$20), since you are tipping ... the service received. Leave cash or specify ... the credit card receipt which portion is ... the sommelier.
- **Buffet Servers** — \$1—\$2 ... person dining. Lean ... the higher end if they bring you drinks.

In the Lounge:

- **Bartender/Cocktail Waitress** — 10—15 % ... the total. ... free drinks ... Las Vegas, \$1—\$2 ... round.

12. Agree or disagree with the following statements. Give your reasons.

For agreement use:

- I quite agree.*
- I agree with you.*
- I fully agree.*
- I think you are right.*

For disagreement use:

- Actually, I don't agree.*
- I don't think that's right.*
- I don't think that's true (correct).*
- Well, I am not sure if that's true (right, correct).*

1. The more stars the restaurant gets, the better the service is.
2. The more stars the restaurant gets, the lower the prices are.
3. The more restaurants there are in the city, the better for customers.
4. The more exotic the restaurant is, the fewer customers it gets.
5. Tipping is a good custom.
6. When I eat out I always leave a good tip.
7. Restaurants are busy only on weekends and before holidays like Christmas.
8. Traditional restaurants that sell "local" food are popular only among tourists.
9. Dining out is a unique French tradition.
10. Dining out is not very popular in Russia.
11. Going to a restaurant is always fun and pleasant.
12. If the city is not a resort it doesn't need restaurants at all.

13. Discuss:

1. What makes a good restaurant?
2. What is more important for a restaurant: location or advertisement?

3. Why do celebrities open restaurants so often?
4. Would you like to work in a restaurant? Why?
5. If yes, what position would you like to take?
6. Would you like to be a restaurant manager? Why?

14. Speak about...restaurants in your city.

15. Translate into English.

На 22-м этаже Российской Академии Наук на Ленинском проспекте открылся необыкновенно стильный и вкусный ресторан «Небесная Гостиная» («Sky Lounge»). С высоты птичьего полета город как на ладони. А в стенах ресторана тепло и изысканно, красиво и уютно. К услугам истинных гурманов — европейская и азиатская кухня. Летняя рапсодия: салат из разнотравья с теплым сыром «Томино» и пармской (Parma) ветчиной. Или настоящая гастрономическая поэма: карпаччо (сорассо) из копченой утиной грудки и свежих фруктов, замаринованных в коньяке (cognac). Легкое дуновение Востока: рулеты из голубого тунца с хрустящими овощами и соусом унаги. И совершенно идиллический натюрморт: вязанка из спаржи с итальянским омлетом и кусочком домашнего трюфельного масла. Идеальный вечерний вариант для проголодавшихся сторонников здорового питания — черная треска с шафранным ризотто и спаржей или розовая дорадо с запеченными перцами и базиликом. И не забудьте про десерт: крем-брюле, освежающий супчик из свежей клубники с мятой и огромный выбор домашнего мороженого и шербета (sorbet).

Средний ужин в ресторане обойдется в 70—100 у.е, что может показаться достаточно дорого, но, поверьте, удовольствие от посещения этого заведения стоит того!

16. Write an essay on the topic "Restaurants In ..." (choose any city or country).

17. Fill in the gaps with the right words from the list below. Translate the story.

FLO

Located in a well-known _____, this old German _____ dates back to 1886 and still holds the record for the best sauerkraut* in Paris. The brasserie, which is in surprisingly good

* квашеная капуста

_____ despite its age, has welcomed movie stars in its time. Sarah Bernhardt apparently _____ on sauerkraut here, when she was doing a _____ at the Théâtre de la Renaissance. The decor is divine, especially the elaborate _____, the leather booths and the stained glass _____ separating the rooms. Expect to _____ EUR30-EUR46 ordering à la carte. Lunch set menu available for EUR21 and dinner _____ for EUR30. Open Hours: Lunch: noon—3 pm daily; Dinner: 7 pm—1 am

Brasserie, ceilings, menu, to dine, window, daily, area, to pay, condition, play.

TEXT 3

Vocabulary

meal — еда (прием пищи)
to occur — случаться
occasion — случай
wedding — свадьба
anniversary — годовщина
dessert — десерт
snack — закуска (перекус)
to have a snack — перекусить
snack bar — закусочная
filling — сытный
calorie — калория, калорийный
recreation area — зона отдыха
banquet — банкет
course — блюдо
appetizer = starter — закуска (блюдо)
main course — основное блюдо
liqueur — ликер
sorbet — шербет, фруктовое мороженое
complex — сложный
to clash — сталкиваться
behaviour — поведение
circumstances — обстоятельства
provenance — происхождение, источник
bowl — миска, глубокая тарелка, чаша
plate — тарелка

common — общий, обычный

cookies = biscuits — печенье

bun — булочка

knife — нож

fork — вилка

spoon — ложка

to pray — молиться

Read and translate the text.

MEAL

A meal is an instance of eating, specifically one that takes place at a specific time and includes specific, prepared food.

Meals occur primarily at homes, restaurants, and cafeterias, but may occur in many other places. Regular meals occur on a daily basis, typically several times a day. Special meals are usually held in conjunction with such occasions as birthdays, weddings, anniversaries, and holidays. Common meals are breakfast, elevenses, brunch, lunch, tea, dinner, supper, and dessert.

A meal is different from a snack in that meals are larger and more filling, while snacks are more likely to be small, high-calorie affairs; however, any food eaten in small amounts at an unscheduled time can be classified as a snack.

A picnic is an outdoor meal where one brings one's food, such as a sandwich or a prepared meal in a picnic basket. It often takes place in a natural or recreation area, such as a park, forest, or beach. On long drives a picnic may take place at a road-side stop such as a rest area.

A banquet is a large, often formal, and elaborate meal with many guests.

Colleges and universities require their students to choose certain meal plan.

A multicourse meal

A modern multicourse meal will typically consist of several of the following meal courses, as well as suitable beverages to fit the course being served:

- Appetizer or starter with 1st wine, typically a white wine
- Salad
- Soup
- Main course with 2nd wine, typically a red wine
- Dessert with a dessert wine
- After-dinner coffee with liqueur, brandy, cognac or grappa

- Fruit and cheese

There may be drinks and snacks served both before and after the meal.

There may be served something to clean the palate between courses, such as a sorbet.

The order of the courses will likely vary depending on local custom.

Customs, traditions, and etiquette

Customs and traditions regarding eating and meals varies from country to country, as well as within countries, based on such factors as regional differences, social class, education, and religion. In a complex, multi-cultural society there is increased risk of different customs and traditions clashing. What is correct behaviour, and what is not, and in what circumstances is the provenance of etiquette.

Examples of different customs and traditions:

Food in some cultures is eaten from individual plates or bowls, while in other cultures people eat from a common one. Even where people tend to eat from individual plates, there may be exceptions, as in the case of some small pieces of food that can be held in the hand easily, such as cookies or some snack foods, where it is common to eat from a common plate, biscuit tin, or similar container.

Different cultures might have different rules for eating the same item. In the USA people eat sausages in a bun, or with a knife and fork, while in some countries in Europe sausages are held between the fingers while being eaten.

In some cultures, it is considered proper to wait until everyone is seated before starting to eat, while in other cultures it is not an issue.

In some cultures it is considered proper to wait for the host to give the command before guests sit at the table for a meal, while in other cultures there are different rules.

In some religions, people pray or read aloud from a religious text before and possibly also after eating. In diverse, religiously mixed company where some people might want to pray, and others might not, it may be proper etiquette to allow for a short time of silence allowing those who want to do so, the chance to pray.

TEXT WORK

1. Pronounce correctly and transcribe. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Meal, prepared, occur, occasion, conjunction, birthday, anniversary, affair, unscheduled, outdoor, natural, banquet, course, dessert, liqueur,

cognac, sorbet, etiquette, behaviour, circumstances, culture, exception, piece, sausages, knife, issue, aloud, diverse, might.

2. Answer the questions.

1. What is a meal?
2. Where do meals occur?
3. What is the difference between regular meals and special meals?
4. What are common meals of the day?
5. What is a snack? Is it different from a meal?
6. What is a picnic? Where can a picnic take place?
7. What is a banquet?
8. What is a multicourse meal?
9. What does a multicourse meal consist of?
10. What can you say about customs, traditions and etiquette of eating in different countries and cultures in general?
11. What are the increased risks of multicultural societies?
12. When do people eat from individual places and when from common ones?
13. What is the difference in etiquette between eating sausage in Europe and in the USA?
14. What are some examples of proper etiquette at the table? Give more examples from your own experience.

3. Give Russian equivalents to the following words and word combinations. Find and translate sentences with them in the text.

Regular meals, daily basis, special meal, in conjunction with, occasion, common meals, high-calorie affair, outdoor meal, natural or recreation area, road-side stop, elaborate meal, to choose certain meal plan, multicourse meal, to consist of, appetizer, starter, liqueur, brandy, cognac, grappa, drinks and snacks are served both before and after the meal, regional differences, complex multicultural society, increased risk, small pieces of food, held in the hand, different rules, the same item, sausages in a bun, sausages are held between the fingers, not an issue, a short time of silence, diverse, religiously mixed company.

4. Give English equivalents to the following words and word combinations.

Определенное время; приготовленная еда; случаться; отличается от...; более питательный; в маленьком количестве; в неопре-

деленное время; корзина для пикника; происходить; лес; зона отдыха; блюдо в меню; подходящие напитки; подходит к этому блюду; закуска(2) подается в начале обеда; основное блюдо; порядок блюд; относительно еды...; правильное поведение; в каких обстоятельствах; кушать из отдельной тарелки; из общей тарелки; в случае...; держать в руках; есть руками; ножом и вилкой; в некоторых культурах; в то в время как в других культурах; дать возможность помолиться.

5. Find out all word combinations with the word "meal" in the text and translate them.

6. Match the synonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

common	complex
diverse	biscuits
correct	appetizer
starter	take place
drink	thing
cookies	regular
occur	mixed
multicultural	beverage
item	proper

7. Match the antonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

scheduled	the same
outdoor	impossible
different	exception
rule	snack
meal	unscheduled
possible	indoor

8. Retell the text. Make a summary of the text.

9. Match the word with its definition.

DAILY MEALS

Standard meals eaten on a daily basis have different names depending on the time of day or the importance of the meal:

- Breakfast** — an evening meal.
Lunch — a midday meal.
Brunch — is usually eaten within an hour or two after a person wakes up in the morning.
Tea — a late-morning meal, usually larger than a breakfast and usually replacing both breakfast and lunch.
Dunch — a mid-afternoon meal consisting of light food with tea. In parts of the UK, Australia and New Zealand, it may refer to the evening meal (dinner).
Supper — can be at any time of the afternoon or evening and denotes the main meal of the day; sometimes it is at lunchtime and sometimes at suppertime.
Dinner — a mid-afternoon meal, usually replacing both lunch and dinner as the main, or even only, meal of the day.

10. Speak about ... your usual meals of the day: when, where and what you usually eat on weekdays, on weekends and while on holidays.

11. Speak about ... customs, traditions and etiquette of eating in Russia. Describe a typical Russian breakfast, lunch and dinner.

12. Make an ethnographic survey. Speak about customs, traditions and etiquette of eating in your region.

1. What peculiar customs and etiquette does eating in your region imply?
2. What is the traditional food of your region?
3. Which way did the traditional food and eating etiquette of your region influence Russian and world cultures and cuisines?

13. Fill in the blanks with articles where necessary. Translate the advertisement.

INDIAN SUMMER

Situated in ... old stone house dating back to ... 1880s, this is ... good place for ... romantic dinner. Dine inside by ... fireplace or under ... stars on ... flowery patio. It features ... good old-fashioned country dishes such as ... Herb Rotisserie Duck and ... Grilled Center Cut Pork Chop with ... Bourbon Molasses. "Royal" dishes include ... Lamb Cooked in ... Royal Cashew-Onion Gravy and ... Cauliflower Florets in ... Vegetable

Sauce. There is also ... full bar inside. ... Rooms are available for ... private parties and ... catering is also available. ... extensive wine list begins at USD18 ... bottle at ... low end and includes several ... Syrah, ... Cabernets, and ... rare Magnums. ... impeccable service attracts ... many types, from ... couples on ... romantic getaways to ... tourists and ... locals.

Open Hours: Lunch: 11:30 am — 2:30 pm Tue-Sun; Dinner: 5:30 pm — 10:30 pm daily

14. Choose the right word from the list below, mind forms of the verbs. Translate the abstract.

CHOOSING A RESTAURANT TO GO

Restaurants can be differentiated based on five _____ variables:

- 1— Food & wine list
- 2— Service
- 3— _____
- 4— Ambience
- 5— Location

Depending on the _____, some of these variables are more _____ than others. These days, the Internet offers great _____ as some restaurants offer would-be patrons (and competitors) the opportunity to peruse the _____ online. Specialty sites even offer _____ lists of restaurants classified by genre and _____.

The trouble is that you are rarely _____ to the Internet when you must choose a place _____. Word of mouth has always been instrumental in the _____ of a restaurant, but this won't help when you're travelling. So what should you _____ for in a restaurant?

Important, extensive, to look, main, to dine, resources, success, occasion, menu, region, to connect, price.

15. Agree or disagree with the following statements. Give your reasons.

For agreement use:
That's right.
I am with you here.
I fully agree.

For disagreement use:
I think that's wrong.
I am not with you here.
I don't really agree.

Definitely.
Exactly.

Definitely not.
On the contrary.

1. Good service is more important than the food.
2. Ambience is more important than prices.
3. The best way to choose a restaurant is to visit it.
4. If you want to go to a restaurant on a date, you should choose the place and book a table in advance.
5. Restaurants are not for everybody, they are only for elite or for those who don't cook and have no family to cook for them.
6. The only reason to go to a restaurant is to avoid washing dishes afterwards.
7. Meals at restaurants are tastier than at home.

16. Discuss.

GOOD SERVICE

You do not need to be a rocket scientist to understand the importance of good service. It means more than getting your order right. Offering good service entails smiling, being friendly, courteous, perceptive, empathetic, reliable, and timely.

So many trendy restaurants feel that they can get away with crappy service. Sadly, this is something that tourists are vulnerable to, but local patrons have no reason to expect anything but the best, unless of course they're sadistic and like to be subjected to pain.

- *Do you agree with the author? Why? Give your reasons.*
- *What is a good service for you?*
- *Do you always get good service at restaurants?*
- *What can you suggest for improving the quality of service in restaurants of your city?*

17. Speak about... your last visit to a restaurant.

18. Translate into English.

РЕСТОРАН «АКРОПОЛЬ»

Кухня: греческая кухня, европейская кухня, итальянская кухня, континентальная кухня, морская кухня, русская кухня, средиземноморская кухня, французская кухня.

Два зала: 1 зал — 65 мест, 2 (летняя веранда) — 40 мест.

Часы работы: с 12.00 до 00.00.

Средняя стоимость счета: \$20—30.

Специальные предложения: Бизнес-ланч, Гриль, Еда на вынос, Карта вин, Мясное меню, Мангал, Проведение банкетов, Постное меню, Разливное вино, Разливное пиво, Рыбное меню.

Развлечения: живая музыка после 18.00.

В ресторане есть летняя веранда.

19. Write an essay on the topic "Eating Culture in My Region".

20. Read and translate the restaurant advertisements.

CAFE BEAUBOURG

— Rated # 1 in Paris

43, rue Saint Merri, Paris, 75004 France

- Category: Specialty, European, Atmosphere

From this classy bar-restaurant you get a great view of the eye-catching Beaubourg contemporary art centre. Spacious and elaborately furnished, the cafe is split into smaller areas and has a pleasant mezzanine. The terrace with its comfortable chairs is a great place for tourists and the cafe's hip crowd of regulars. The food, starting with a healthy selection of American and traditional French breakfasts, is simple and hearty, though priced *à la Parisienne*.

Open Hours: 8 am — 1 am Sun-Thu; 8 am — 2 am Fri & Sat

FRESH CREAM

— Rated # 3 in Monterey

99 Pacific St, (100C Heritage Harbor), Monterey, CA

- Category: American & Caribbean, European, Atmosphere, Special Features

This is a place for discerning customers who want only the best. The cuisine is primarily French with a definite California twist, and the service is beyond impeccable. The decor is low key so as not to detract from the incredible views. Highly awarded both locally and nationally, the kitchen offers meticulously crafted dishes such as Poached Salmon with Artichokes and Saffron-thyme Sauce, and boned and roasted Duck in Black Currant Sauce. Sit back and enjoy the harbor lights while sampling from the huge wine list.

Open Hours: Dinner: 6 pm — 10 pm daily; Bar: 5 pm — 10 pm daily

If you've never experienced an evening at fresh cream the five-star French paragon perched above Monterey harbor you really should do that.

The views of the bay are as superb as the imaginative French cuisine at this outstanding restaurant in Heritage Harbor. The menu, which changes weekly, might include rack of lamb Dijonnaise, roast beef and much more...

The ambience measures up to the food at Fresh Cream, with glittering harbor views and a posh interior of gleaming blond woods and muted colors. However, it's of course the food that helps the spot to be so popular.

IL BACCARO

- Category: Italian, European, Atmosphere

Dining in Il Baccaro feels just like being in an Italian wine cellar. The decor is simple and unpretentious, with wooden tables and chairs and a small bar area. There is also an outdoor seating area located right in Meeting House Square.

If you are in Dublin on a Saturday morning, head to the Meeting House Square in Temple Bar just behind Eustace Street. You can buy freshly baked bread, fresh vegetables and home made cheese or have a divine Italian breakfast.

The food is authentic Italian fare. You won't find spaghetti and lasagne here, but grilled-sausages with cannellini beans, risotto with wild mushrooms, or stuffed chicken breast. It's delicious and filling, and a great place to sit and share a carafe of house wine with a friend.

Open Hours: 6 pm — 11 pm Mon-Thurs, 5 pm — 11 pm Fri-Sat

21. Look at these advertisements again.

1. Do they all contain the same information?
2. Which advertisement is the most attractive and why?
3. Which of these restaurants would you like to go to? Why?

22. Make your own advertisement for a restaurant.

23. Write an essay on the topic "Eating Out in..." (choose any city or country).

DIALOGUE 1

Read and dramatize the dialogue.

Vocabulary

ginger ale — имбирный лимонад
crispy — хрустящий

noodles — лапша

rose-petal salad — салат из лепестков роз

AT THE TAI RESTAURANT

Somsak: Miss Stewart. Welcome. How are you?

Susan: Fine, thank you. And you?

Somsak: Would you like something to drink?

Susan: Yes, I'd like a glass of ginger ale with ice. Harry what would you like?

Harry: Do you have a dry white wine?

Somsak: How about California Chablis?

Harry: Chablis is fine.

Somsak: What would you like to eat?

Susan: I'd like the mee krob. Harry, would you like to see a menu?

Harry: No, it's O.K. I'll have a mee krob also. What is it?

Susan: Crispy fried noodles. I love them.

Somsak: May I bring you a salad?

Susan: Oh, yes. What do you recommend today?

Somsak: I recommend rose-petal salad. Special for my friends.

Harry: Why not?

Somsak: I'll take care of everything.

24. Discuss:

1. What is "mee krob"?
2. Would you like to try it?
3. Have you ever been to a Tai restaurant?
4. What other types of restaurants have you been to? Describe the food there.

DIALOGUE 2

Read and dramatize the dialogue.

GOING TO A RESTAURANT

What can you say about Mike and the restaurant where he invited his girlfriend to?

Mike: A table for two, please.

Receptionist: Er, I'm afraid that's not possible, sir.

Mike: Why not? There are a lot of empty tables.

Receptionist: I'm sorry, sir, but you aren't wearing a tie.

- Mike:** What do you mean?
Receptionist: I'm afraid all men have to wear a tie. And you can't wear jeans. You have to wear trousers.
Mike: Come on Maggie, let's go somewhere else. What a ridiculous rule!

DIALOGUE 3

Read and dramatize the dialogue.

AT THE RESTAURANT

- Waiter:** A table for three?
Mike: Yes, that's right.
Waiter: Fine. Here we are.
Flora: Oh, I'm cold. There's a draught* here. Couldn't we sit somewhere else?
Mike: Excuse me! Excuse me!
Waiter: Yes, would you like to order?
Flora: No. We'd like to sit somewhere else, please.
Waiter: Is something the matter with this table?
Mike: Yes, there's a draught.
Waiter: Oh, I'm sorry. Would you sit over here, please? I hope this table will be better.
Flora: Thank you very much.
John: Thank you.
Mike: Thank you. That's very kind of you.
John: Right. What are we going to have?
Flora: Oh. I'm hungry. Let me see. I'll have smoked salmon to start. Do you want to start with smoked salmon?
Mike: No, I'll have shrimp cocktail.
John: And I'll have shrimp cocktail too.
Mike: What are you going to have for your main course?
Flora: Let me see. I'll have roast beef with French fries and a salad. What about you?
Mike: I'll have the same. Salad, roast beef and potatoes.
John: And I'll have steak with salad and chips, I think.
Mike: Are we ready to order then?
John and Flora: Yes, we can order now.

25. Make up your own dialogues at different types of restaurants.

* СКВОЗНЯК

DIALOGUE 4

Read and translate the menu.

CHOOSING FROM A MENU

Peter is meeting his friends, Bennie and Hanna, for dinner at a restaurant. Look at the menu. How many dishes are there? Is there anything for vegetarians? What would you like to order from this menu?

MENU	
Starters	
Smoked salmon with mustard sauce	
Tomato and orange soup	
Chef's green salad	
Oysters on ice	
Main courses	
Pepper steak	
Philadelphia cheese steak	
Roast chicken with lemon	
Mushroom and spinach lasagna	
Ravioli	
Cold buffet (with seafood, fish and cold meat)	
Desserts	
Lemon cheesecake	
Fresh fruit salad and cream	
Chocolate cake	
Apple pie	

Read, memorize and dramatize the dialogue.

- Peter:** Good evening. Do you speak English?
Waiter: Yes, sir. How many people?
Peter: A table for three, please.
Waiter: Come this way.
Peter: Have you got a menu in English?
Waiter: Here you are, sir.
Peter: This looks good. What are you going have?
Waiter: Are you ready to order?

- Peter:** What do you recommend?
Waiter: The pepper steak's very good.
Peter: Hmm! What are you having, Bennie?
Bennie: I'll have the pepper steak, and the soup to start.
Waiter: How would you like your steak, sir? Rare, medium, or well-done?
Bennie: Well-done.
Peter: What about you, Hanna?
Hanna: The roast chicken for me, please. And to start, I'd like the salad.
Waiter: And you, sir?
Peter: I'd like the salmon and the roast chicken.
Waiter: So that's two salmons and one salad, is that right?
Bennie: No, one salmon, one soup, and one salad.
Waiter: And two roast chickens and a steak.
Bennie: That's it. Thanks.
Waiter: What would you like to drink?
Peter: A bottle of red wine, semi-dry, please.
Hanna: I'd like some mineral water too, please.
Waiter: Here are your starters. Enjoy your meal!

DIALOGUE 5

Read, memorize and dramatize the dialogue.

RESTAURANT COMPLAINTS

- Bennie:** Excuse me, please. This soup's cold.
Waiter: I'm very sorry. I'll get you another one.
Bennie: Excuse me, please! This steak is rare. I asked for well-done.
Waiter: I'm sorry, sir. I thought you said rare.
Hanna: Waiter. Sorry, but this glass is dirty.
Waiter: I'm awfully sorry, madam. I'll bring you another one.
Hanna: Excuse me, I haven't got a fork.
Waiter: Really. Oh dear. Here you are, madam.
Hanna: I'm afraid I didn't order this. I asked for roast chicken.
Waiter: I'm sorry, madam. I'll change it for you at once.

DIALOGUE 6

Read, memorize and dramatize the dialogues.

FINISHING THE MEAL

- Waiter:** Would you like anything for dessert?
Peter: Just a black coffee for me, please. What about you two?
Hanna: I'll have a white coffee, please, and a piece of cheesecake.
Bennie: Nothing for me, thanks.
Peter: And could I have the bill, please.
Waiter: Certainly, sir. Just a moment. Here you are.
Bennie: Let me have it. I'll pay.
Peter: Oh, no, no, Bennie, it's my treat. Oh, there is a mistake here. Excuse me, the bill is wrong. We didn't order two bottles of wine. We only had one.
Waiter: Yes, you are right. I'm sorry, sir. I'll change the total.
Peter: Do you accept credit cards? Visa?
Waiter: Definitely, sir. Thank you very much.

26. Role play.

Student A	Student B
<i>You come to a restaurant. Choose the place, food from the menu, ask the waiter/waitress to describe the food you don't know by names. Make your order. Complain. Ask for the check. Pay the check and leave the tip.</i>	<i>You are a waiter/waitress. Welcome the customer. Help to choose, explain the names of different food, take the order, and apologize for the things the customer is complaining about. Bring the check. Be polite and friendly.</i>

Swap roles.

27. Make several dialogues at different restaurants. Swap roles.

28. Translate into English.

МЕНЮ

Закуски

Ассорти из свежих овощей
 Баклажаны, фаршированные домашним сыром

Слабосоленая сельдь
Ассорти из домашних сыров
Блинчики со сметаной, с вареньем, с красной икрой.

Салаты

Салат по-деревенски (Запеченная говядина, отварной картофель, корнишоны и зеленый горошек под горчичным соусом)
Коктейль из креветок (Половина авокадо, креветки, ананас, заправленные соусом)
Греческий (Томаты, огурцы, болгарский перец, брынза, маслины, оливки, лук, листья салата)
Цезарь (Куриное филе, салат, чесночные гренки, сыр Пармезан, соус из анчоусов)

Супы

Суп от шеф-повара
Овощной суп с грибами в сливочном соусе
Суп «Тальятелли» с морепродуктами 295 г

Горячее из мяса и птицы

Куриная печень, жаренная с грибами, болгарским перцем и репчатым луком с добавлениемпряного соуса на красном вине
Филе телятины, жаренное с баклажанами, цуккини, томатами, репчатым луком и грибами
Острый бифштекс
Говяжий бифштекс под острым соусом
Свиная вырезка с черносливом
Свинина под грибным соусом
Утиная грудка в апельсинно-малиновом соусе (подается с рисовой смесью)

Рыба и морепродукты

Судак «Авиньон»
Тигровые креветки
Мидии под шафрановым соусом
Морские гребешки с беконом и рисом
Форель запеченная с овощным гарниром
Шашлык из осетрины

Гарниры

Картофель-фри
Картофельное пюре

Жареный картофель с грибами
Рис с овощами
Гречневая каша с белыми грибами

Соусы

Соевый
Мед
Масло сливочное
Сметана 35 г
Кетчуп
Майонез

Десерты

Мороженое в ассортименте (шоколадное, клубничное, манго, сливочное с шоколадной крошкой, ореховое, лимонное)
Штрудель
Чернослив в сливочном соусе
Свежие фрукты
Слоеный торт из миндального бисквита
Творожный торт «Лесная ягода»

Безалкогольные напитки

Минеральная вода
Кока-Кола
Пепси-Кола
Тоник
Клюквенный морс
Молоко
Сливки
Соки (Апельсиновый, яблочный, ананасовый, томатный, вишневый, грейпфрутовый)
Чай (черный, фруктовый, зеленый)
Кофе (Капучино, Эспрессо, по-восточному, греческий)

Карта вин

Красное
Сухое, полусухое, полусладкое, десертное

Белое
Сухое, полусухое, полусладкое, сладкое, десертное

Алкогoльные напитки

Коньяк, бренди, водка, наливка, текила, джин, ром, виски, ликеры.

PROJECT WORK

1. Write a restaurant guide to tourists, travellers, and locals in your city. Describe cuisine, food & wine lists, service, prices, ambience and location. Rate restaurants according to any known or your own classification. Suggest good places to dine for different occasions. Present you "**Restaurant Guide**" to your group and may be publish it at your local newspaper.

2. You are a manager you are going to open a new restaurant soon. **Advertise on you restaurant.** Include details about cuisine, menu details, service, additional and special services you provide, prices, ambience and location and inside decor. Give contact information. Make a presentation to your group.

Part II

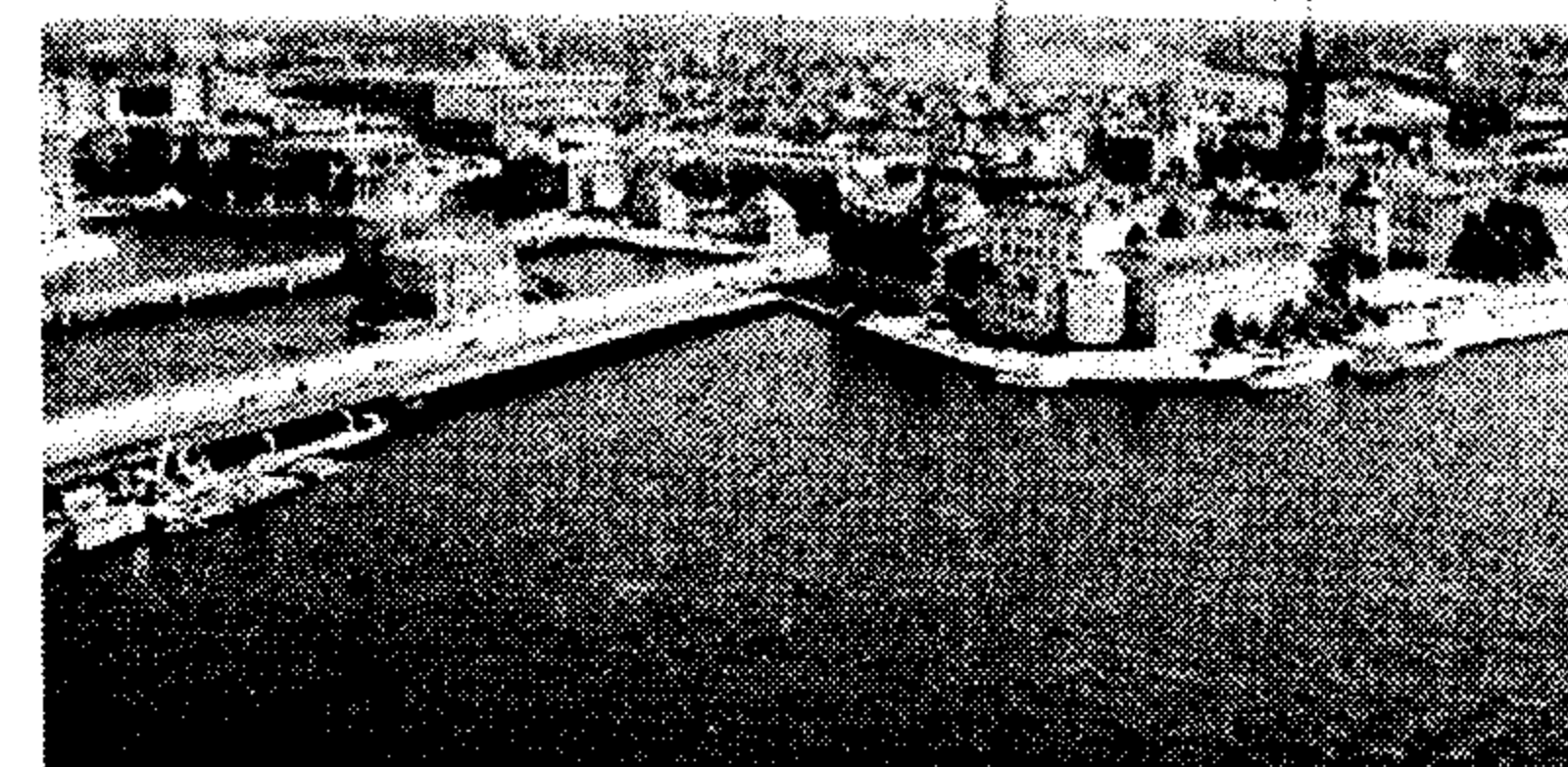
TRAVEL BUSINESS

Unit 1. Forms Of Tourism

.....



NORWAY



SWEDEN

I thought such things could be only in Venice...

GROUP TALK

Look at the pictures and say what countries are there.

1. What countries are the most popular tourists' destinations, do you think? Why?
2. What makes a country popular for tourists?
3. Can the tourists' popularity of a particular country be increased? Which way?

TEXT 1

Vocabulary

to define — определять
 purpose — цель
 recreation — отдых
 comprehensive — исчерпывающий, всеобъемлющий
 tangible — материальный, осязаемый, реальный
 intangible — нематериальный, неосязаемый, нереальный
 insurance — страховка
 hospitality — гостеприимство
 safety — безопасность
 escape — побег, избегание
 adventure — приключение
 experience — опыт, жизненный опыт
 sovereignty — суверенитет, суверенное государство
 to depend on/upon — зависеть от...
 expenditures — расходы
 source of taxation — источник налоговых поступлений
 source of income — источник дохода
 enterprise — предприятие
 consequently — следовательно
 non-governmental organization — неправительственная организация
 to promote — рекламировать, содействовать, поддерживать
 goods — товары
 commerce — коммерция, коммерческая деятельность
 interchangeably — взаимозаменяемо
 to imply — подразумевать
 pejoratively — уничижительно
 shallow — мелкий, поверхностный

wonder — чудо
 prerequisite — необходимый предварительный, необходимый как предварительное условие
 essential — существенный, существенно необходимый, основной
 disposable income — располагаемый доход; доход, которым население располагает после уплаты налогов
 sufficient — достаточный
 inclination — желание, склонность
 furthermore — более того
 restriction — ограничение
 legal — юридический
 wealth — богатство
 cuisine — кухня (еда)
 to gain — приобретать, набирать
 acceptance — принятие, приятие
 upbringing — воспитание
 nobleman — дворянин
 aesthetic — эстетический
 to gather — собирать
 treasure — сокровище
 volume — объем
 equal — равный, одинаковый
 grand tour — *истор.* путешествие по Франции, Италии и др. странам для завершения образования
 to aim at — целиться, стремиться, нацеливаться
 ladder — лестница
 to undertake — предпринимать, брать на себя
 artist — художник
 architecture — архитектура
 literature — литература
 art — искусство
 to draw visitors to — привлекать посетителей в/к...
 movement — движение
 to inspire — вдохновлять
 to extend — расширять(ся)
 gorge — теснина, узкое ущелье

Read and translate the text.

TOURISM AND ITS HISTORY

Tourism can be defined as the act of travel for the purpose of recreation, and the provision of services for this act. A tourist is someone who

travels at least eighty kilometres (fifty miles) from home for the purpose of recreation, as defined by the World Tourism Organization (a United Nations body).

A more comprehensive definition would be that tourism is a service industry, comprising a number of tangible and intangible components. The tangible elements include transport systems — air, rail, road, water and now, space; hospitality services — accommodation, foods and beverages, tours, souvenirs; and related services such as banking, insurance and safety & security. The intangible elements include: rest and relaxation, culture, escape, adventure, new and different experiences.

Many sovereignties, along with their respective countries and states, depend heavily upon travel expenditures by foreigners as a source of taxation and income for the enterprises that sell (export) services to these travellers. Consequently the development of tourism is often a strategy employed either by a Non-governmental organization (NGO) or a governmental agency to promote a particular region for the purpose of increasing commerce through exporting goods and services to non-locals.

Sometimes “Tourism” and “Travel” are used interchangeably. In this context “travel” has a similar definition to “tourism”, but implies a more purposeful journey.

The term “tourism” is sometimes used pejoratively, implying a shallow interest in the societies and natural wonders that the tourist visits.

Prerequisite Factors

“Travel”, as an economic activity, occurs when the essential parameters come together to make it happen. In this case there are three such parameters:

1. Disposable income, i.e. money to spend on non-essentials.
2. Time in which to do so.
3. Infrastructure in the form of accommodation facilities and means of transport.

Individually, sufficient health is also a condition, and of course the inclination to travel. Furthermore, in some countries there are legal restrictions on travelling, especially abroad.

History

Wealthy people have always travelled to distant parts of the world to see great buildings or other works of art; to learn new languages; or to taste new cuisine. As long ago as the time of the Roman Republic places such as Baiae were popular coastal resorts for the rich.

The terms “tourist” and “tourism” were first used as official terms in 1937 by the League of Nations. Tourism was defined as people travelling abroad for periods of over 24 hours.

The Grand Tour

The word “tour” gained acceptance in the 18th century, when the Grand Tour of Europe became part of the upbringing of the educated and wealthy British nobleman or cultured gentleman. Grand tours were taken in particular by young people to “complete” their education. They travelled all over Europe, but notably to places of cultural and aesthetic interest, such as Rome, Tuscany, Ustka and the Alps.

The British aristocracy were particularly keen on the Grand Tour, using the occasion to gather art treasures from Europe to add to their collections. The volume of art treasures being moved to Britain in this way was unequalled anywhere else in Europe, and explains the richness of many private and public collections in Britain today. Yet tourism in those days, aimed essentially at the very top of the social ladder and at the well educated, was fundamentally a cultural activity. These first tourists, though undertaking their Grand Tour, were more travellers than tourists.

Most major British artists of the eighteenth century did the “Grand Tour”, as did their great European contemporaries such as Claude Lorrain. Classical architecture, literature and art have always drawn visitors to Rome, Naples, Florence.

The Romantic Movement (inspired throughout Europe by the English poets William Blake and Lord Byron, among others), extended this to Gothic countryside, the Alps, fast flowing rivers, mountain gorges, etc.

TEXT WORK

- 1. Pronounce correctly and transcribe. Consult the dictionary if necessary.**

Purpose, recreation, eighty, comprehensive, intangible, insurance, security, culture, adventure, sovereignties, expenditures, foreigners, enterprises, source, consequently, either, particular, commerce, through, interchangeably, implies, journey, pejoratively, wonder, prerequisite, occur, essential, disposable, infrastructure, facilities, sufficient, course, furthermore, especially, abroad, language, cuisine, resort, league, acceptance, Europe, wealthy, cultured, gentleman, particular, aesthetic, aristocracy, treasure, unequalled, anywhere, essentially, social, architecture, literature, inspired, throughout, gorge, the Alps.

2. Answer the questions.

1. What is tourism?
2. Who is a tourist?
3. What is a more comprehensive definition of tourism?
4. What are the tangible elements of tourism?
5. What are the intangible elements of tourism?
6. Why do some countries depend heavily upon tourism?
7. Why are governments and non-government organizations interested in tourism?
8. What are meanings of tourism and travel in other contexts?
9. What are the prerequisite factors for tourism as an economic activity?
10. What are the individual prerequisite factors for travelling?
11. Why did wealthy people travel long time ago?
12. Why do people travel now?
13. What is the Grand Tour?
14. When did it gain acceptance?
15. Who took the Grand Tour?
16. Why did young noblemen take the Grand Tour?
17. Why were British aristocracy particularly keen on the Grand Tour?
18. Why are private and public collections of art so rich in Britain?
19. Who was the tourism aim at those days?
20. Who did the Grand Tour in the 18th century?
21. Why did Rome, Naples and Florence draw many visitors?
22. What did Romantic Movement do to the Grand Tour?
23. Who inspired the Romantic Movement?

3. Give Russian equivalents to the following words and word combinations. Find and translate sentences with them in the text.

Act of travel, World Tourism Organization, more comprehensive definition, tangible and intangible components, air, rail, road, water, space, hospitality services, accommodation, related services, intangible elements, rest and relaxation, escape, many sovereignties, respective countries and states, depend heavily upon travel expenditures, consequently, governmental agency, to promote a particular region, interchangeably, purposeful journey, pejoratively, implying a shallow interest in, prerequisite factors, disposable income, infrastructure, accommodation facilities, inclination to travel, great buildings, the time of the Roman Republic, League of Nations, people travelling abroad, the Grand Tour, gained

acceptance, Grand Tour of Europe, upbringing of the educated and wealthy British nobleman, particularly keen on, gather art treasures, the very top of the social ladder, cultural activity, great European contemporaries, drawn visitors to, mountain gorges.

4. Give English equivalents to the following words and word combinations.

С целью отдохнуть; по крайней мере; сфера обслуживания; материальные и нематериальные компоненты; система транспорта; напитки; туры; сувениры; банковское дело; страхование; безопасность; приключение; новый и отличающийся от предыдущих опыт; сильно зависит от расходов на путешествия; источник налоговых поступлений; доход для предприятий; продавать услуги; развитие туризма; неправительственные организации; с целью увеличения коммерческой активности; посредством экспортирования товаров; подобное определение; общества; чудеса природы; экономическая активность; существенные параметры; средства транспорта; достаточное здоровье; состояние; более того; юридические ограничения; особенно за границу; богатые люди; отдаленные части мира; произведения искусства; попробовать новую кухню; очень давно; популярный курорт на побережье; официальный термин; люди, путешествующие за границу; культурный джентльмен; особенно; чтобы завершить свое образование; особенно в места культурного и эстетического интереса; британская аристократия; добавить в свою коллекцию; объем художественных сокровищ; частные и общественные коллекции; хорошо образованные; предпринимать путешествие; основные британские художники; классическая архитектура, литература и искусство; вдохновлять; расширилось до готической сельской местности; быстрые реки.

5. Make word combinations, translate them and find them in the text.

act	kilometers
purpose	countries
eighty	of recreation
comprehensive	sovereignties
service	systems
intangible	components
tangible	elements
transport	industry
hospitality	experiences

different
many
respective
depend

definition
services
heavily
of travel

* * *

travel
source
sell
development
non-governmental
governmental
particular
increasing
similar
purposeful
shallow
natural
economic
essential

services
activity
of taxation
of tourism
expenditures
organization
wonders
interest
agency
parameters
journey
region
commerce
definition

* * *

disposable
accommodation
means
sufficient
inclination
legal
wealthy
distant
great
to taste
coastal
official
word
gained

parts
acceptance
people
income
buildings
restrictions
new cuisine
facilities
resorts
to travel
terms
of transport
tour
health

* * *

wealthy
cultured
aesthetic
British

British artists
gorges
activity
British nobleman

art
public
social
cultural
major
european
classical
drawn
throughout
mountain

ladder
contemporaries
collections
gentleman
architecture
Europe
treasures
interest
visitors
aristocracy

6. Match the synonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

tourism
rest
country
gather
noblemen
aim
extend
rich
comprise
organization
occur
wish
furthermore

wealthy
aristocracy
relaxation
moreover
inclination
travel
collect
include
purpose
happen
expand
agency
state

7. Match the antonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

major
private
health
increase
import
slightly
shallow
similar
close
fast

disease
minor
slow
distant
different
export
public
heavily
decrease
deep

8. Form antonyms using negative prefixes *un-*, *in-*, *il-*, *im-*, *ir-*, *dis-*, *mis-*, *non-*. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Government, locals, equaled, essentials, legal, official.

9. Give full forms to these abbreviations:

WTO, UN, NGO, US, GB, UK.

10. Retell the text.

11. Match the word with its definition

SPECIAL FORMS OF TOURISM

For the past few decades many forms of tourism, also known as niche tourism, have been becoming more popular, particularly:

Adventure tourism — is a grassroots effort to support independent bookstores by promoting them as a travel destination.

Agritourism — sustainable tourism which has minimal impact on the environment, such as safaris (Kenya) and Rainforests (Belize), or national parks.

Armchair tourism or virtual tourism — includes urban tourism, visiting historical or interesting cities, such as London, Paris, Prague, Rome, Cairo, Beijing, Kyoto, and experiencing their cultural heritages. May also consist of specialized cultural experiences, such as art museum tourism where one visits many art museums during the tour, or opera tourism where one sees many operas or concerts during the tour.

Bookstore Tourism — travelling to such places as Atlantic City, Las Vegas, Macau or Monte Carlo for the purpose of gambling at the casinos there.

Cultural tourism — farm based tourism, helping to support the local agricultural economy.

Disaster tourism — involves travelling to an education institution, a wooded retreat or some other destination in order to take personal-interest classes, including cooking classes with a famous chef or crafts classes.

Ecotourism — not travelling physically, but exploring the world through internet, books, TV, etc.

Educational tourism — travelling to a disaster scene not primarily for helping, but because one finds it interesting to see. It can be a problem if it hinders rescue, relief and repair work.

Gambling tourism — tourism involving travel in rugged regions, or adventurous sports such as mountaineering and hiking (tramping).

12. Choose the right word from the list below. Mind forms of the words. Translate the article.

GRAND TOUR

In the 18th century, the Grand Tour was a kind of _____ for wealthy British noblemen. It was a period of European _____ which could last from a few months to 8 years. During the tour, young men learned about the politics, _____, art and antiquities of neighboring countries. They spent their time sight-seeing, studying, and _____.

Italy with its heritage of _____ Roman monuments became one of the most popular places to visit. At the same time, art students from all parts of Europe also came to Italy to _____ from ancient models. Sometimes, the trip south was as liberating sexually as it was aesthetically, as several erotic drawings show.

France was the height of style and _____, so young men went there to throw off their coarse behavior and put on the _____ that set them apart as the aristocracy of Britain. Under the _____ eye of his tutor and cared for by his valet, the young man set off. The first _____ in the tour was to cross the English Channel to Calais, France. For many young men, this was a test in itself since seasickness was often the _____ of turbulent crossing. In Paris, all outward _____ of the backward Briton were erased as he was fitted for a totally French wardrobe. Dressed like a Frenchman, he was now ready to _____ to French society. After his introduction in Paris, the tourist went on to Dijon, Lyon, and finally Marseille.

During the 19th century, most educated young men took the _____. Later, it became also fashionable for young women. A trip to Italy with a _____ aunt as chaperon was part of the upper-class lady's education.

Education, sophistication, spinster, watchful, ancient, polish, shopping, travel, result, culture, grand tour, trace, to learn, to introduce, step.

13. Fill in the blanks with prepositions, adverbs, articles where necessary.

BRITISH CITIES AIMING FOR 'CAPITAL OF CULTURE'

Six UK cities have been short-listed ... the most coveted prize ... Europe: the title European Capital ... Culture 2008. Though that year seems a long way off (the first European capital will be ... Ireland ... 2005 and the final UK nomination ... 2008 announced ... the British Prime Minister this May) the finalists are all surprisingly good destinations ... culture vultures right now.

The proliferation ... low-cost airlines also means they have never been more accessible: making them ideal ... short breaks or as touring bases ... longer stays.

The transformation that has taken place ... the cities — Birmingham, Bristol, Cardiff, Liverpool, Oxford and Newcastle-Gateshead — has been remarkable. All, ... the possible exception ... Oxford, were traditionally thought ... as centres ... industry and commerce rather than art and culture (the same was said ... Glasgow, Scotland, honoured as City ... Culture ... 1990). Things have changed. Each has become a showcase ... culture, creativity and regeneration.

Industrial relics have been transformed ... temples ... art. New and arresting architecture is complementing the old. Fashionable waterfronts have become places to linger. Youthful energy and vitality is everywhere.

Though there can only be one Capital ... Culture ... 2008 there are no losers ... this contest. The runners-up will be titled Centres ... Culture, ensuring they are popular ... visitors ... a long time to come.

... Hilary Macaskill

NOTE: ... this article was written the winning city has been announced: Liverpool

14. Agree or disagree with the following statements. Give your reasons.

For agreement use:

I agree.

I fully agree.

I am with you here.

I suppose it is.

I expect it should be.

For disagreement use:

I don't agree.

I don't think so.

I disagree...

Nothing of the kind.

Not in the least.

1. The purpose of tourism is only recreation.

2. Tangible elements of tourism are more important than intangible.
3. Tourism and travel can be used interchangeably.
4. Tourism and travel are the same things.
5. Tourism is an economic activity.
6. There are three prerequisite factors for tourism.
7. The most important prerequisite factor is time.
8. History of tourism began in 1937 when the League of Nations used tourism as an official term.
9. The Grand Tour is a travel around Europe by young British gentlemen with the purpose to complete their education.
10. Britain has very rich art public and private collections due to the popularity of the Grand Tour.

15. Discuss:

1. The Grand Tour was very useful for the young noblemen.
2. The importance of tourism is very high.
3. Development of tourism should be the government strategy.
4. Tourism usually aims at the very top of social ladder.
5. The Romantic Movement of the 18th century was very useful for the tourism development.
6. The purpose of tourism today is to visit places of cultural and aesthetic interest.
7. Infrastructure is important for the tourism development.
8. There are many prerequisite factors for tourism.
9. Tourism is more a cultural activity than an economic activity.
10. Sightseeing is the most popular type of tourism.

16. Speak about... types of tourism developed in Russia and in your region.

17. Explain why education tourism and culture tourism are different types of tourism.

18. Role play.

Student A	Student B
<i>You think that tourism is a cultural activity. Prove your point. Discuss your point of view with your friend.</i>	<i>You think that tourism is an economic activity. Prove your point. Discuss your point of view with your friend.</i>

Swap roles.

19. Translate into English.

ТУРБИЗНЕС В АМЕРИКЕ

В течение последнего десятилетия американский туризм испытывал серьезные проблемы. По словам Роджера Доу, председателя Американской ассоциации туристической индустрии (ТИА), уровень спада по сравнению с 1992 годом временами достигал 36 %. Одной из причин этого г-н Доу считает недостаточный бюджет туристического маркетинга — \$6 млн (для сравнения — \$80 млн в Канаде и \$93 млн в Австралии). Особенно сильно на приток иностранных туристов повлияли трагические события 2001 года. Однако руководство туротрасли полно оптимизма и надеется вскоре поднять американский туризм на качественно новый уровень.

В настоящее время американская статистика свидетельствует о медленном, но постоянном росте всех показателей национальной туристической индустрии. Основной поток иностранных туристов в настоящее время составляют туристы из Великобритании и Японии. Разумеется, американцы заинтересованы и в освоении новых рынков, при этом особо рассматриваются Россия, Китай, Индия и Польша — страны с высокими показателями развития выездного туризма. Об интересе к России свидетельствует и увеличение контактов с российскими турфирмами.

Однако для России, как и для многих других стран, основным препятствием для поездок в США по-прежнему является визовая проблема плюс еще грядущие изменения в требованиях к загранпаспортам. Пока нельзя сказать, что намечается легкое решение проблем. «Благорасположенность, но одновременно и бдительность», — так кратко можно сформулировать официальную позицию властей в этом вопросе.

20. Write an essay on the topic "History of Tourism Business in Russia".

TEXT 2

Vocabulary

health — здоровье

leisure — свободное время, досуг

the rest of — оставшаяся часть чего-то

health-giving mineral waters — лечебные минеральные воды

disease — болезнь

gout — подагра

liver disorder — болезнь печени

bronchitis — бронхит

invention — изобретение

initially — первоначально

machinery — оборудование

owner — владелец

trader — торговец

to comprise — включать в себя

origin — происхождение

to reflect — отражать

esplanade — эспланада

seafront — берег моря

promenade des anglais — английская набережная

well-established — признанный, прочный, надежный

palace — дворец

customer — покупатель, клиент, заказчик

previously — ранее

to cater — организовывать

to invent — изобретать

to appear — появляться

to stay indoors — находиться внутри, в доме

cuckoo clocks — часы с кукушкой

to reach — достигать

to bear witness — свидетельствовать

to codify — кодифицировать

championship — чемпионат

to host — проводить

amusement — развлечение

improvement — улучшение

benefit — выгода

development — развитие

within — внутри, в пределах

urban — городской

package tour — турпакет

temperance — умеренность

campaigner — борец

immediately — сразу же, тотчас же, немедленно

growing — растущий

time off — свободное время

to afford — позволить себе
luxury — роскошь
boarding house — пансион, пансионат
however — однако
statutory — установленное законом
right — право
aside — реплика в сторону
obligation — обязательство
staff — личный состав, персонал, штат сотрудников
travel facilities — удобства для путешествия
possible — возможный
conurbation — агломерация
coast — побережье
to follow — следовать за кем-то
widely — широко
acknowledge — подтверждать
to popularize — делать популярным
domestic — домашний, внутренний
to reserve — беречь, запасать, бронировать
curious — любопытный
minority — меньшинство
to emerge — появляться
to wane — убывать, ослабевать
popularity — популярность
to accustom — привыкать
towards — по направлению к...
to revive — возвращать к жизни
phenomenon — явление
manual — ручной
speed — скорость
to cross — пересекать
the English Channel — Ла-Манш
accessible — доступный

Read and translate the text.

TYPES OF TOURISM

Health Tourism & Leisure Travel

It was not until the 19th century that cultural tourism developed into leisure and health tourism. Some English travellers, after visiting the warm lands of the South of Europe, decided to stay there either for the

cold season or for the rest of their lives. Others began to visit places with health-giving mineral waters, in order to relieve a whole variety of diseases from gout to liver disorders and bronchitis.

Leisure travel was a British invention due to sociological factors. Britain was the first European country to industrialize, and the industrial society was the first society to offer time for leisure to a growing number of people. Initially, this did not apply to the working masses, but rather to the owners of the machinery of production, the economic oligarchy, the factory owners, and the traders. These comprised the new middle class.

The British origin of this new industry is reflected in many place names. At Nice, one of the first and most well established holiday resorts on the French Riviera, the long esplanade along the seafront is known to this day as the Promenade des Anglais; in many other historic resorts in continental Europe, old well-established palace hotels have names like the Hotel Bristol, the Hotel Carlton or the Hotel Majestic — reflecting the dominance of English customers to whom these resorts previously catered to.

Winter Tourism

Even winter sports were largely invented by the British leisured classes initially at the Swiss village of Zermatt (Valais) and St Moritz in 1864.

Until the first tourists appeared, the Swiss thought of the long snowy winter as being a time when the best thing to do was to stay indoors and make cuckoo clocks or other small mechanical items.

The first packaged winter sports holidays or vacations followed in 1903, to Adelboden, also in Switzerland.

Organized sport was well established in Britain before it reached other countries. The vocabulary of sport bears witness to this: rugby, football, and boxing all originated in Britain, and even tennis, originally a French sport, was formalized and codified by the British, who hosted the first national championship in the nineteenth century, at Wimbledon. Winter sports were a natural answer for a leisured class looking for amusement during the coldest season.

Mass Travel

Mass travel could not really begin to develop until two things occurred.

a) Improvements in technology allowed the transport of large numbers of people in a short space of time to places of leisure interest, and

b) Greater numbers of people began to enjoy the benefits of leisure time. A major development was the invention of the railways, which brought many of Britain's seaside towns within easy distance of Britain's urban centres.

The father of modern mass tourism was Thomas Cook who, on 5 July 1841, organized the first package tour in history, by chartering a train to take a group of temperance campaigners from Leicester to a rally in Loughborough, some twenty miles away. Cook immediately saw the potential for business development in the sector, and became the world's first tour operator.

He was soon followed by others, with the result that the tourist industry developed rapidly in early Victorian Britain. Initially it was supported by the growing middle classes, who had time off from their work, and who could afford the luxury of travel and possibly even staying for periods of time in boarding houses.

However, the Bank Holiday Act 1871 introduced a statutory right for workers to take holidays, even if they were not paid at the time. (As an aside, in the UK there is still no obligation to pay staff who do not work on public holidays.)

The combination of short holiday periods, travel facilities and distances meant that the first holiday resorts to develop in Britain were towns on the seaside, situated as close as possible to the growing industrial conurbations.

For those in the industrial north, there were Blackpool in Lancashire, and Scarborough in Yorkshire. For those in the Midlands, there were Weston-super-Mare in Somerset and Skegness in Lincolnshire, for those in London there were Southend-on-Sea, Broadstairs, Brighton, Eastbourne, and a whole collection of other places.

In travelling to the coast, the population was following in the steps of Royalty. King George III is widely acknowledged as popularising the seaside holiday, due to his regular visits to Weymouth when in poor health.

For a century, domestic tourism was the norm, with foreign travel being reserved, as before, for the rich or the culturally curious. A minority of resorts, such as Bath, Harrogate and Matlock, emerged inland. After World War II holiday villages such as Butlins and Pontins emerged, but their popularity waned with the rise of package tours and the increasing comforts to which visitors became accustomed at home. Towards the end of the 20th century the market was revived by the upmarket inland resorts of Dutch company Centre Parcs.

Other phenomena that helped develop the travel industry were paid holidays:

- 1.5 million manual workers in Britain had paid holidays by 1925;
- 11 million by 1939 (30 % of the population in families with paid holidays).

International Mass Tourism

Increasing speed on railways meant that the tourist industry could develop internationally. By 1901, the number of people crossing the English Channel from England to France or Belgium had passed 0.5 million per year.

However it was with cheap air travel in combination with the package tour that international mass tourism developed after 1963. For the worker living in greater London, Brindisi today is almost as accessible as Brighton was 100 years ago.

TEXT WORK

1. Pronounce correctly and transcribe. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Health, leisure, disease, disorders, bronchitis, initially, machinery, owners, comprised, seafront, previously, accessible, manual, phenomena, revive, towards, accustom, emerge, curious, reserve, acknowledged, coast, conurbations, cultural, either, variety, whole, gout, sociological, industrial, oligarchy, seafront, previously, appeared, cuckoo, mechanical, rugby, amusement, occur, urban, package, campaigner, luxury, boarding, statutory, obligation, foreign, Belgium, cheap.

2. Compare and mind the difference:

BrE	AmE
traveller	traveller
centre	center
to popularise	to popularize

3. Answer the questions.

1. When did cultural tourism develop into leisure and health tourism?
2. What did some English travellers decide to do after visiting the warm land of the South of Europe?
3. Why did people begin visiting places with mineral waters?
4. Why was the leisure travel a British invention?

5. Who did leisure travel apply to first? Why?
6. In which way the British origin of the travel industry is reflected?
7. When and where was winter tourism invented?
8. Who invented winter tourism?
9. What were the Swiss used to do in winter?
10. When was the first winter packaged tour established?
11. What other kinds of sport were established in Britain?
12. Why couldn't mass travel develop earlier?
13. Who is the father of modern mass tourism? Why?
14. When did the tourist industry develop rapidly? Why?
15. What was introduced in the Bank Holiday Act of 1871?
16. How did this Act influence the development of tourism industry?
17. What were the first resorts development on Britain and why?
18. Whose steps did population follow travelling to the coast? Why?
19. What was the norm on tourism for a century?
20. Who travelled abroad at that time? Why?
21. What happened after the World War II in the tourism industry?
22. What happened towards the end of the 20th century?
23. How did paid holidays helped develop the travel industry?
24. Why did mass tourism develop internationally?
25. Why did international mass tourism develop rapidly after 1963?

4. Give Russian equivalents to the following words and word combinations. Find and translate sentences with them in the text.

Leisure travel, it was not until, for the rest of their lives, health-giving mineral waters, in order to relieve a whole variety of diseases, liver disorders and bronchitis, the first European country to industrialize, the first society to offer time for leisure, did not apply to the working masses, owners of the machinery of production, economic oligarchy, long esplanade along the seafront, Swiss village, the best thing to do, to stay indoors, the first packaged winter sports holidays, vocabulary of sport bears, formalized and codified by the British, a natural answer, mass travel, to enjoy the benefits of leisure time, a major development, within easy distance, the first package tour in history, by chartering a train, a group of temperance campaigners, tourist industry, time off, a statutory right for workers, work on public holidays, travel facilities, as close as possible, the growing industrial conurbations, holiday resorts, in travelling to the coast, widely acknowledged, domestic tourism, with the rise of package tours, market was revived, upmarket inland resorts, manual workers, cheap air travel, in combination with the package tour.

5. Give English equivalents to the following words and word combinations.

Туризм с целью улучшения здоровья; культурный туризм; развился в досуговый туризм; английские путешественники; теплые районы южной Европы; оставаться там на холодное время года; британское изобретение; благодаря социологическим факторам; индустриальное общество; растущее число людей; первоначально; владельцы заводов; торговцы; состоит из нового среднего класса; британское происхождение; отражается во многих названиях мест; один из первых курортов; исторический курорт; континентальная Европа; дворцы-гостиницы; отражают доминирование английских клиентов; зимний туризм; изобретен британцами; пока не появились первые туристы; долгая снежная зима; производить (делать) часы с кукушкой; организованные виды спорта; достиг других стран; свидетельством этому служит...; первоначально французский вид спорта; проводить первый национальный чемпионат; в поисках развлечения; в самое холодное время года; начать развивать; улучшения в технологии; короткое время; изобретение железной дороги; британские города-курорты; городские центры; отец современного массового туризма; тотчас же увидеть потенциал для развития бизнеса в этом секторе; первый в мире туроператор; за ним вскоре последовали другие; развивался быстро; могут себе позволить роскошь путешествий; поехать в отпуск; в качестве отступления; не обязаны платить сотрудникам; промышленный север; целая коллекция других мест; идя по стопам королевской знати; популяризация морских курортов; благодаря его регулярным визитам; путешествия за рубеж; культурно любопытные; меньшинство; появляться в глубине континента; популярность спадает; увеличивающийся комфорт; к которому путешественники привыкают дома; к концу 20 века; оплачиваемый отпуск; увеличивающаяся скорость железнодорожных перевозок; пересекать Ла-Манш; международный массовый туризм; доступный; сто лет назад.

6. Make word combinations, translate them and find them in the text.

health	number
English	season
warm	society
cold	lands
visit	masses

mineral
variety
liver
British
sociological
European
industrial
growing
working
economic
factory
middle

class
country
factors
places
oligarchy
travellers
invention
waters
owners
tourism
disorders
of diseases

* * *

British
well established
long esplanade
continental
palace
reflecting
English
winter
leisured
Swiss
tourists
snowy
stay
cuckoo
mechanical
reached
codified by

Europe
items
clocks
along the seafront
origin
indoors
hotels
winter
sport
other countries
appeared
the dominance
village
customers
classes
the British
holiday resorts

* * *

national
natural
looking
coldest
begin
improvements
large
short

benefits
championship
towns
interest
answer
space
development
tour

leisure
enjoy the
seaside
major
leisure
within
urban
package
chartering

a train
numbers
for amusement
time
easy distance
in technology
Season
Centers
to develop

* * *

temperance
potential
tour
tourist
developed
middle
luxury
boarding
statutory
take
travel
holiday
industrial
a whole
other
following
widely

right
houses
holidays
of travel
facilities
classes
resorts
rapidly
conurbations
acknowledged
collection
industry
campaigners
places
in the steps
for business
operator

* * *

the seaside
regular
poor
domestic
foreign
culturally
minority
emerged
holiday
package
increasing

workers
resorts
holiday
speed
at home
visits
comforts
health
tours
tourism
villages

accustomed	travel
inland	travel
manual	curious
increasing	inland
air	of resorts

7. Match the synonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

entertainment	before
initially	rapidly
rate	diversity
leisure	client
seaside town	speed
variety	amusement
continental	soccer
customer	time off
previously	inland
football	personnel
by train	coastal city
fast	by rail
staff	originally

8. Match the antonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

village	city
similar	unpaid
rural	old
increase	international
domestic	expensive
inland	different
cheap	disappear
recent	manual
winter	urban
appear	majority
indoors	summer
mechanical	outdoors
minority	coast
paid	decrease

9. Give plural forms to these words:

Phenomenon, criterion, datum, million.

10. Retell the text.

11. Match the name of the form of tourism with its definition. Translate them.

SPECIAL FORMS OF TOURISM

- Heritage tourism** — travelling alone or with groups to participate in hobby interests, to meet others with similar interests, *or* to experience something pertinent to the hobby, e.g. garden tours *or* square dance cruises.
- Health tourism** — spending your time participating in some sport activities such as skiing, golf and scuba diving *or* travelling to watch a sport competition *or* vacationing at the winter home of one's favorite baseball team, and seeing them play every-day.
- Hobby tourism** — wealthy individuals always on vacation, some of them, for tax purposes, to avoid being resident in any country.
- Inclusive tourism** — travelling only to few countries in the region, using one of the countries as the transit point. The country of transit point is usually a country with good transport infrastructure. e.g. Singapore is the base for tourism for South East Asia due to its strategic location and good transport infrastructure.
- Medical tourism** — usually to escape from cities or relieve stress, perhaps for some 'fun in the sun', etc., often to "health spas".
- Perpetual tourism** — tourism marketed to those with functional limits or disabilities. Referred to as "Tourism for All" in some regions. Destinations often employ Universal Design and Universal Destination Development principles.
- Regional tourism** — visiting historical or industrial sites, such as old canals, railways, battlegrounds, etc.

Sport tourism — travelling to get medical treatment either that is illegal in one's own country, e.g. abortion, euthanasia, *or* for advanced care that is not available in one's own country *or* in the case that there are long waiting lists in one's own country *or* for use of free or cheap health care organizations.

12. Choose the right word from the list below. Mind the forms of the words. Translate the article.

WHEN IN PARIS

In the great _____ tradition of the *flâneur*, or thoughtful boulevard-stroller, Paris is a wonderful _____ for aimless wandering. Relaxed quarters such as the vibrant Marais, elegant St-Germain and romantic Montmartre are _____ for street-browsing, shopping and café-sitting, and the city's lack of open _____ is redeemed by beautiful formal gardens, by the _____ and pavements that run beside the River Seine, and by endless _____ or unexpected havens. And everywhere you go, historic landmark buildings and contemporary _____ wonders remind you of the city's pride and grandeur.

There are over 150 art _____ and museums in the city and an uncounted number of _____, brasseries and restaurants lining every street and boulevard. The variety of style and decor is hard to beat, _____ from ultra-modern fashion temples to traditional, mirrored palaces, and from _____ *bistros* where the emphasis is all on the cooking to bustling Vietnamese diners. After dark, the city's theatres and concert halls _____ inventive and world-leading productions of theatre and dance, while many classical concerts _____ in fine architectural settings, particularly chapels and churches. Above all, Paris is a real _____ capital, and the city's vibrant cultural mix puts it at the forefront of the world _____ scene.

To range, architectural, cinema, pathway, local, café, city, tiny, music, to take place, gallery, hidden, ideal, space, to host.

13. Fill in the blanks with prepositions where necessary. Translate the abstract.

OUTSIDE BRITAIN

Similar processes ... mass travel occurred ... other countries, though ... a slower rate, given that nineteenth century Britain was far ahead ... any other nation ... the world ... the process ... industrialisation.

... the USA, the first great seaside resort, ... the European style, was Atlantic City, New Jersey.

... Continental Europe, early resorts included Ostend (... the people ... Brussels), and Boulogne-sur-Mer (Pas-de-Calais) and Deauville (Calvados) (... Parisians).

14. Agree or disagree with the following statements. Give your reasons.

For agreement use:

That's an idea.

Sounds good.

Sounds like a good idea.

Yes, I agree with you.

Right you are.

For disagreement use:

That's not a good idea.

I don't think so.

I disagree...

Of course not.

Not for me.

1. Leisure travel was a British invention.
2. Many of resort places in Europe have English names.
3. Winter sports were invented in Switzerland by the Swiss.
4. Tennis is originally a British sport.
5. Mass travel couldn't develop until two things occurred.
6. The father of modern tourism is Thomas Cook.
7. Workers received a statutory right to take holidays in the 18th century.
8. British workers have paid holidays.
9. The first holiday resorts to develop in Britain were on the seaside.
10. Royalty enjoyed travelling to the coast.
11. Package tours increased the popularity of tourism.
12. Inland resorts were very popular after the World War II.

15. Discuss.

1. Cultural tourism developed into health and leisure not until the 19th century.
2. Initially tourism was applied only to rich people.
3. Tourism still applies only the rich people.

4. Winter sports as well as winter tourism were invented by British.
5. British employers have no obligation to pay workers who don't work on public holidays. It should be changed.
6. Travelling to the coast is still the most popular type of holidays.
7. Industrialization gave development to the tourism industry.

16. Explain why:

- Health tourism and medical tourism are not the same.
- Mass tourism did not develop until transport technology developed and people began enjoying their leisure time.
- Mass tourism developed greatly after the World War II.
- International mass tourism developed greatly after 1963.

17. Speak about...types of tourism developed in ... (choose any city or country).

DIALOGUE 1

Vocabulary

to rent — арендовать, сдавать в наем, снимать квартиру

rent — аренда, арендная плата

flat (BrE) — квартира

apartment (AmE) — квартира

advertisement ad is short for "advertisement" — объявление

living room (AmE) = sitting room (BrE) — гостиная

ancestors — предки

granny short for "grandmother" — бабушка

by the way — кстати

major — основная специальность в американских колледжах

to major in — специализироваться в ...

underground (BrE) = subway (AmE) — метро

tenant — арендатор, квартиросъемщик

utilities — коммунальные услуги, коммунальные платежи

superintendent — комендант

Compare and mind the difference:

1. In AmE the word "flat" means "пробитая покрышка автомобиля или велосипеда", so if you are in New York, the phrase

"I've got a flat" means "у меня колесо пробито", while in London it means "у меня есть квартира".

2. In America you use the word "subway", in Britain you use "underground", but in London the underground is called "the Tube", and in Washington D.C. the subway system is called "the Metro".
3. The word "house" means "дом, частный дом", the word "building" means "дом, многоэтажный, многоквартирный дом".

Read, translate, memorize and dramatize the dialogue.

RENTING A FLAT

Paul Blake and his friends are travelling around Europe. They are in London now and they want to rent a flat for a week.

Rod: 367594. Rod Nelson speaking.

Paul: Oh, hello. My name's Paul Blake. I'm ringing about the flat.

Rod: You're the first.

Paul: Could you tell me something about the flat?

Rod: Well, there is quite a big sitting room and a kitchen.

Paul: What about bedrooms?

Rod: There are two bedrooms — one big and one small, but it's quite nice.

Paul: What about the rent? How much is it?

Rod: 30 pounds a week. Are you a tourist?

Paul: Yes, I am from Canada. My friends and I are travelling around Europe. There are three of us. And we plan to stay here in London for a week.

Rod: Is it your first visit to Britain?

Paul: Yes, it is. I've been dreaming of going to the country of my ancestors for a long time. My Granny came from Manchester.

Rod: Really? That's interesting. By the way, what do you do?

Paul: I'm studying at the Polytechnic Naval academy. My majors are Engineering and Math. And my friends are majoring in Chemistry. What about you? What do you do?

Rod: I work at Western Aeronautics. I'm an electrical engineer. Why don't you come round and see the flat?

Paul: May we come and see it this afternoon? At about four?

Rod: Yes, do. Four would be fine for me.

Paul: What's the address?

Rod: 57 Bath Road.

Paul: Oh, I know Bath Road. There's a Tube station over there.

Rod: Right. Then, see you later this afternoon! Bye!

Paul: Cheers!

DIALOGUE 2

Read, memorize and dramatize the conversation.

Jim Cook, a tourist from Belgium, wants to rent an apartment in New York. He reads ads in the newspaper and calls for the information about the apartments available. Now he is calling the building's superintendent.

APARTMENT FOR RENT

Superintendent: Hello!

Jim Cook: Hi. I'm calling about the apartment. I read the advertisement in the "Daily News".

Superintendent: Yes. We have an apartment for rent.

Jim Cook: Is that a one-bedroom apartment?

Superintendent: That's right. There is one bedroom, a kitchen and a living room.

Jim Cook: Aha. What's the rent for that?

Superintendent: It's 425 dollars a month. And the tenants have to pay their own utilities: heat and electricity. It's about 35—40 dollars a month.

Jim Cook: Do you have any washers and dryers in the building?

Superintendent: Well, yes. There is a laundry room. It has three washers and dryers.

Jim Cook: Good. Where I used to live it was quite noisy. Is this one a quiet building?

Superintendent: Oh, yes. It is a small street, and all tenants are decent people.

Jim Cook: Oh, that's good. What floor is the apartment on?

Superintendent: It is on the second floor, but there is no elevator. Look! Why don't you just come down and see it for yourself?

Jim Cook: What's the address?

Superintendent: 44 Turner Road. North side of Highland Boulevard.

Jim Cook: Can I see you around 5:30 then?

Superintendent: Sure. What's your name?

Jim Cook: Jim Cook. What's yours?

Superintendent: Mary Benevento.

Jim Cook: All right, Ms. Benevento. I see you later. Bye!

Superintendent: Bye!

18. Role play.

Student A	Student B
<p>1. You are in London and you want to rent accommodation for a week. Call the number you have found in the local newspaper. Ask for all necessary information about renting this particular accommodation.</p>	<p>1. You are a flat-owner in London and you want to rent your flat. Receive the call from a person who has found your ad in the local newspaper. Describe your flat for rent. Answer all the person's questions.</p>
<p>2. You have come to live New York and you want to rent accommodation for at least six months. Call the number you have found in the local newspaper. Ask for all necessary information about renting this particular accommodation.</p>	<p>2. You are a superintendent of a building. There are several apartments for rent in this building. Describe the apartments to the people who call you.</p>

Swap roles.

19. Translate into English.

ТУРИЗМ В ИЗРАИЛЕ

Как подтверждает статистика, Израиль является одним из самых притягательных туристических направлений. С учетом меняющейся политической обстановки и предпринимаемых маркетинговых мер турбизнес страны продолжает развиваться, ищет новые формы и направления работы. Прежде всего, это перераспределение турпотока в сторону внутреннего рынка. Осенью 2002 г. была разработана совместная программа активизации туристских потоков из России, ряда стран Европы и Америки. Изменилась и география турпотока. Почти половина его теперь приходится на Эйлат (Eilat) и частично на Мертвое море.

Турфирмы, специализирующиеся на израильском направлении, стали использовать гибкую ценовую политику. В частности, индивидуальные туры предлагаются по цене групповых. По при-

бытии на место туристы, в зависимости от целей поездки, формируются в группы по отдыху, экскурсионным программам и другим видам туризма. Многие турфирмы предлагают возможность совмещения туров с посещением родственников и знакомых. По данным Министерства туризма Израиля, около 70 % туристов, побывавших в стране, — это повторные посетители.

Программы российских туроператоров по Израилю отличаются разнообразием предложений. Наша компания предоставляет клиентам 20 вариантов экскурсионных туров. В том числе экономный тур «В этом году в Иерусалиме» (8 дней/7 ночей от \$234 + авиаперелет), еженедельный тур «Знакомьтесь — Израиль» (8 дней/7 ночей от \$599, включая авиаперелет).

Выделяют три вида предпочтений туристов, посещающих Израиль: на экскурсионный туризм приходится 50—60 %, лечебно-оздоровительный туризм — 25 и отдых (в основном в Эйлате) — 25 %. От 20 до 30 % предпочитают смешанные туры.

Среди основных тенденций развития туризма в Израиле наблюдаются: увеличение популярности туров по деловому туризму, экскурсионных туров «Путешествие к четырем морям» (по программе «все включено») и туров для паломников различных конфессий.

20. Write an essay on the topic "Mass Travel in Russia".

TEXT 3

Vocabulary

trend — тенденция
temporary — временный
setback — неудача, ухудшение
threat — угроза
destination — место назначения
shift — перемена
perception — восприятие
taste — вкус
excessive — чрезмерный
environment — окружающая среда
destruction — разрушение
saturation — насыщение, насыщенность
subsequent — следующий, последующий
decline — упадок

case — случай
to be a byword for — быть олицетворением, символом чего-то
unblemished — незапятнанный
belated — запоздалый
attempt — попытка
competition — конкуренция
unspoilt — неиспорченный
legacy — наследство, наследие
over-exploitation — чрезмерное использование
paradigm — парадигма
impact — влияние
island — остров
to argue — спорить
unsustainable — нежизнеспособный
receptive — восприимчивый
GDP (gross domestic product) — ВВП (валовой внутренний продукт)
skiing — катание на лыжах, лыжный спорт
break — перерыв, перемена, отдых, отпуск
tsunami — цунами
to cause — быть причиной
earthquake — землетрясение
to border — граничить
clean-up — очистка
vast — обширный
to hamper — мешать, препятствовать
severely — суровый, серьезный,
forecast — прогноз
average — средний, среднестатистический
annual — годовой, ежегодный
share — часть, доля, акция
long-haul — длительный
slightly — слегка
to take off — взлетать
quarter — четверть, квартал
although — хотя
to compare — сравнивать
improvement — улучшение
solar-powered — на солнечных батареях
dirigible — дирижабль
surface — поверхность
floating — плавающий, плавучий

pod — площадка

movable — передвижной, двигающийся

to create — создавать

temporarily — временный

to erect — воздвигать, возводить

permanent — постоянный

unacceptable — неприемлемый

Read and translate the text.

TRENDS AND RECENT DEVELOPMENTS

Recent Developments

There have been a few temporary setbacks in tourism, the latest being related to the September 11, 2001 attacks and terrorist threats to tourist destinations such as Bali and European cities. Some of the tourist destinations, including the Costa del Sol, the Balears and Cancun have lost popularity due to shifting tastes and perceptions among tourists. In this context, the excessive building and environmental destruction often associated with traditional “sun and beach” tourism may contribute to a destination’s saturation and subsequent decline. This appears to be the case with Spain’s Costa Brava, a byword for this kind of tourism in the 1960s and 1970s. With only 11 % of the Costa Brava now unblemished by low-quality development (Greenpeace Spain’s figure), the destination now faces a crisis in its tourist industry. Belated attempts to move towards “quality tourism” are difficult given competition from cheaper, unspoilt holiday destinations on the one hand and the legacy of decades of over-exploitation on the other. In many respects, Tenerife provides a paradigm of the negative impact of mass tourism. Organizations like Greenpeace and ATAN are particularly critical of development on the island, arguing that Tenerife’s current tourism industry is both economically and environmentally unsustainable.

Receptive tourism is now growing at a very rapid rate in many developing countries, where it is often the most important economic activity in local GDP.

In recent years, second holidays or vacations have become more popular as people’s disposable income increases. Typical combinations are a package to the typical mass tourist resort, with a winter skiing holiday or weekend break to a city or national park.

On December 26, 2004 a tsunami, caused by the 2004 Indian Ocean earthquake hit Asian countries bordering the Indian Ocean, and also the

Maldives. Tens of thousands of lives were lost, and many tourists died. This, together with the vast clean-up operation in place, has stopped or severely hampered tourism to the area.

Trends

The World Tourism Organization forecasts that international tourism will continue growing at the average annual rate of 4 percent. By 2020 Europe will remain the most popular destination, but its share will drop from 60 percent in 1995 to 46 percent. Long-haul will grow slightly faster than intraregional travel and by 2020 its share will increase from 18 percent in 1995 to 24 percent.

Space tourism is expected to “take off” in the first quarter of the 21st century, although compared with traditional destinations the number of tourists in orbit will remain low until technologies such as space elevator make space travel cheap.

Technological improvement is likely to make possible air-ship hotels, based either on solar-powered airplanes or large dirigibles. Underwater hotels, such as Hydropolis, slated to open in Dubai in 2006, will be built. On the surface of the ocean tourists will be welcomed by ever larger cruise ships and perhaps floating cities.

Some futurists expect that movable hotel “pods” will be created that could be temporarily erected anywhere on the planet, where building a permanent resort would be unacceptable politically, economically or environmentally.

TEXT WORK

1. Pronounce correctly and transcribe. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Threat, recent, European, perception, excessive, environmental, beach, subsequent, appear, byword, quality, crisis, paradigm, unsustainable, increase, package, skiing, caused, earthquake, severely, annual, long-haul, slightly, quarter, although, either, powered, dirigible, surface, ocean, floating, unacceptable.

2. Answer the questions.

1. What happened in tourism after September 11, 2001? Why?
2. Why did some popular tourist destinations such as Costa del Sol lose their popularity?
3. What is associated with traditional “sun and beach” tourism?

4. Why does Spain's Costa Brava face crisis in its tourist industry?
5. Why are attempts to move towards "quality tourism" difficult?
6. What is the situation on Tenerife Island now? Why?
7. How does receptive tourism develop? Why? Where mostly?
8. What vacation scheme has become popular in recent years? Why?
9. What happened in December 2004?
10. Which way did it influence Asian countries bordering the Indian Ocean?
11. What does the World tourism Organization forecast for international tourism, Europe and long-halt trips?
12. What is the forecast for space tourism?
13. What new kinds of hotels will be built? Where and when?

3. Give Russian equivalents to the following words and word combinations. Find and translate sentences with them in the text.

Trends, recent developments, a few temporary setbacks, tourist destinations, excessive building, environmental destruction, sun and beach tourism, contribute to a destination's saturation, a byword for, unblemished, low-quality development, competition from cheaper destinations, the legacy of decades of over-exploitation, provides a paradigm, particularly critical, both economically and environmentally unsustainable, receptive tourism, package to the typical mass tourist resort, weekend break, the vast clean-up operation in place, severely hampered, World Tourism Organization, the average annual rate of 4 per cent, remain the most popular destination, long-haul will grow, space tourism, compared with traditional destinations, space elevator, technological improvement, air-ship hotels, slated to open, cruise ships, on the surface of the ocean, tourists will be welcomed by, movable hotel "pods".

4. Give English equivalents to the following words and word combinations.

Относящийся к; террористические угрозы; включая; потеряла популярность; из-за перемены вкусов; среди туристов; в этом контексте; часто ассоциируется с...; последовавший упадок; случай; этот вид туризма; сталкивается с критикой; запоздалые попытки; продвигаться вперед; качественный туризм; с одной стороны; с другой стороны; во многих отношениях (аспектах); негативное влияние массового туризма; сегодняшняя индустрия туризма; с очень большой скоростью; во многих развивающихся странах; са-

мый важный сектор экономической деятельности; в местном ВВП; за последние годы; с увеличением свободного дохода людей; типичное сочетание; зимний лыжный отдых; национальный парк; землетрясение; азиатские страны; туризм в регионе; прогнозы; продолжает возрастать; его доля уменьшится/увеличится; немного быстрее; международный туризм; в первой четверти 21 века; количество туристов на орбите; сделать космический туризм дешевым; сделать возможным; самолеты на солнечных батареях; большие дирижабли; подводные гостиницы; такие как; возможно; плавающие города; временно возведенные; где угодно на планете; постоянный курорт; неприемлемо по политическим соображениям.

5. Make word combinations, translate them and find them in the text.

temporary	a crisis
terrorist	attempts
tourist	setbacks
lost	resort
shifting	towards
excessive	a paradigm
environmental	tourism
destination's	threats
subsequent	destinations
low-quality	respects
faces	development
belated	popularity
move	decline
quality	tastes
decades	saturation
many	building
provides	of over-exploitation
permanent	destruction

* * *

negative	destinations
mass	break
particularly	impact
environmentally	combinations
rapid	tourism
developing	park
in recent	income

second	critical
disposable	operation
typical	holidays
weekend	unsustainable
national	hampered
clean-up	growing
severely	annual
continue	years
unacceptable	rate
average	countries
unspoilt	politically

* * *

most	erected
slightly	ports
intraregional	cities
space	ships
first	popular
traditional	of the ocean
remain	dirigibles
space	faster
technological	airplanes
make	possible
air-ship	hotels
solar-powered	travel
large	improvement
on the surface	elevator
cruise	tourism
floating	low
hotel	quarter
temporarily	destinations

6. Match the synonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

trend	although
decline	speed
rapid	effort
impact	lift
attempt	influence
holidays	foresee
usual	quantity

hamper	tendency
forecast	damage
rate	typical
elevators	fall
though	vacations
number	fast

7. Match the antonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

temporary	rise
include	high-quality
lose	timely
low-quality	argue
belated	on the other hand
difficult	permanent
negative	gain
on our hand	intraregional
agree	slower
increase	positive
drop	easy
regional	exclude
faster	decrease

8. Form antonyms using negative prefixes *un-*, *in-*, *il-*, *im-*, *ir-*, *dis-*, *mis-*. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Spoilt, blemished, appear, sustainable, possible, acceptable.

9. Give full forms to these abbreviations:

GDP, GNP, ATAN, UNESCO, UN.

10. Make a summary of the text.

11. Choose the right word from the last below. Mind the focus of the words.

YOUTH TRAVEL MARKET IN EUROPE

Youth and student travel is an increasingly _____ sector of the travel market — especially in Europe — with young people tending to _____ more frequently and for longer periods than those who are older. Around one fifth of all tourists in the world

are _____ people aged between 15—25 years, and it is likely that this will _____ to 25 % by 2006. The youth travel market has grown rapidly in recent _____, with an increasing number of specialist travel professionals offering _____ products. Young travellers today provide an important _____ for the travel decisions of future _____. Although youth travel has been an important cornerstone of the international travel _____ for 50 years, it is only the _____ dramatic growth of the European student population that has put this market into the spotlight.

The importance of _____ tourism as a field of interest for policymakers, _____ and travel professionals was first emphasised at the 1991 World Tourism Organization (WTO) conference, and is now fully acknowledged by _____ international and European Union bodies. These include the Federation of International Youth Travel Organisations (FIYTO) — for which young _____ have always been the spearhead for new developments in tourism, the International _____ Travel Confederation (ISTC), the European Youth and Counselling Agency (ERYICA), and the European Union Federation of Youth Hostel Associations (EUFED). They all cater to the needs of a large _____ of the 140 million young people who travel internationally _____, 45 % of which travel in Europe.

Recent, each year, important, specific, different, young, youth, people, student, researchers, proportion, market, generations, decades, travel, basis, increase.

12. Fill in the blanks with prepositions where necessary. Translate the abstract.

TRAVEL & TOURISM IN IRELAND REPORT

Euromonitor's travel and tourism series ... individual country reports investigate ... the challenges the industry is facing ... the wake ... the Iraq war, fears ... terrorism and general economic downturn. ... all the reports following a standardised format, the studies can be used to compare developments ... other key markets. Analysis ... positive and negative growth trends; demand factors; the operating environment and tourism parameters help provide a comprehensive picture ... current trends ... Ireland.

Sector coverage includes travel accommodation; transportation; car rental; travel retail and tourist attractions ... addition ... invaluable profiles ... the major players.

13. Agree or disagree with the following statements. Give your reasons.

For agreement use:

I entirely agree.

I think it is so.

I'm with you here.

As far as I know it's true.

For disagreement use:

I don't really agree.

I don't think so.

I think you are mistaken here.

As far as I know that's not right.

1. Terrorist threats are harmful to the tourism industry.
2. Some tourist destinations have lost their popularity due to shifting tastes among tourists.
3. Some tourist destinations have lost their popularity due to the destination's saturation and subsequent decline.
4. Costa Brava is a very popular Spanish resort.
5. Tenerife is now facing a crisis in its tourist industry.
6. Environmental organizations pay much attention to the negative impact of tourism in some areas.
7. Second holidays became very popular among people because they have more time off now.
8. The tsunami in the Indian Ocean stopped tourism to some Asian countries.
9. The share of European tourism will drop slightly in the recent years.
10. Technological improvements will make tourism more diverse and more interesting.

14. Read the forecast for travel industry development and discuss it.

INTERNATIONAL TOURISM FORECASTS

In 2001, according to the World Tourism Organization (WTO), international tourist arrivals worldwide fell by 0.5 % in 2001, attributed in large part to an 11 % slump in the final four months of the year after the terrorist attacks on the US on 11 September. Prospects for the travel industry have been portrayed as bleak ever since, but the publication of this report comes at a time of genuine recovery across the board. However it is to be hoped that this is not another false dawn, as represented by the

result in 2002 when the 700 million arrivals mark was surpassed for the first time thanks to a 2.7 % growth worldwide. In 2002, all regions, the Americas excepted, posted year-on-year increases, but recovery was brought to a halt in 2003 when a combination of SARS, conflict in Iraq and economic depression produced a decline of 1.2 %.

The slumps in 2001 and 2003 were not simply involuntary responses to terrorism and conflict. The desire to travel is such that if this was the case, then security fears would merely divert travel flows elsewhere to unaffected destinations. The fact that an actual decline occurred serves to emphasise the role of economics, and specifically recession, in this shortfall. A 'cooling period' in growth from the major outbound markets of Germany, Japan and the US had already been detected during the first eight months of 2001. The result was that worldwide, a growth rate of 4.3 % in terms of tourist arrivals generated in the first eight months of 2000 had already retracted to 3 % in 2001. Besides economics, a number of other factors had inhibited growth in the pre-September period that year. The Israeli-Palestinian conflict deterred Western travel to the Middle East, the outbreak of foot and mouth disease did likewise for the UK, Ireland and the Netherlands and the strength of the US dollar contributed to a shortfall in international arrivals to the US.

15. Speak about...travel and tourism development in Russia.

16. Explain why:

- There was a temporary setback in tourism after the September 11, 2001 attack.
- Receptive tourism is now growing in many developing countries very fast.
- Tourism industry was severely hampered in Asia at the end of 2004.
- Europe will remain the most popular destination for tourists in the next 10—15 years.
- The number of space tourists will be low until technological improvements make it cheaper and more accessible.

17. Translate into English.

НОВЫЙ ТУРИСТИЧЕСКИЙ СЦЕНАРИЙ

Британские эксперты определили, как будет развиваться туризм в ближайшие годы. Британская консалтинговая компания ТИ (Tourism Intelligence International) подготовила специальный обзор,

посвященный ключевым тенденциям, которые будут оказывать влияние на развитие туризма в ближайшие годы. Эксперты ТИ полагают, что в скором будущем:

- **туры станут более дешевыми и короткими:**

Бизнесмены, вечно испытывающие нехватку времени, будут все чаще выбирать короткие, но более частые поездки, пользуясь при этом услугами недорогих авиакомпаний;

- **туристы будут все больше совершать ближние поездки:**

В последнее время, особенно после событий 11 сентября 2001 г., отмечается усиление требовательности к безопасности путешествий со стороны туристов. Поэтому ожидается, что все чаще они будут отдавать предпочтение путешествиям на близкие расстояния;

- **туры будут покупаться преимущественно через Интернет:**

Глобальная сеть станет основным средством, используемым туристами при планировании путешествий и бронировании;

- **туристический рынок поляризуется:**

Крупные компании станут еще крупнее, средние либо вольются в крупные или уйдут со сцены, а небольшие фирмы смогут выжить только благодаря узкой специализации;

- **на туризм в ряде стран будут наложены некоторые ограничения:**

Многие страны начнут уделять больше внимания охране окружающей среды и сохранению памятников истории и культуры, вводя экологические и иные налоги. С 2001 г. при пересечении белорусско-польской границы взимается экологический сбор, введенный президентом Республики Беларусь. Подобный налог недавно появился на Балеарских островах. Аналогичные шаги для сохранения окружающей среды планируют предпринять на Сейшелах, Маврикии, Барбадосе, в других странах;

- **появятся новые потребители турслуг:**

Заметно расширится категория индивидуальных путешественников (в основном среди людей старшего возраста), которые будут заказывать оригинальные (часто экологические) туры.

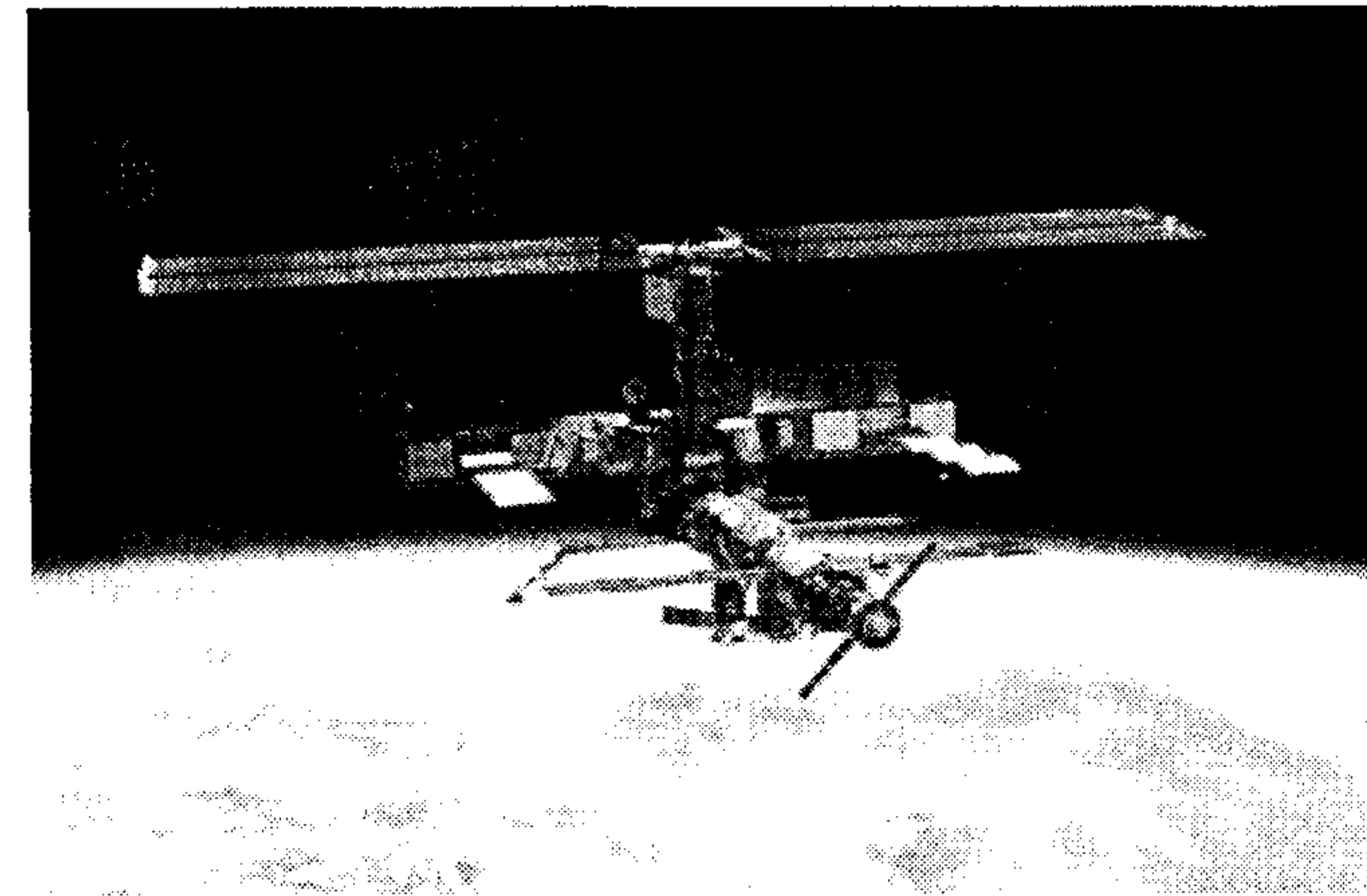
18. Write an essay on the topic "Trends and Recent Developments of the Travel Industry in Russia".

PROJECT WORK

1. Write a forecast for tourism development in Russia. Use real facts, figures and numbers. Support your forecast with statistics. Present your forecast to your group.

2. Choose a country. Make a presentation about recent tourism developments in the chosen country. Describe the existing trends in the tourism development of the country. Make your forecast about tourism development in the chosen country. Present your project to your group.

Unit 2. Space Tourism



GROUP TALK

1. Look at the picture. What is this?
2. Would you like to go to space yourself as a professional cosmonaut?
3. What do you know from the history of space exploration?
4. What do you know from the history of space travel?
5. Would you like to travel into space? Why?

TEXT 1

Vocabulary

phenomenon — явление

purpose — цель

pleasure — удовольствие

affordable — доступный

exceptionally — исключительно

wealthy — богатый

to provide — предоставлять, снабжать

instead (of) — вместо
attraction — привлекательность, притяжение, влечение
uniqueness — уникальность
experience — опыт, жизненный опыт
awesome — внушающий благоговение, ужасный, впечатляющий
thrilling — захватывающий
astronaut — космонавт
intense — интенсивный
mind-boggling — уму непостижимый
weightlessness — невесомость
advantage — преимущество
success — успех
exploration — исследование
inevitable — неизбежный
access — доступ
aspiration — надежда,
science fiction — научная фантастика
odyssey — одиссея
belief — убеждение, вера
to launch — запускать
futurologist — футуролог
to speculate — размышлять
race — гонка
to signify — обозначать, значить
to land — приземляться
importance — важность
manned — пилотируемый
subsidiary — субсидируемый
to starve — умирать с голоду, очень хотеть есть
cash — наличные деньги
crew — команда, экипаж
to broadcast — транслировать
scientific — научный
whilst — пока
to resume — продолжать, возобновлять
venture — предприятие
in charge of — несет ответственность за..., отвечает за...
to offset — уравнивать
maintenance costs — затраты на техническое обслуживание
to dismantle — разбирать, демонтировать
decision — решение

fee — плата
band — группа (музыкальная)
entrepreneur — предприниматель
to cancel — отменять
former — первый из упомянутых
latter — последний из упомянутых
concern — беспокойство, тревога
disaster — катастрофа
to put on hold — приостановить
vehicle — транспортное средство
available — доступный, имеющийся в наличии
adventure — приключение
agreement — договор, соглашение
to dedicate — посвящать
preliminary — предварительный
to view — рассматривать, оценивать
to propose — предлагать
proposition — предложение
suborbital — суборбитальный
altitude — высота
to twinkle — мерцать, мигать
vista — перспектива, вид
in the range of — в пределах
law — закон, законодательство
soil — земля, почва
license — лицензия, лицензировать
safety — безопасность
circumlunar — вокруг луны
to expect — ожидать
best case — лучший случай
according to — согласно...
scenario — сценарий
to announce — объявлять
lunar — лунный
to supersede — сменить
interstellar — межзвездный
future — будущее
handout — раздаточный материал
to toy — играть
to create — создавать
to discard — выбрасывать

fuel — топливо
fuel tank — топливный бак
inflatable — надувной
beyond — за пределами
feasibility — осуществимость
tycoon — магнат
to acquire — приобретать
design — чертеж, проект
habitat — среда обитания
to abandon — покидать, бросать, прекращать, отказываться
billionaire — миллиардер

Read and translate the text.

SPACE TOURISM

Space tourism is the recent phenomenon of space travel by individuals for the purpose of personal pleasure. At the moment, space tourism is only affordable to exceptionally wealthy individuals and corporations, with the Russian space program providing transport. Some are beginning to favor the term "personal spaceflight" instead, as in the case of the Personal Spaceflight Federation.

Among the primary attractions of space tourism are the uniqueness of the experience, the awesome and thrilling feelings of looking at Earth from space (described by astronauts as extremely intense and mind-boggling), status symbol, and various advantages of weightlessness.

Early Dreams

After initial successes in space, many people saw intensive space exploration as inevitable. In the minds of many people, such exploration was symbolised by wide public access to space, mostly in the form of space tourism. Those aspirations are best remembered in science fiction works, such as Arthur C. Clarke's "A Space Odyssey" and Larry Niven's "Known Space Stories". However, during the 1960s and 1970s, it was common belief that space hotels would be launched by 2000. Many futurologists around the middle of the 20th century speculated that the average family of the early 21st century would be able to enjoy a holiday on the Moon.

The end of the space race, however, signified by the Moon landing, decreased the importance of space exploration and led to decreased importance of manned space flight.

Subsidiary Government Flights

With the realities of the post-Glasnost economy in Russia, the space industry was especially starved for cash. It was decided to allow Toyohiro Akiyama, a reporter for Japanese television company TBS, to fly in 1990 to Mir with the eighth crew and return a week later with the seventh crew, for a price of \$28m. Akiyama gave a daily TV-broadcast from orbit and also performed scientific experiments for Russian and Japanese companies.

Whilst it is argued that John Glenn was essentially a tourist on his 1998 shuttle flight (STS-95), commercial space tourism did not resume for another ten years. MirCorp, a private venture by now in charge of the space station, began seeking potential space tourists to visit Mir in order to offset some of its maintenance costs. Dennis Tito, an American businessman and former JPL scientist, became their first candidate. When the decision to dismantle Mir was made, though, MirCorp opted to instead send Tito to the International Space Station.

On the 28th of April 2001 Tito became the second fee-paying space tourist when he visited the ISS for seven days. He was followed by South African computer millionaire Mark Shuttleworth. More individuals were interested in making the trip, such as boy band singer Lance Bass and scientist/entrepreneur Gregory Olsen. However, both trips were canceled — the former due to funding problems, the latter due to health concerns. After the Columbia disaster, space tourism on the Russian Soyuz program was temporarily put on hold, as Soyuz vehicles became the only available transport to the ISS.

The American company Space Adventures has an agreement with the Russian space agency Rosaviasmos for a dedicated commercial flight to the ISS. The price for a trip on the Soyuz rocket is \$20 million, with a preliminary launch date of 2005.

Commercial Space Flights

More affordable space tourism is viewed as a money-making proposition by several companies, including Virgin Galactic, Blue Origin, Armadillo Aerospace, XCOR Aerospace, Rocket plane, and others. Most are proposing vehicles that make suborbital flights peaking at an altitude of 100 kilometres. Passengers would experience several minutes of weightlessness, a view of a twinkle-free starfield, and a vista of the curved Earth below. Projected costs are expected to be in the range of \$100,000 per passenger, with costs dropping over time to \$20,000.

Under current US law, any company proposing to launch paying passengers from American soil on a suborbital rocket must receive a license

from the Federal Aviation Administration's Office of Commercial Space Transportation (FAA/AST). The licensing process focuses on public safety and safety of property, and the details can be found in the Code of Federal Regulations, Title 14, Chapter III.

Constellation Services International (CSI) is working on a project to send manned spacecraft on commercial circumlunar missions. Their offer would include a week-long stay at the ISS, as well as a week-long trip around the Moon. They expect to be operational by 2008, according to their best case scenario. Space Adventures Ltd. has also announced that they are working on lunar missions, also possibly in 2008 or 2009.

In the long term, orbital tourism may be superseded by planetary (and, later still, interstellar) tourism. Such possibilities have been explored in detail in many science fiction works.

More information about the future of Space Tourism can be found at Space Tourism Lecture, which is a free online handout collection. Since 2003 Dr. Robert A. Goehlich teaches the world's first and only Space Tourism class at Keio University, Yokohama, Japan.

Space Hotels

In the late 1990s, some companies toyed with the idea of creating orbital hotels using discarded Shuttle fuel tanks or inflatable structures, but not much was done beyond feasibility studies.

More recently, American motel tycoon Robert Bigelow has acquired the designs of inflatable space habitats from the TransHab program abandoned by NASA. His company, Bigelow Aerospace is currently planning to launch a first orbital hotel by early 2006. Other companies have also expressed interest in constructing "space hotels". For example, Virgin executive and billionaire Richard Branson has expressed his hope for the construction of a space hotel within his lifetime.

TEXT WORK

1. Pronounce correctly and transcribe. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Phenomenon, purpose, pleasure, exceptionally, wealthy, uniqueness, awesome, astronauts, weightlessness, advantage, success, access, aspiration, subsidiary, crew, scientific, whilst, resume, venture, charge, maintenance, decision, entrepreneur, concerns, vehicle, adventure, viewed, suborbital, altitude, twinkle, law, soil, license, circumlunar, scenario, announce, supersede interstellar, future, create, discard, fuel, beyond, feasibility, tycoon, acquire, design, billionaire.

2. Compare and mind the difference:

BrE	AmE
to symbolise	to symbolize
kilometre	kilometer
starfield	star field

3. Answer the questions.

1. What is space tourism?
2. Who can afford space travelling?
3. Who provides transport for space travels?
4. What are the attractions of space travels?
5. What did intensive space exploration symbolize for many people?
6. Where are these aspirations remembered best? Why?
7. What did people think of space hotels and holidays on the Moon in 1960s?
8. What happened with the importance of space exploration after the Moon landing?
9. What was the situation in Russian space industry in post-Glasnost economy?
10. Who was the first person to fly into space for money?
11. What did he do while in space?
12. How long was his trip?
13. Who was the next space tourist?
14. When did the commercial flights resume?
15. Why did MirCorp seek for potential space tourists?
16. Who is Dennis Tito?
17. Why wasn't he sent to the Mir station?
18. When and how long did Mr. Tito go to the ISS?
19. Who was the next tourist to visit ISS?
20. Why were two other trips cancelled?
21. Why was Russian Soyuz program put on hold for some time?
22. What is the price for a space trip?
23. What is the agreement between American Space Adventures and Russian Rosaviacosmos?
24. How is space tourism viewed by several American companies?
25. What are the suborbital flights?
26. What can a passenger experience on a suborbital flight?
27. What does current US law say to a company proposing to launch paying passengers?
28. What is the licensing process aimed at?
29. What project is CSI working on?

30. What will the trip include?
31. When will they start operating?
32. What will orbital tourism be superseded by?
33. What ideas do companies have about space hotels?
34. What did American tycoon Robert Bigelow acquire? What for?
35. What are the plans of his company and other companies about space hotels?

4. Give Russian equivalents to the following words and word combinations. Find and translate sentences with them in the text.

The recent phenomenon, providing transport, to favor the term, Personal Spaceflight Federation, among the primary attractions of space tourism, awesome and thrilling feelings, extremely intense, mind-boggling, status symbol, wide public access to space, mostly, in the form of, aspirations, science fiction, it was common belief that, launched by 2000, space race, signified by the Moon landing, decreased the importance, subsidiary government flights, with the realities of, post-Glasnost economy in Russia, crew, daily TV-broadcast from orbit, whilst, it is argued that..., commercial space tourism, to resume, in charge of the space station, in order to, to offset costs, former scientist, to dismantle Mir, to opt, the second fee-paying space tourist, computer millionaire, boy band singer, due to funding problems, due to health concerns, Columbia disaster, temporarily put on hold, Soyuz vehicles, dedicated commercial flight, the price for a trip on the Soyuz rocket, money-making proposition, at an altitude of 100 kilometres, twinkle-free starfield, vista of the curved Earth below, in the range of \$100,000 per passenger, costs dropping over time to \$20,000, to focus on, public safety, safety of property, commercial circumlunar mission, a week-long trip around the Moon, according to their best case scenario, lunar mission, in the long term, orbital tourism, handout collection, to toy with the idea, discarded Shuttle fuel tanks, inflatable structures, motel tycoon, space habitats.

5. Give English equivalents to the following words and word combinations.

Космический корабль(2), МКС, международная космическая станция; космический туризм; с целью личного удовольствия; в настоящее время; доступен только исключительно богатым людям; личный космический полет; уникальность опыта; описанный космонавтами (астронавтами); преимущества невесомости; первоначальный успех; интенсивное освоение космоса; неизбежный; в

умах многих людей; космическая одиссея; в середине двадцатого века; среднестатистическая семья; начало двадцать первого века; наслаждаться отпуском на луне; уменьшило значимость; пилотируемый космический полет; космическая промышленность; было решено разрешить; остро нуждалась в деньгах; японская телевизионная компания; неделю спустя; научные эксперименты; частное предприятие; к настоящему моменту; стоимость обслуживания; были заинтересованы; ученый/предприниматель; оба полета были отменены; первый (из упомянутых); последний (из упомянутых); единственный транспорт, имеющийся в наличии; иметь соглашение (договоренность); российское космическое агентство; предполагаемая дата запуска; более доступный; предлагаемые транспортные средства; суборбитальные полеты; на высоте сто километров; пассажиры испытывают; несколько минут невесомости; получить лицензию; процесс лицензирования; по существующему законодательству; пилотируемый космический корабль; предложение включает в себя; недельное пребывание на МКС; ему на смену придут планетарный и межзвездный туризм; изучить в деталях; бесплатная лекция по космическому туризму в Интернете; первый и единственный; космические (орбитальные) гостиницы; совсем недавно; получать проект; создать и запустить первую космическую гостиницу; генеральный директор; миллиардер; выразил надежду на...; строительство; при жизни.

6. Make word combinations, translate them and find them in the text.

space	tourism
recent	phenomenon
space	travel
personal	intense
wealthy	studies
primary	pleasure
uniqueness of	fiction
thrilling	advantages
described by	individuals
extremely	attraction
mind	tanks
status	successes
various	experience
initial	boggling
public	feeling

science	symbol
fuel	interest
feasibility	astronauts
express	access

* * *

personal	spaceflight
common	landing
space	company
average	importance
enjoy	crew
moon	experiments
decreased	structures
starve	belief
decide	later
television	venture
a week	to allow
seventh	in detail
TV-broadcast	race
scientific	flight
shuttle	a holiday
private	candidate
explored	for cash
inflatable	from orbit
first	family

* * *

Japanese	singer
Express	companies
suborbital	station
circumlunar	transport
space	vehicles
maintenance	concerns
American	millionaire
former	hope
band	flight
dismantle	costs
computer	problems
making	missions
funding	tourism
health	businessman
put on	date

Soyuz	scientist
available	hold
launch	the trip
interstellar	Mir

* * *

commercial	weightlessness
more	flight
money-making	property
several	missions
minutes of	stay
projected	companies
current	proposition
paying	scenario
American	passengers
public	process
receive	affordable
licensing	soil
safety of	spacecraft
a week-long	costs
best case	a license
lunar	tycoon
orbital	law
manned	safety
motel	trip

7. Match the synonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

space tourism	cosmonaut
executive	spacecraft
aim	private
personal	different
businessman	space travel
corporation	common
agreement	company
safety	security
abandon	entrepreneur
astronaut	director
various	build
average	habitat
vehicle	purpose
rocket	transport

hotel	contract
construct	reject

8. Match the antonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

primary	private
increase	argue
initial	commercial
public	international
subsidiary	final
agree	late
early	free-paying
wide	secondary
free	narrow
national	the latter
the former	decrease

9. Form antonyms using negative prefixes *un-*, *in-*, *il-*, *im-*, *ir-*, *dis-*, *mis-*. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Personal, advantage, manned, reality, available, agreement.

10. Make a summary of the text.

11. Choose the right word from the list below. Translate the article.

JOURNEY INTO SPACE

Pioneer 10 left Earth in 1972 and began to cross the _____ asteroid belt four months later. Some people said it would be _____ to find a way through the dust and _____ millions of rocks that lie beyond the inner planets; but despite its very _____ technology Pioneer made a _____ crossing and went on to carry out its first mission: to study Jupiter.

It continued past the _____ planets until 1983, crossing the paths of Saturn, Uranus and Pluto before finally entering the vast _____ area outside our solar system. There it will maintain course on its _____ journey, passing close to Proxima Centauri in 70,000 years' time. Eventually, _____ believe, in the safe vacuum of deep space, it may even _____ the Earth, which in five billion years will _____ as the Sun grows ever bigger and swallows up our tiny planet.

Basic, outer, unexplored, successful, unknown, impossible, endless, countless, outlive, disappear, scientists.

12. Give missing derivatives (nouns, verbs, adverbs and adjectives) from these words and translate them.

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
To fly			—
	proposal		—
		successful	
			endlessly

13. Agree or disagree with the following statements. Give your reasons.

For agreement use:

That's right.

I am with you here.

I fully agree.

Definitely.

Exactly.

For disagreement use:

I think that's wrong.

I am not with you here.

I don't really agree.

Definitely not.

On the contrary.

- Space tourism was invented many years ago.
- People have always dreamed of going into space.
- The primary attraction of space tourism is the unique experience of weightlessness.
- There are many science fiction stories about space travels.
- The average family of the early 21st century can enjoy a holiday on the Moon.
- The first space tourist was Dennis Tito.
- After the Columbia disaster the Russian Soyuz program was put on hold.
- The Soyuz rockets are the only vehicles available transport to ISS.
- The space trip price is \$20 million.
- Suborbital flights will be much cheaper than orbital ones.
- There also circumlunar trips available to space tourists now.
- Orbital tourism will soon be superseded by planetary and interstellar tourism.
- There are lectures on space tourism in many universities around the world.
- Many companies want to build space hotels.

14. Discuss.

1. Popularity of space tourism will increase.
2. Space tourism will always be affordable to only extremely wealthy people.
3. The average family of the 21st century will be able to enjoy a holiday on the Moon.
4. International Space Station needs space tourists in order to offset its maintenance costs.
5. Everybody can go on a space trip if they have enough money.
6. Licensing is a very useful procedure when it comes to space travel.
7. The importance of space exploration decreased after the Moon landing.
8. Suborbital tourism will be more popular than orbital tourism.
9. Space hotels will be very popular with families and children.
10. Space hotels will be constructed within our lifetime.

15. Speak about... one of Russian or foreign astronauts and his/her space experience.**16. Explain why space tourism is gaining popularity.****17. Divide into two groups. One group is for popularizing of space tourism. The other group is against it. Discuss pros and cons of space tourism.****18. Role play.**

Student A	Student B
<i>You are a journalist interviewing an astronaut. Ask questions about his/her space experience and work done on the space station.</i>	<i>You are an astronaut. Tell journalists about your space experience and work done on the space station.</i>
<i>You are a space tourist, you have recently returned from your trip. Tell journalists about your space experience and time spent on the space station.</i>	<i>You are a journalist interviewing a space tourist. Ask questions about his/her space experience and time spent on the space station.</i>

Swap roles.

19. Translate into English.

КОСМИЧЕСКИЙ ТУРИЗМ — НЕ ТОЛЬКО НА МКС

Подходы к развитию космического туризма ведутся с нескольких направлений. Первое и уже освоенное — полеты на международную космическую станцию на российских «Союзах». Им воспользовались американец Денис Тито и южноафриканец Марк Шатлворт. За недельный космический вояж каждый из них заплатил по \$20 млн. И «Росавиакосмос» недавно заявил, что он готов продавать «Союзы» под запуски туристов. Первым потенциальным покупателем выступает американская компания «Спейс Эдвенчерс», которая выставила на продажу две путевки в космос на следующий год. Одна из них уже продана. По заявлению «Росавиакосмоса», на трехместном «Союзе», пилотируемом профессиональным космонавтом, можно доставить на орбиту сразу двух туристов, предполетная подготовка которых займет от трех месяцев до полугода.

Второе направление — суборбитальный полет. Впервые о нем серьезно заговорили в 1996 г., когда ассоциация «Икс Прайз Фаундейшн» из Сент-Луиса (США) объявила конкурс на создание суборбитального летательного аппарата, способного поднять трех взрослых туристов на высоту 100 км, совершить на этой высоте полет и приземлиться на аэродроме. Первая команда, которая создаст и испытает в деле подобный аппарат, получит награду в \$10 млн.

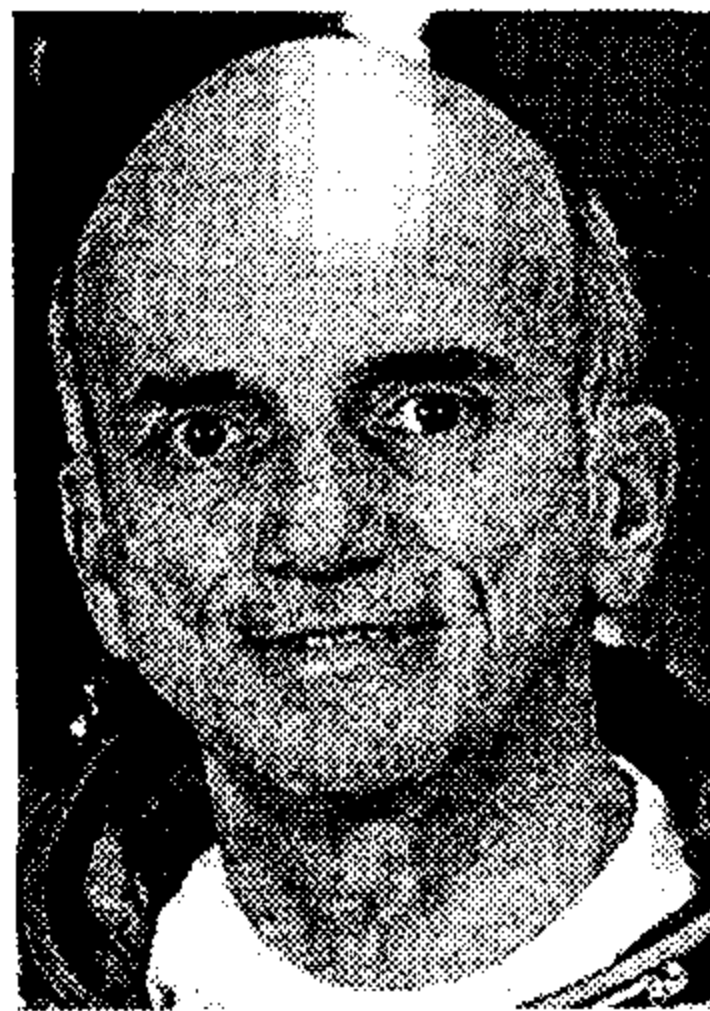
20. Write an essay on the topic "Future of Space Tourism".**TEXT 2****Vocabulary**

multimillionaire — мультимиллионер
to gain — приобретать
celebrity — знаменитость
Bachelor — бакалавр
Master — магистр
astronautics — астронавтика
aeronautics — аэронавтика (самолетостроение)
Honorary Doctorate — почетная докторская степень

scientist — ученый
 propulsion — движущая сила
 jet — реактивный самолет
 to found — основать
 indexing — индексирование
 to dock — приземлиться

Read and translate the text.

DENNIS TITO



Dennis Tito (born August 8, 1940 in Queens, New York) is a United States multimillionaire who gained celebrity status by becoming a space tourist. Tito has a Bachelor of Science in Astronautics and Aeronautics from New York University, 1962 and he later received a Master of Science in Engineering Science from Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute, Troy, New York. He received an honorary doctorate of engineering from Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute on 18 May 2002 and is a former scientist of the NASA Jet Propulsion Laboratory. In

1972 he founded Wilshire Associates, an investment management firm in Santa Monica, California which does indexing.

Tito joined Soyuz TM-32 on April 28th, 2001, spending 7 days, 22 hours, 4 minutes in orbit, and docked with the ISS. Tito paid 20 million United States dollars for his trip.

TEXT WORK

1. Pronounce correctly and transcribe. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Multimillionaire, bachelor, astronautics, aeronautics, honorary doctorate, scientist, propulsion, science, engineering.

2. Answer the questions.

1. When and where was Dennis Tito born?
2. What education did he get?
3. Where did he work before 1972?
4. What company did he found?
5. Why did he gain celebrity status?

6. When did he fly into the space?
7. How long did he spend on the ISS?
8. How much did he pay for his trip?

3. Give Russian equivalents to the following words and word combinations. Find and translate sentences with them in the text.

Celebrity status, a Bachelor of Science in Astronautics and Aeronautics, a Master of Science in Engineering Science, Jet Propulsion Laboratory, joined Soyuz TM-32.

4. Give English equivalents to the following words and word combinations.

Миллионер; космический турист; почетная докторская степень инженера; бывший ученый; инвестиционная фирма; провести время на орбите; приземлиться на МКС; для этого путешествия.

5. Make word combinations, translate them and find them in the text.

celebrity	Doctorate
space	Scientist
Bachelor	Status
Engineering	Management
honorary	Science
former	Tourist
Jet Propulsion	of Science
investment	Laboratory

6. Retell the text.

7. Agree or disagree with the following statements. Give your reasons.

For agreement use:

I quite agree with you.

That's quite right.

I think you are right.

I should think so.

For disagreement use:

I don't actually agree.

That's wrong.

I wouldn't say it is.

I'd like to say yes, but...

1. Many people want to become space tourists.
2. Dennis Tito became multimillionaire because he wanted to go to space.

3. Becoming a space tourist is becoming a celebrity.
4. Space tourists must be scientists.
5. Space tourists must have a very good health.
6. Space tourists must be young.
7. Space tourism is necessary for financing scientific experiments in space.

8. Discuss.

1. Space tourism should be developed.
2. Space tourism is a goon money-making opportunity.
3. Russia is the leading country in space exploration.
4. Space tourism will be affordable to everybody soon.
5. The only way to become a celebrity is to become a space tourist.
6. Every travel agency can organize a space travel.

9. Translate into English.

НОВЕЙШИЕ РАЗРАБОТКИ В СФЕРЕ КОСМИЧЕСКОГО ТУРИЗМА

Космический туризм не оставляет равнодушными многие компании и ученых, специализирующихся на космической и авиационной тематике. Среди них Берт Рутан — человек, построивший и пилотирующий первый в мире самолет, облетевший земной шар без посадки и дозаправки в воздухе.

Подключился к работе и российский Экспериментальный машиностроительный завод им. Мясищева. Он спроектировал авиационно-космическую систему для туризма М-55Х. В основе ее лежит модернизированный самолет-носитель М-55 «Геофизика». На нем устанавливается суборбитальный модуль С-XXI с ракетным ускорителем, при проектировании которого использован опыт создания космического челнока «Буря». Управляемый летчиком самолет-носитель набирает высоту 17—19 км и разгоняется для выполнения маневра, предшествующего разделению с суборбитальным модулем. Отстыкованный модуль включает ракетные ускорители и начинает набор высоты в 100 км. На этой высоте начинается сам суборбитальный полет, во время которого туристы в течение нескольких минут находятся в невесомости и наблюдают Землю. Полет заканчивается планирующей посадкой на аэродроме.

Еще одно направление — это подготовка российского суборбитального полета совместно с европейским аэрокосмическим концерном EADS. EADS предложил использовать один или несколь-

ко находящихся в резерве истребителей-перехватчиков МиГ-31, внеся в них соответствующие изменения. На облегченном без вооружений самолете, получившем название «МиГ-бас», установят специальную кабину с большими стеклами и креслами для 12 пассажиров и инструктора. Набрав высоту в 30 км, МиГ перейдет в пикирование, и пассажиры на одну минуту окажутся в состоянии невесомости. По словам пресс-секретаря EADS Грегора Курцеля, цена суборбитального полета для каждого туриста может составить порядка \$10 тыс. Но EADS сам не собирается заниматься организацией такого путешествия. Это прерогатива туристических компаний, которые должны определить емкость такого узкого и специфического сегмента своей потенциальной деятельности. Концерн и корпорация «МиГ» готовы взять на себя только техническую часть проекта, стоимость которого оценивается в \$50—100 млн.

10. Write an essay on the topic "My Dream".

PROJECT WORK

Advertise on space tourism. Work out itineraries and describe all options for space travels and travellers. Work out terms, conditions and requirements for the trip. Make presentation to your group.

Unit 3. Adventure Tourism



GROUP WORK

- Have you ever tried mountain climbing?
- Have you ever been in a cave?
- Have you ever explored the Pyramids of Egypt?
- Have you ever tried diving or bungee jumping?

If yes,

1. How was it? Tell about your experience.
2. Would you advise your friends to try that?

- What forms of adventure tourism do you know?
- Why do you think people like adventure tourism?

If no,

1. Would you like to try? Why?

TEXT 1

Vocabulary

adventure — приключение
niche — ниша
exploration — исследование

remote — далекий, отдаленный
to expect — ожидать
beach — пляж
inaccessible — недоступный
hostile — враждебный
to require — требовать
grit — выдержка
to involve — вовлекать
to surpass — превосходить
wonder — чудо
to discover — открывать, обнаруживать
researcher — исследователь
according to — согласно...
backcountry — деревенская местность, дикая местность
insignificant — незначительный
bat guano — летучие мыши гуано
mining claim filed — заявленное поле раскопок
to contain — содержать
pit — яма, ямка
dead-end — тупик
passage — проход, коридор
unique — уникальный
subterranean — подземный
to roar — реветь
rubble — развалины, обломки
rubble-choked floor — засоренный обломками пол
cave — пещера
obvious — очевидный, видимый
route — путь, маршрут
to gain permission — получить разрешение
to dig — копать
breakthrough — прорыв
to occur — случаться
mere — простой, всего лишь...
cavern — пещера
to explore — исследовать
depth — глубина
to track — идти (по следу), отслеживать
surface — поверхность
limestone — известняк
to flock to — стекаться, сбегаться, слетаться

rare — редкий
array — массив, масса, множество
speleothem — наросты на сводах пещер
gypsum — гипс, гипсовый
chandelier — люстра
beards — борода
soda straw — соломинка для коктейля
hydromagnesite — гидромагnezит (магние-вый минерал)
balloon — шар
pearl — жемчужина
subaqueous — субаквальный
helictite — геликтит, спирально закрученный сталактит
loop — петля
beneath — под, внизу
wilderness — дикая местность, пустыня
to extend — простира-ться, расширяться
adjacent — прилегающий
access — доступ
approved — одобренный, получивший лицензию
survey — исследование
spelunker — спелеолог
otherwise — иначе
roost — усаживаться, устраиваться на ночлег
to satisfy — удовлетворять(ся)

Read and translate the text.

THE UNKNOWN CAVE OF MYSTERY

Adventure tourism is a type of niche tourism involving exploration or travel to remote areas, where the traveller should expect the unexpected. Adventure tourism is rapidly growing in popularity as tourists seek unusual holidays, different from the typical beach vacation.

Adventure tourism typically involves travelling into remote, inaccessible and possibly hostile areas. It may include the performance of acts that require significant effort and grit and may also involve some degree of risk.

The Lechuguilla Cave in Carlsbad National Park, Colorado, surpasses the more famous Carlsbad Cavern itself in size and, perhaps, natural beauty, but few have seen the wonders of this under-unexplored cavern, or discovered the secrets and mysteries it may hide, for the cave is closed to all but scientific researchers.

According to a National Parks Service web site, Lechuguilla Cave was known until 1986 as only a small, insignificant historic site in the park's backcountry. Small amounts of bat guano were mined from the entrance passage for a year under a mining claim filed in 1914. The historic cave contained a 90-foot entrance pit which led to 400 feet of dry dead-end passages.

Or so thought geologists who have been studying the unique subterranean structure of the Guadalupe Mountains of Texas and New Mexico for decades. But in the mid 1950s cavers heard wind roaring up from the rubble-choked floor of the cave. Although there was no obvious route, different people concluded that cave passages lay below the rubble. A group of Colorado cavers gained permission from the National Park Service and began digging in 1984. The breakthrough, into large walking passages, occurred on May 26, 1986.

What was once thought of as a mere geologic anomaly in the cavern rich region quickly became one of the world's most exciting cave explorations into one of the finest known caves on the planet.

In all, over 100 miles of passages have been explored in recent years and the depth of the cave has been tracked to 1,567 feet below the surface, ranking Lechuguilla as the fifth longest cave in the world (third longest in the United States) and the deepest limestone cave in the USA.

Cavers and geologists from around the world have flocked to the site to examine rare arrays of speleothems, some of which had never been seen anywhere in the world, including a 20-foot gypsum chandelier, 20-foot gypsum hairs and beards, 15-foot soda straws, hydromagnesite balloons, cave pearls, subaqueous helictites, u-loops and j-loops.

Lechuguilla Cave lies beneath the national park wilderness area. But researchers theorize that the cave's passages may extend out of the park into adjacent Bureau of Land Management (BLM) land.

Access to the cave is limited to approved scientific researchers, survey and exploration teams, and NPS management-related trips. But serious spelunkers can check with the National Park Service to see if they or their group can be included in special trips into the cavern.

Otherwise, adventure activists will have to settle for backcountry hiking and camping in the park's wilderness area and be satisfied simply roosting on top of what may well be the world's largest cavern system.

TEXT WORK**1. Pronounce correctly and transcribe. Consult the dictionary if necessary.**

Adventure, niche, beach, inaccessible, hostile, require, wonder, researcher, mining claim filed, dead-end, unique, subterranean, roaring, rubble-choked floor, obvious, route, permission, breakthrough, occurred, mere, surface, rare, gypsum, chandelier, beards, straw, hydromagnesite, pearl, subaqueous, beneath, wilderness, adjacent, access, survey, spelunkers, otherwise.

2. Answer the questions.

1. What is adventure tourism?
2. Why is adventure tourism rapidly growing?
3. What does adventure tourism include?
4. Why is Lechuguilla Cave so interesting and notable?
5. What was known about Lechuguilla Cave before 1986?
6. What did the historic cave contain?
7. What happened in the cave in 1950s?
8. What did the researchers think of that?
9. What did the scientists began doing?
10. What happened in May 1986?
11. What was thought of the cave before 1986 and what is thought of the cave now?
12. How big and deep is the cave?
13. Why did cavers and geologists all over the world flock to the cave?
14. What is interesting about the speleothems of the cave?
15. What is the size of the cave, scientists think?
16. Who can access the cave?
17. What can adventure activists do to see the cave?

3. Give Russian equivalents to the following words and word combinations. Find and translate the sentences with them in the text.

Adventure tourism, niche tourism, inaccessible and possibly hostile areas, require significant effort and grit, the wonders of this under-unexplored cavern, scientific researchers, web site, insignificant historic site, park's backcountry, bat guano, entrance passage, mining claim filed, dry dead-end passages, wind roaring, rubble-choked floor of the cave, world's most exciting cave explorations, finest known caves, tracked to 1,567 feet,

below the surface, the deepest limestone cave, flocked to the site, gypsum chandelier, gypsum hairs and beards, soda straws, hydromagnesite balloons, pearls, subaqueous helictites, rusticles, u-loops, j-loops, approved scientific researchers, special trips into the cavern, otherwise, backcountry hiking and camping, roosting on top.

4. Give English equivalents to the following words and word combinations.

Включая исследования; путешествовать в отдаленные районы; нужно ожидать неожиданное; растущая популярность; туристы ищут; необычный отдых; отличаться от обычного отдыха на пляже; некоторая степень риска; неизвестная пещера; превосходить; по размеру; природная (естественная) красота; открыть секреты; так как пещера закрыта; согласно...; небольшое количество; состояла из входа длиной около 30 метров; привело к...; так думали геологи; уникальная подземная структура; не было видимого прохода; прорыв; регион, богатый пещерами; разные люди пришли к выводу; пещерные коридоры; получить разрешение; более ста миль проходов; глубина пещеры; пятая в мире пещера по длине; изучать редкие массивы наростов на сводах пещеры; нигде в мире; под территорией национального парка; простираются за пределы парка; доступ в пещеру; ограничен; исследовательские команды ученых; серьезные спелеологи; разместиться; самая большая в мире пещерная система.

5. Make word combinations, translate them and find them in the text.

adventure	tourism
niche	cave
remote	park
expect	trips
rapidly	occurred
unusual	holidays
typically	site
hostile	growing
breakthrough	amounts
significant	passage
unknown	the unexpected
national	site
web	areas
historic	tourism

small	involves
entrance	exploration
dead-end	areas
special	effort

* * *

typical	land
subterranean	passages
roaring	teams
obvious	arrays
cave	area
people	structure
gain	beach vacation
geologic	wind
below	spelunkers
rare	helictites
gypsum	route
subaqueous	concluded
wilderness	permission
adjacent	chandelier
exploration	anomaly
serious	the surface
backcountry	hiking
cavern	system

6. Match the synonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

remote	look for
seek	secret
rapidly	happen
amount	region
cave	beneath
mystery	place
web	quantity
occur	clear
site	internet
find	fast
obvious	cavern
below	discover
area	distant

7. Match the antonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

rapidly	friendly
hostile	shallow
closed	the same
entrance	wet
simple	slowly
different	above
dry	open
below	shortest
deep	exit
longest	difficult

8. Form antonyms using negative prefixes *un-*, *in-*, *il-*, *im-*, *ir-*, *dis-*, *mis-*. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Accessible, usual, expected, typical, significant, explored, natural, limited.

9. Convert all distances in feet and miles into meters and kilometers.

10. Make a summary of the text.

11. Choose the right word from the list below. Mind the forms of the verbs.

ADVENTURING INSIDE TOMBS, CRYPTS AND ANCIENT MYSTERIES

It's dark and damp in the deeps of the _____ Mayan temple; ancient walls of massive carved stone surround you on every side. You can feel the age in the earth-scented air; each breath takes you a step closer to the _____, buried prize below. Outside, the rainforest's rich _____ is heightened by the falling rain, the sounds of _____ birds and the eerie growl of howler _____ fills the heavy air, breaking the otherwise silence of the _____ ancient ruins.

No, it's not a _____ from the Tomb Raider movie set. And you're not dreaming your next great _____. The man in the Indiana Jones hat in front of you is not a _____ artifacts dealer, but a real tomb raider — a _____ archeologist providing a custom guided

_____ of one of the most mysterious ancient Mayan sites in the world — Palenque, or Tikal; Chichen Itza; Tulum or Copan.

Does it sound too good to be _____ — to play the role of the great archeological expeditionary? You may be surprised to find out how easy, and how _____, such a daring adventure can be if you're willing to _____ for it.

Of course, there are plenty of commercial _____ tours available. There always have been, and many are _____ opportunities to explore the ancient world. But many tours are limited to the "tourist view" of those great and mysterious Mayan sites, with access to the really _____ and dark places limited to professionals working on the dig. So contact the archeological department of the university, find out the information about the next _____ and join it!

Tour, exploration, tomb, aroma, scene, monkeys, work, adventure, professional, deep, criminal, excellent, mysterious, surrounding, ancient, affordable, exotic, true.

12. Fill in the blanks with prepositions or adverbs from the list below where necessary.

BACKPACKING TRAVEL — UK

This report looks ... developments ... the youth travel and backpacking market. Backpackers are defined ... travellers who prefer budget accommodation, enjoy meeting other travellers, have an organised and flexible schedule, experience long holidays, and emphasise informal participatory activities.

... shifting lifestyles and demographics, the phenomenon ... backpacking is constantly changing. Free independent travellers are often utilised to describe young tourists, ... addition ... active travellers who desire adventurous challenges.

Increasing enthusiasm ... global travel and international education has fuelled the growth ... youth travel ... the world. Due ... rapid changes, the backpacker industry has experienced ... favourable expansion. Factors such ... Internet usage, global mobility and travel packages will impact the participation ... tourists who backpack ... foreign travel.

The research reveals insights ... current trends and distinctions ... tourists, travellers, and backpackers ... surveyed respondents. The backpacking industry is expected to grow ... the heightened appeal ... tourism.

Of, as, to, for, at, in, into, within, with, around, during, between, among.

13. Agree or disagree with the following statements. Give your reasons.

For agreement use:

I entirely agree.

I think it is so.

I'm with you here.

As far as I know it's true.

For disagreement use:

I don't really agree.

I don't think so.

I think you are mistaken here.

As far as I know that's not right.

1. Adventure tourism involves exploration.
2. Adventure tourism is losing popularity.
3. Adventure tourism is different from the typical beach vacation.
4. Adventure tourism doesn't involve any risk.
5. The Lechuguilla Cave is an unexplored cavern.
6. The Lechuguilla Cave was known since 1986.
7. In the end of the 20th century scientists discovered more passages in the cave.
8. The cave is a mere geologic anomaly.
9. The Lechuguilla Cave is the longest cave in the world.
10. The Lechuguilla Cave draws cavers and geologists from all over the world.
11. The Lechuguilla Cave has unexplored and rare speleothems.
12. Access to the cave is unlimited.
13. Adventure activists can settle for backcountry hiking and camping near the cave.
14. The Lechuguilla Cave is a very important historic site.

14. Discuss:

1. Adventure tourism is gaining popularity.
2. Adventure tourism involves different activities.
3. Why the cave is closed to all but scientific researchers.
4. What the scientists discovered in the Lechuguilla Cave.
5. The Lechuguilla Cave is a very important historic site.
6. Why the speleothems of the cave attract scientists.
7. Why the researchers theorize that cave's passages may be longer than they know now.
8. Why the access to the cave is limited.

15. Speak about... your last visit to a cave.

16. Explain why the Lechuguilla Cave draws attention of the scientists.

17. Divide into two groups. One group is for cave adventures. The other group is against them. Discuss pros and cons of cave adventures.

18. Talk ABOUT WEATHER



Vocabulary



weather forecast — прогноз погоды

mist — легкий туман

fog — сильный туман

scattered showers — местами кратковременные дожди

bright — ясно, солнечно

coastal area — прибрежный район

cloudy — облачно

overcast — сильно облачно, небо затянуто облаками

to spread — распространяться

to reach — достигать

outlook — перспектива

to predict — предсказывать

to expect — ожидать

to dip — падать, опускаться

freezing point — точка замерзания

cold front — холодный фронт

storm — гроза, буря, снегопад, шторм (только на море)

clear sky — чистое небо

current — текущий, действующий, нынешний

centigrade — по Цельсию

fahrenheit — по Фаренгейту

to wind up — заканчивать, закругляться

DIALOGUE 1

Read, translate, memorize and dramatize the dialogue.

EUROPEAN WEATHER CHECK

Stephanie: And now it's time for the lunchtime European weather check for November 5th. First to London. What's the weather like there, Sarah?

Sarah: Well, it's cold and grey, and surprise, surprise, it's raining. 7° here, a horrible day, Stephanie.

Stephanie: Thanks, Sarah. Over to Moscow, now. Come in, Natasha.

Natasha: It's freezing here, Stephanie. Minus 2° and it's snowing.

Stephanie: Over now to Gabor in Budapest. What's the weather like there, Gabor?

Gabor: A very nice day here today, Stephanie, 10°, bright, clear sky, but a bit cold.

Stephanie: And now to Alessandra in Milan. Buon giorno, Alessandra.

Alessandra: It's very foggy here, Stephanie. I can't see anything. The temperature is only 12°.

Stephanie: Thank you, Alessandra. And now to Costas in Athens. Is it good weather in Greece today, Costas?

Costas: Yes, Stephanie, it's quite warm here. 17°, but it's very, very windy!

Stephanie: Well that's it for the European weather check, and now back to the news room.

19. What European countries were covered by this weather check? Describe the weather in each country in brief.

20. Make the European weather check for today.

DIALOGUE 2

Read, translate, memorize and dramatize the dialogue.

WEATHER FORECAST

Announcer: And now here is Francis Lake with details of the weather.

Francis: Thank you, Colin. Here is the weather report for Bristol and the south-west for tonight and all day tomorrow. The evening will bring a light mist. Later, however, there will be a few scattered showers in high places. The morning will start off dry and bright in most areas, with temperatures slightly above normal for this time of year. Coastal areas will be warmer and can expect a fair amount of sunshine in the morning. However, by midday it will become cloudy in most areas with rain spreading generally from the west. In the afternoon there will be rain in most places with winds becoming strong and reaching gale force along the coast. The

rain will be quite heavy. The evening will remain cloudy and generally overcast.

21. Discuss:

1. What season is it?
2. Is it typical weather for Bristol for this season?
3. What is the typical weather for your city and your region in this season?

22. Write the weather forecasts for your city, region and the country for tonight, all day tomorrow and the coming weekend.

23. Translate into English.

ИСКАТЕЛИ ПРИКЛЮЧЕНИЙ

В толковом словаре интересующему нас понятию дано следующее определение: «Приключение — происшествие, неожиданный случай в жизни. Приключенческий — описывающий сложные и запутанные ситуации». Являются ли данные случаи и ситуации непременной составляющей одноименных туристических туров? И «да», и «нет».

Принципиальное отличие приключенческих туров от жизненных неурядиц заключается в их запланированности, а значит, до некоторой степени, предсказуемости. В сочетании неожиданного и ожидаемого, нагрузок и сильного преодоления трудностей привлекательность подобных путешествий. Кроме того, пространства нашей страны изобилуют зонами, пригодными для приключенческого туризма.

Активные туры подразделяются на несколько видов. Наиболее популярные — пешие-горные походы (трекинг), водные (рафтинг), велосипедные, конные, плавание с аквалангом, походы под парусом, альпинизм. Среди более экзотических — полеты на воздушных шарах, спелеотуры, военные туры, археологические туры и др.

24. Write an essay on the topic "My Real Adventure".

TEXT 2

Vocabulary

- race** — гонка
to rival — соперничать
excitement — возбуждение, оживление, восторг
to offer — предлагать
thrill — трепет, восторг
counterpart — коллега
wonderland — страна чудес
snowshoes — снегоступы
endurance — выносливость
to be up to — собираться
playground — игровая площадка
agenda — повестка дня
backcountry skiing — катание на лыжах по пересеченной местности
to facilitate — способствовать
to participate — участвовать
to compete — соревноваться
transceiver location — местонахождение радиопередатчика
orienteering — ориентирование
skill — мастерство, навык, умение
to complete — завершать
seasoned racer — опытный гонщик, участник соревнований
opportunity — возможность
to require — требовать
terrain — ландшафт
to check-in — регистрироваться
key — ключ, ключевой
to determine — определять
success — успех
genre — жанр
challenge — вызов, испытание, задача
to challenge — бросать вызов, оспаривать
enthusiast — энтузиаст
mental — умственный
strategy — стратегия

navigational — навигационный
overall — всеобщий, весь
reminiscent — напоминающий
rally — ралли
autorace — автогонка
smart — умный
to solve — решать
decision — решение
failure — провал, неудача
starting gun — стартовый пистолет
competitor — участник соревнования
variety — разнообразие
rescue & safety technique — техники спасения и безопасности
avalanche — лавина
gear — одежда, снаряжение, обмундирование
co-ed — совместный, смешанный, разнополый
sex — пол
to disperse — распространять
lodging — (временное) жилье
rate — цена
condo — кондоминиум, кооперативная квартира
occupancy — размещение, пребывание

Read and translate the text.

WINTER RACE TO RIVAL SUMMER EVENT

The annual Big Blue Winter Adventure Race is set to take place at Northstar-at-Tahoe in January, offering the same great excitement and thrills as its summer season counterpart (the Big Blue Summer Adventure Race) in a winter wonderland environment.

Get out the skis and snowshoes and start building your endurance if you're up to this grand winter adventure in one of America's premier winter playgrounds.

The race agenda calls for plenty of backcountry skiing. The resort has announced plans to open large areas of new backcountry skiing to facilitate this new winter adventure sport.

The Big Blue Winter Adventure Races are multi-sport events in which teams participate and compete in Backcountry activities including; Free

Heel skiing or Randonee, Snowshoeing, Transceiver location, Orienteering and Map & Compass skills. Designed such that participating teams will complete the race with times ranging from 4 to 7 hours, the events will challenge the seasoned adventure racer and provide those new to adventure racing an opportunity to participate.

In the race, teams will be required to race through various terrain and check-in at several points throughout the course. The order in which the teams chose to complete the check-points is one of the key factors in determining their success.

The event marks the continued growth of adventure sporting, a new genre of outdoor challenge that has been gaining popularity in recent years, especially among extreme adventure sport enthusiasts.

Adventure racing is not only a physical sport, but requires mental planning and strategizing. Topographical maps, compass work and navigational skills play an important part in a team's overall success.

With many elements reminiscent of European autorace rallies, adventure racing can require teams to play smart as well as be able to solve navigational and strategy challenges while participating in the race. Making the right decision at one turn or another can make the difference between success and failure.

The events start and finish at the same location. At the sound of the starting gun competitors will race over a variety of terrain on snowshoes, backcountry skies, orienteer and navigate, and demonstrate rescue & safety technique in a simulated avalanche. The gear you choose for each stage of the course is up to you.

Participants can race in teams of two. The teams may be co-ed or same sex. The entry fee is \$180. The cash purse will be dispersed among the top placing teams.

Lodging at Northstar is available at special race rates. You can stay at one of Northstar-at-Tahoe's area condos or village rooms for as little as \$83 a night. Packages start as low as \$83 per person, per day, based on double occupancy in a studio condo. Other rates and unit types are available.

We welcome you to our annual Big Blue Winter Adventure Race!

TEXT WORK**1. Pronounce correctly and transcribe. Consult the dictionary if necessary.**

Rival, excitement, adventure, counterpart, wonderland, snowshoes, endurance, skiing, seasoned, required, throughout, key, reminiscent, autorace, decision, failure, variety, rescue, technique, avalanche, gear, dispersed, lodging, double, occupancy.

2. Answer the questions.

1. What does Big Blue Winter Adventure Race offer?
2. What do you need for this winter adventure?
3. Where will Big Blue Winter Adventure Race take place?
4. What is on the agenda of the race?
5. What events are included into the Race?
6. How much time does it take to complete the race?
7. Is the race oriented on a seasoned racer or a beginner?
8. Why is the event popular?
9. What is adventure racing?
10. What does adventure race require?
11. What skills do you need for the race?
12. What is the plan or activities at the event?
13. What kinds of teams participate in the race?
14. What is the entry fee?
15. What does the winner get?
16. What are the special offers for the participants of the race?

3. Give Russian equivalents to the following words and word combinations. Find and translate the sentences with them in the text.

Rival, great excitement and thrills, summer season counterpart, winter wonderland environment, you're up to, premier winter playgrounds, calls for, backcountry skiing, multi-sport events, including: Free Heel skiing, transceiver location, Map & Compass skills, the events will challenge, race through various terrain, to complete the check-points, new genre of outdoor, challenge, extreme adventure sport enthusiasts, requires mental planning, strategizing, reminiscent of European autorace rallies, can make the difference, at the sound of the starting gun, competitors

will race over a variety of terrain on snowshoes, is up to you, entry fee, cash purse, lodging, area condos, we welcome you to.

4. Give English equivalents to the following words and word combinations.

Ежегодный, доставайте лыжи; снегоступы; начинайте тренировать свою выносливость; зимние приключения; повестка дня гонки; много езды на лыжах по пересеченной местности; объявлять планы; способствовать развитию зимнего спорта; команды участвуют и соревнуются; ориентирование; задуман так, что...; участвующие команды; опытный участник гонки; возможность участвовать; регистрироваться в нескольких точках; на всем протяжении маршрута; последовательность; один из ключевых факторов; определяющий успех; набирать популярность; последние годы; особенно среди...; топографические карты; навигационные навыки; играть важную роль; в общем успехе команды; от команд требуется; играть умно; решать навигационные и стратегические задачи (проблемы); принимать правильные решения; между успехом и поражением; в одном и том же месте; техника безопасности и спасательные приемы; на имитированной лавине; вы выбираете; на каждом этапе маршрута; команды могут быть совместные или однополые; распределяется между победившими командами; доступен по специальной цене; с человека.

5. Make word combinations, translate them and find them in the text.

winter	events
great	plans
summer	skiing
wonderland	winter playgrounds
building your	location
premier	endurance
backcountry	skills
announced	years
multi-sport	environment
transceiver	teams
compass	season
participating	race
complete the	location

opportunity	excitement
various	success
key	popularity
continued	race
determining their	growth
outdoor	challenge
gaining	to participate
recent	terrain
same	rooms

* * *

sport	sex
physical	technique
mental	success
topographical	planning
navigational	map
play an important	gun
overall	fee
autorace	enthusiasts
play	challenges
strategy	decision
right	avalanche
complete	skills
the same	purse
starting	occupancy
safety	the check-points
simulated	part
entry	rallies
cash	race rates
special	factors
village	smart
double	sport

6. Match the synonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

race	experienced
premiere	take part
participate	price
take place	show

opportunity	fare
seasoned	best
demonstrate	share
course	be held
smart	route
disperse	rally
rate	housing
fee	chance
lodging	clever

7. Match the antonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

outdoor	failure
success	different
gain	much
physical	indoor
seasoned racer	lose
the same	single
little	mental
double	regular
special	newcomer

8. Make a summary of the text.

9. Choose the right word from the list below. Mind the forms of the words. Translate the article.

STAYING SAFE ON SAFARI

Every safari has an element of _____, that's what makes it exciting. While many of the _____ you'll encounter can be dangerous, the four that you really have to watch out for are: elephant, lion, _____ and hippo (add crocodiles to that list if you're near water). Most safari operators and guides at the _____ lodges and game reserves will stress basic precautions you _____ to take while game viewing. If you are on safari in smaller, more remote game parks or _____ wildlife outside of game parks, here are some general _____ to follow:

If you are in a _____, always stay in your car when _____ in a game park. Only get out at designated "hides" and _____ the rules that will be posted. I have personally known of _____ fatalities that have occurred because a hapless _____ has wandered out of his vehicle, camera in hand, to get a closer shot of an elephant or _____. It may sound silly, but it _____.

To follow, to need, to drive, to happen, encounter, rules, animal, lion, buffalo, danger, vehicle, tourist, several, various.

10. Give missing derivatives (nouns, verbs, adverbs and adjectives) from these words and translate them.

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
	activity		
to compete			
	challenge		—
		navigational	

11. Agree or disagree with the following statements. Give your reasons.

For agreement use:

I quite agree.

I agree with you.

I fully agree.

I think you are right.

For disagreement use:

Actually, I don't agree.

I don't think that's right.

I don't think that's true (correct).

Well, I am not sure if that's true (right, correct).

- Big Blue Winter Adventure Race is a popular event.
- The race offers a lot of great excitement.
- Big Blue Winter Adventure Race is an entertainment event.
- The race agenda includes backcountry skiing.
- Big Blue Winter Adventure Race is a one-sport event. And the sport is skiing.
- The race is individual.
- Adventure racing requires mental planning as well as physical strengths.
- The event starts at one location and finishes at another.

- The route for completing the race is the same for everybody.
- Compass work is an important part in the success.

12. Discuss:

- Big Blue Winter Adventure Race requires endurance.
- The vent is reminiscent of European autorace rallies.
- The adventure is a multi-sport event.
- Big Blue Winter Adventure Race is a new genre of outdoor challenge, a new kind of adventure travel.
- Adventure racing requires team play and a lot of other skills.
- The race requires definite physical and mental skills.

13. Speak about... winter travel and winter adventures in your city/region/country.

14. Explain how the participants can win the Big Blue Winter Adventure Race.

15. Divide into two groups. One group is for adventure tourism. The other group is against it. Discuss pros and cons of adventure tourism.

16. Translate into English.

ПОЛЕЗНЫЕ СОВЕТЫ ПО ОРГАНИЗАЦИИ ПРИКЛЮЧЕНЧЕСКИХ ТУРОВ

• Главная особенность активных туров — повышенные требования к безопасности туристов. Поэтому предлагайте клиенту маршруты, категория сложности которых соответствует его опыту, степени подготовленности, состоянию здоровья и возрасту.

• Несмотря на то, что на маршруте туристу будут помогать гиды-проводники, участие в активных турах все-таки предполагает наличие общей физической подготовки. Об этом следует уведомить клиента еще до покупки тура.

• Рекомендуя тот или иной тур, неплохо знать особенности региона, в котором он проходит: погодные условия, особенности рельефа местности, удаленность от населенных пунктов, присутствие вредных насекомых и др.

• Большинство активных туров рассчитаны на туристов, не имеющих специальной подготовки. Однако, некоторые виды —

туры для аквалангистов (diving), альпинизм, сложные походы, например, восхождение на Эльбрус, — не следует рекомендовать новичкам без опыта подобных путешествий.

- Обязательно включайте в турпакет медицинскую страховку.
- Приключенческие туры, как никакие другие, требуют от менеджеров опыта в этом виде туризма. Как минимум, личного знакомства с продаваемыми маршрутами.

17. Write an essay on the topic "Trends and Recent Developments of Adventure Tourism in ..." (choose any city or region or country).

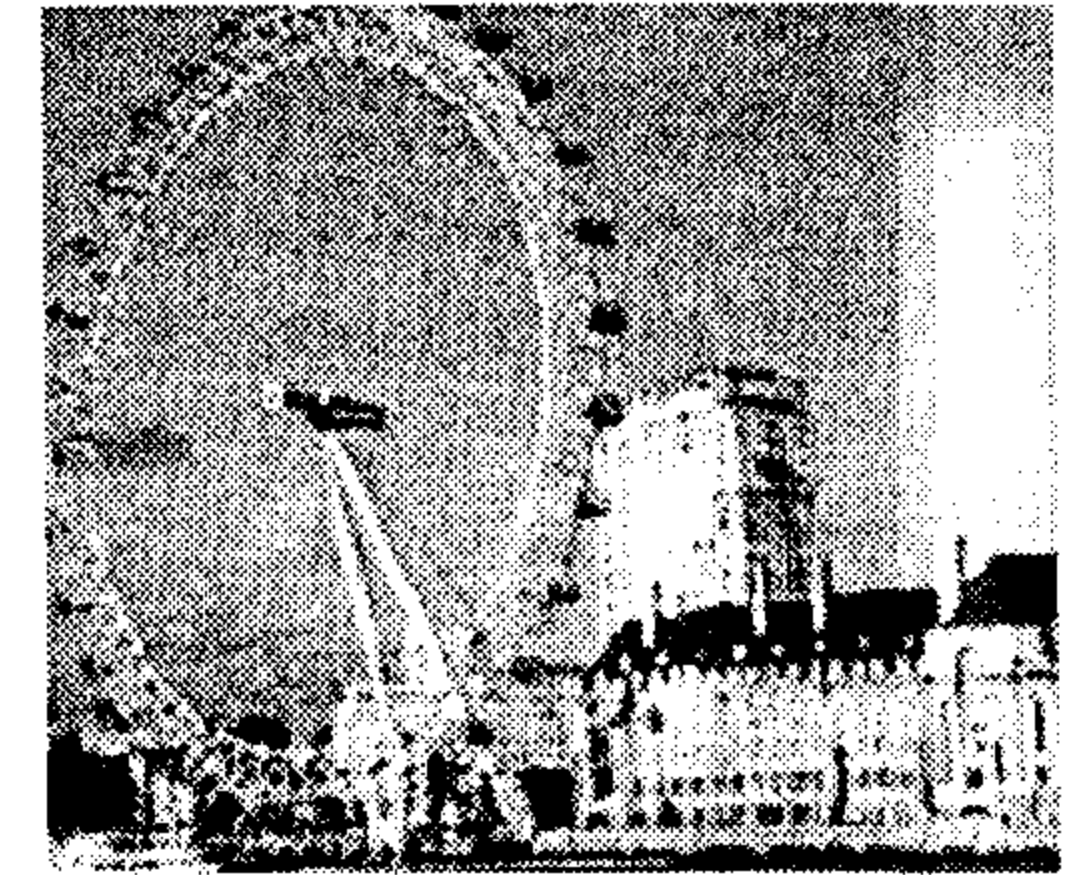
PROJECT WORK

Create an **adventure tour** in your city or region. Work out the itinerary. Describe necessary gear and equipment; health, insurance and other requirements. Advertise on your tour. Make a presentation of your tour to the customers.

Unit 4. Sightseeing

GROUP TALK

- What is on the picture?
- Where is it?
- Why was it named so?
- When was it made and why?
- Would you like to visit it?
- What other world-famous European attractions do you know?



TEXT 1

Vocabulary

- bank** — берег реки
to lean — наклоняться
leaning Tower — «падающая» башня
modest — скромный
growth — рост
vital — жизненно важный
naval — военно-морской
base — база
war — война
venture — предприятие
coast — побережье
importance — важность
empire — империя
ally — союзник
to thrive — процветать
renowned — известный
tradesman — торговец, купец
shipbuilder — кораблестроитель
to decline — приходить в упадок
to occur — случаться
internal — внутренний

among — среди
reign — правление
renaissance — возрождение
civil — гражданский
public — общественный
aqueduct — акведук
government — правительство
treaty — мирный договор, соглашение
to secured sovereignty — установить суверенитет
granduchy = duchy — герцогство
eventually — в конце концов
approximately — приблизительно
to incorporate — войти в состав, включить, содержать
to inscribe — записывать
plaque — табличка
carved — вырезанный, резной
entrance — вход
alongside — рядом с ..., вдоль
straight — прямо, прямой
constructive — строительный
discrepancy — расхождение
unsatisfactory — неудовлетворительный
depth — глубина
foundation — фундамент
to halt — останавливать(ся)
to cause — быть причиной, причинять
disruption — нарушение, социальные беспорядки
to add — добавлять
to cumulate — накапливать
delay — задержка
actually — действительно
to facilitate — ускорять
to settle — оседать
firmly — крепко, твердо
gradually — постепенно
to remain — оставаться
wonder — чудо
admission — вход, плата за вход
climb — подъем
strenuous — напряженный, утомительный
to reward — награждать

worth seeing — стоит посмотреть
marvel — чудо
square — площадь
miracle — чудо
imposing — величественный
splendid — великолепный
cathedral — собор
to contain — содержать
dome — купол
acoustics — акустика
cemetery — кладбище
ancient — древний
to link — соединять, связывать
direct — прямой

Read and translate the text.

PISA, ITALY — Home of the Famous Leaning Tower of Pisa

Pisa is situated on the banks of the river Arno, in the North-West Tuscany region of Italy — about 80 km from Florence and 10 km from the sea. Pisa is one of Italy's most popular tourist centres. This town is closely associated with the well-known Leaning Tower.

History

Pisa was never much more than a modest fishing village before the growth of the Roman Republic. With the Portus Pisanus — the Pisan port — serving as a vital naval base for the Romans during the Gallic wars, as well as during other colonizing ventures across the Spanish coast, the city grew in importance and strength as an official ally of Rome. By the time of the Empire, begun under Caesar Augustus in the 1st century A.D., the city was a thriving colonia, renowned for its skilled tradesmen and shipbuilders.

Unfortunately, the 13th century would go on to see the city's power decline dramatically; this occurred because of continued internal fighting among the Italian city-states — most particularly the damaging wars against the Guelph cities of Tuscany, led by Florence. In the 16th century A.D., however, during the reign of the Medici, the city regained some peace and prestige as it flowered in a cultural renaissance. Galileo Galilei, the great astronomer, was born in Pisa in 1564 and attended the city's university for some years. Throughout the following century, the univer-

sity grew in strength and importance, various civil offices were instituted, and many important public works were constructed, including the Aqueduct of Asciano (1601) and the Canal of Navicelli (1603.)

Medici rule over Pisa ended when the Lorraine Government, by means of the Treaty of Vienna, secured sovereignty for the city under the Granduchy of Tuscany in 1738 A.D. Pisa would eventually become officially incorporated into the Kingdom of Italy by approximately 1860.

The Leaning Tower of Pisa

The famous “leaning” tower of Pisa was begun in 1173, as inscribed on a plaque carved at the entrance of this most unusual structure. Situated in the Piazza dei Miracolo, it stands alongside the accompanying Cathedral, Baptistry and Monumental Cemetery.

The building of the tower began straight off with some constructive discrepancies, most particularly the unsatisfactory depth of the foundations, which go down just three metres into dry stony earth. Work on the tower was halted after the construction of only three floors due to these foundational problems, which were already causing the tower to lean. Throughout the tower’s history, construction continued to be halted periodically, primarily due to political disruptions and wars with the city of Florence, among others. In 1275, over a century after it was first begun, three more floors were added to the tower. Another six were built in 1284.

Although the final lean cumulated at 14 feet out of line, the long delays during the tower’s construction actually facilitated its stabilization, as it was able to settle more firmly into the ground gradually with each era of construction. And the tower remains standing today, its unusual lean making it one of the most famous of Italy’s many architectural wonders.

— Admission to the tower costs approximately 15 euros (extra for additional attractions).

— One hour train ride from Florence.

— The climb is not too strenuous and rewards the hiker with a beautiful view of the city!

(It is recommended to get to the Tower early, and visit it first before moving on to other buildings in the Piazza).

Other Attractions

Although Pisa is best known for the world famous Leaning Tower, it is not the only thing worth seeing here. Other architectural and artistic marvels of this beautiful city include:

Piazza del Duomo — the square is known as the Campo dei Miracoli — the Field of Miracles. The famous tower and the imposing cathedral are located here.

Duomo di Pisa — the city’s splendid Cathedral contains artwork by Giambolna, Dela Robbia, and other famous Italian painters.

Baptistry — a circular building with a large round Romanesque dome located near the cathedral and leaning tower, with excellent acoustics. It houses sculptured decorations and provides a fine view of the city at the top.

Campo Santo — a very large cemetery building with a collection of ancient Roman sculptures and pre-Renaissance paintings by the “Master of the Triumph of Death”.

Airport Connections

Pisa International Airport (Galileo Galilei) has domestic and international air links with several European cities including direct air links with Rome, Milan, Amsterdam, Barcelona, Brussels, London Gatwick, Madrid, Frankfurt Hahn, Munich and Paris Charles De Gaulle.

TEXT WORK

1. Pronounce correctly and transcribe. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Leaning, vital, naval, venture, empire, shipbuilder, occurred, renaissance, civil, unfortunately, fighting, however, reign, peace, prestige, renaissance, throughout, aqueduct, to secure, sovereignty, plaque, straight, constructive, earth, to cause, to halt, disruption, each, architectural, climb, wonder, admission, strenuous, reward, worth seeing, square, ancient.

2. Compare and mind the difference:

BrE	AmE
centre	center
metre	meter
colonia	colony
civilisation	civilization
colour	color

3. Answer the questions:

1. Where is Pisa situated?
2. What is Pisa associated with?

3. What was Pisa before the growth of Roman Republic?
4. What meaning had the Pisan port for Romans?
5. When and why did the city grow in strength and importance?
6. What was Pisa in the time of the Empire?
7. What happened to Pisa in the 13th century and why?
8. What was going on in the city during the reign of Medici?
9. Who is Galileo Galilei?
10. Why is Pisa associated with the name of Galileo Galilei?
11. What important things happened in Pisa throughout the 17th century?
12. When and how did Pisa become incorporated in the kingdom of Italy?
13. When was the famous Leaning Tower of Pisa begun?
14. How did you know that?
15. Where is the Leaning Tower situated?
16. Why did the tower begin to lean?
17. Why were the works on the tower halted? For how long?
18. How many floors were built in the tower?
19. How big is the final lean of the tower?
20. What helped the tower to settle firmly into the ground?
21. How much is the admission fee to the tower?
22. What will the visitor see from the top of the tower?
23. What are other attractions of the city of Pisa? What are they famous for?
24. What airport connections does the city have?

4. Give Russian equivalents to the following words and word combinations. Find and translate sentences with them in the text.

Closely associated with, Leaning Tower, the growth of the Roman Republic, a vital naval base, colonizing ventures, city grew in importance, a thriving colonia, renowned for, skilled tradesmen and shipbuilders, power decline dramatically, continued internal fighting, city regained some peace and prestige, it flowered in a cultural renaissance, attended the city's university, important public works, Medici rule over Pisa, by means of, the Treaty of Vienna, secured sovereignty for the city, officially incorporated into the Kingdom of Italy, as inscribed on a plaque carved at the entrance, the building of the tower began straight off, with some constructive discrepancies, dry stony earth, work on the tower was halted, due to political disruptions, three more floors were added to the tower, final lean, cumulated at 14 feet out of line, facilitated its stabilization, to settle more firmly into the ground, remains standing, its unusual lean,

one hour train ride, the climb is not too strenuous, architectural and artistic marvels, imposing cathedral, splendid Cathedral, a large round Romanesque dome, it houses sculptured decorations, provides a fine view of the city at the top, pre-Renaissance paintings, domestic and international air links, direct air links.

5. Give English equivalents to the following words and word combinations.

На берегах реки Арно; на расстоянии примерно 80 км от...; туристские центры; скромная рыбацкая деревушка; побережье Испании; официальный союзник Рима; в первом веке нашей эры; к сожалению; это случилось, потому что; города-государства; разрушительная война против...; однако; во времена правления Медичи; великий астроном; в течение всего следующего века; университет был усилен и укрепил свою важность; были учреждены различные гражданские институты; в конце концов стал; приблизительно; необычная постройка; находится рядом с...; особенно; недостаточная глубина фундамента; уходил вниз на глубину всего трех метров; после возведения трех этажей; благодаря...; стало причиной наклона башни; на протяжении всей истории башни; строительство; периодически; приостанавливать; в первую очередь; более века спустя; долгие задержки; в действительности; постепенно; чудо архитектуры; вход; рекомендуется; посетить сначала...; единственное, что...; стоит посмотреть; Поле Чудес; круглое здание; с отличной акустикой; большое кладбище; древние римские скульптуры; международный аэропорт Пизы; несколько европейских городов.

6. Make word combinations, translate them and find them in the text.

tourist	wars
closely	ventures
leaning	fishing village
modest	centres
roman	associated
naval	coast
Gallic	ally
colonizing	colonia
Spanish	in strength
grew	base
official	fighting

a thriving
skilled
decline
internal
most

tradesmen
dramatically
particularly
republic
tower

* * *

damaging
cultural
the great
attended
following
grew
civil
Medici
secured
officially
unusual
stands
constructive
depth
dry
final

discrepancies
renaissance
wars
alongside
structure
the city's university
astronomer
rule
incorporated
offices
in importance
century
sovereignty
lean
stony earth
of the foundations

* * *

foundational
throughout
halt
political
long
facilitate
settle
remains
unusual
architectural
admission
train
worth
strenuous

ride
seeing
problems
the history
lean
periodically
to the tower
stabilization
climb
wonders
standing
delays
disruptions
more firmly

* * *

artistic

cathedral

beautiful
the field
famous
imposing
circular
round
excellent
sculptured
fine
large
ancient Roman
pre-renaissance
international
direct

city
building
tower
cemetery
Romanesque dome
decorations
acoustics
view
of miracles
paintings
marvels
sculptures
links
airport

7. Match the synonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

well-known
bank
rich
popular
occur
firm
square
splendid
build
about
cathedral
halt
excellent
continue
wonder
imposing

approximately
solid
thriving
church
coast
famous
piazza
construct
marvel
go on
marvelous
renowned
happen
magnificent
stop
perfect

8. Match the antonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

growth
war
ally
internal
entrance

exit
against
external
up
enemy

for	final
down	peace
A.D.	international
first	begin
end	B.C.
domestic	decline

9. Form antonyms using negative prefixes *un-, in-, il-, im-, ir-, dis-, mis-, non-*. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Skilled, official, usual, fortunately, popular, particular, direct, satisfactory.

10. What is the meaning of these abbreviations:

A.D, B.C.

11. Find these numbers in the text. Comment upon the numbers. Translate the sentences with these numbers.

10, 13, 14, 15, 16, 80, 1564, 1601, 1603, 1738, 1860, 1173, 1275, 1284.

12. Retell the text.

13. Choose the right word from the last below. Mind the forms of the words.

MONTEREY STATE HISTORIC PARK

Much of Monterey's early _____ can be gleaned from the well-preserved adobe buildings of Monterey State Historic _____. The park's facilities are an integral _____ of the day-to-day business life.

This is one of this beautiful city's many _____. You can tour numerous historic period _____ that date back to the 1800s as well as early adobe buildings. Each house is fully restored to its original condition and is _____ with authentic antiques to match. There are also _____ gardens you can tour (from May through September every Tuesday at 1 p.m.). The historic homes are open for tours _____. Come experience a piece of _____ and European colonial history. Admission to the park is free; walking tours are _____

_____ on the hour starting at 11 a.m. and are USD5 (_____ only).

_____ Hours: 10 am — 5 pm daily

Sculpture, cash, part, park, open, home, regional, history, to conduct, to decorate, attraction, daily.

14. Give missing derivatives (nouns, verbs, adverbs and adjectives) from these words and translate them.

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
	growth		
	depth		
	strength		
	warmth		

15. Fill in the blanks with prepositions and adverbs where necessary.

GREECE

Greece is much more than what we are taught ... school or the predictable summer image ... glorious sunsets and sandy beaches.

... Greece you are standing ... a crossroads ... cultures, colours and civilisations, you feel the strength ... history and the warmth ... being ... the southernmost part ... Europe, you discover an evolutionary process ... thought, influence and experience.

A country that despite being rich ... history has a population that moves ... the future.

A country that although statistically small, is huge ... its diversity.

A landscape that has given us thousands ... postcard images but remains incredibly vibrant and impossible to capture.

Greece is a country ... beautiful contradictions, a constant journey ... time, ... the present ... the past and back again.

Walk ... the olive groves, ... ancient sites. Move ... clusters ... sparsely inhabited islands. Roam ... the beaches ... rocky mountains and explore breathtaking scenery.

... Greece the fusion ... images becomes more than imagery and turns ... reality.

Live your myth ... Greece!

Of, in, at, to, towards, through, from, into

16. Agree or disagree with the following statements. Give your reasons.

For agreement use:

I agree.

I fully agree.

I am with you here.

I suppose it is.

I expect it should be.

For disagreement use:

I don't agree.

I don't think so.

I disagree...

Nothing of the kind.

Not in the least.

1. Pisa is a famous city in south-west Italy.
2. Pisa was a small fishing village.
3. The Pisan port was important for the Romans during the Roman Empire.
4. Medici ruled over Pisa in the 13th century.
5. Galileo Galilei was born in Pisa.
6. The Leaning Tower of Pisa is the city's only attraction.
7. The leaning Tower was built in 1173.
8. The Leaning Tower is six stories high.
9. The main square of the city of Pisa is the Field of Miracles.
10. The splendid cathedral is located near the Leaning Tower.
11. The cathedral has excellent acoustics.
12. Pisa International Airport has domestic and international air links with several European cities.

17. Discuss:

1. The Leaning Tower of Pisa is the most famous architectural wonder in the world.
2. The Leaning Tower was built due to an architectural mistake.
3. The city of Pisa has a very long and interesting history.
4. There are many other attractions in the city of Pisa part from the Leaning Tower.
5. Sightseeing is the most interesting way of spending holidays.
6. You can easily combine sightseeing and adventure tourism.
7. Sightseeing is the tourism for everybody.
8. Europe is the most famous sightseeing destination in the world.

18. Speak about Russian sightseeing attractions.

19. Explain why sightseeing is considered to be one of the most popular types of tourism.

20. Divide into two groups. One group is for sightseeing tours. The other group is against them. Discuss pros and cons of sightseeing tours.

DIALOGUE 1

Read, translate, memorize and dramatize the dialogue.

A DISAPPOINTING HOLIDAY

Marion: Good afternoon.

Travel Agent: Good afternoon, madam.

Marion: I'm interested in the holiday in Saint Cuthbert.

Agent: Ah, yes... the Caribbean! I can recommend it highly.

Marion: Can you tell me a little more about it?

Agent: Of course, madam. It's an excellent package holiday. You'll travel on a scheduled flight. You'll be met at the airport and taken to your hotel. You won't have to pay airport taxes. They are included in the price. The hotel is very near the beach, and it's got a swimming pool and a disco. It's a very modern hotel, it was built last year. The restaurant's superb, and drinks are very cheap. Oh, and you can walk to the sea in two minutes.

Marion: Hmm... It sounds good. I'd like to make a reservation.

Agent: One moment, madam and I'll get you a booking form.

Marion paid a deposit and booked the holiday. Two months later she was in Saint Cuthbert. But she was disappointed. When she returned to England, she went to see the travel agent.

Agent: Ah! It's Mrs. Ward. Did you have a good holiday?

Marion: No, I certainly did not have a good holiday.

Agent: Oh, I'm very sorry to hear that. What was wrong?

Marion: Well, when I arrived in Saint Cuthbert, I had to spend four hours at the airport — you said that we would be met, and we weren't. You also said we would be taken to the hotel. We weren't and the taxi cost about £12. You told me that airport taxes were included. In fact I had to pay £10.

Agent: Oh, dear... you had a very bad start. But the hotel was nice, wasn't it?

Marion: No, it was not! You said it was very modern. You were quite right. They hadn't finished building it! We couldn't sleep

because the workmen were working all night on our balcony! You said it had got a swimming pool. It had... but it was empty. And the restaurant... the restaurant served fish every night.

Agent: Oh, dear...

Marion: You said that the hotel was near the beach, and that we could walk to the sea in two minutes.

Agent: Couldn't you?

Marion: Well, yes... we could... but there was an oil refinery between the hotel and the beach, and it took half an hour to walk round it.

Agent: Oh, I'm really terribly sorry. We really didn't know... I'm afraid we're unable to give you a refund, but we can give you a ten per cent discount on next year's holiday...

Marion: Next year! Next year I'm staying in England!

21. Role play.

Student A	Student B
1. <i>You are a customer. You want to go on a sightseeing tour around ... (choose any country or city). Ask your travel agent about all the details of the tour he/she can offer you.</i>	1. <i>You are a travel agent. Your client wants to go on a sightseeing tour around ... (he/she has chosen the country or city). Answer your client's questions about all the details of the tour you can offer him/her.</i>
2. <i>You are a customer. You have just returned from a sightseeing tour your travel agent offered you. You are completely satisfied with the service and the tour program, so you want to have a similar tour again, but to a different place. Describe your experience to your agent. Discuss the possibilities of future travels.</i>	2. <i>You are a travel agent. Your client has just returned from a sightseeing tour you offered him/her. He/she is completely satisfied with the service and the tour program, so he/she wants to have a similar tour again, but to a different place. Ask questions about his/her experience. Discuss the possibilities of future travels.</i>
3. <i>You are a customer. You have just returned from a sightseeing tour your travel agent offered you. You</i>	3. <i>You are a travel agent. Your client has just returned from a sightseeing tour you offered him/her.</i>

are completely dissatisfied with the service and the tour program, so you want your money back or any kind of compensation the agent can offer you. Describe your experience to your travel agent. Discuss the possibilities of monetary compensation or discounts for the future travels.

He/she is completely dissatisfied with the service and the tour program, so he/she wants to have his/her money back or any compensation you can offer him/her. Ask questions about his/her experience. Reject the money back option politely, give your reasons. Discuss the possibilities of discounts for future travels.

Swap roles.

22. Translate into English.

ЕГИПЕТСКИЕ КУРОРТЫ

Хургада — самый старый и самый популярный курорт Египта, состоящий из Старого города (Эль-Дахар, или Даун-таун) и растянувшейся на 40 км туристической зоны «Саккала». Многие отели Хургады принадлежат известным гостиничным цепочкам, при этом большинство имеет свои пляжи (часто небольшие). Среди наиболее популярных экскурсий из Хургады — поездка в Луксор, экскурсии к коралловым рифам, в Каир, джип-сафари по пустыне и погружение на подводной лодке.

Эль-Гуна — «Египетская Венеция» — находится в 22 км от Хургады. Новый курорт, отели которого построены в стиле традиционной арабской архитектуры и стоят вдоль искусственных каналов, по которым на бесплатном катере можно добраться до берега моря. Большинство отелей уровня 4—5*. На курорте также есть собственный морской аквариум, три центра подводного плавания и знаменитая открытая дискотека «Арена».

Сафага — это небольшой тихий курорт в 30—60 км от Хургады, популярный среди любителей спокойного отдыха и дайвинга. Особый микроклимат Сафаги способствует лечению ряда кожных заболеваний.

Марса Алам — развивающийся курорт в 280 км от Хургады. В настоящее время здесь открыты четыре отеля и международный аэропорт. Прекрасное место отдыха для опытных дайвингистов.

Шарм-эль-Шейх — наиболее крупный и «европеизированный» египетский курорт на Синайском полуострове с большим числом отелей класса 4—5*. Вдоль пляжной полосы, раскинувшейся по-

чти на 35 км, тянутся красивейшие коралловые рифы, что делает курорт популярным у дайвингистов. Наиболее популярная экскурсия из Шарм-эль-Шейха — к горе Моисея и монастырю Св. Екатерины.

Дахаб и Нувейба — это маленькие, спокойные и недорогие курортные городки в одном и двух часах езды от Шарм-эль-Шейха, популярные у экономных немецких туристов.

23. Write an essay on the topic "Sightseeing Attractions in My City/Region".

TEXT 2

Vocabulary

capital — столица
to sop up — впитывать
glut — переизбыток
uniquely — уникальный
amazingly — поразительно, изумительно, замечательно
ethereal — эфирный, утонченный
back door — запасной выход, потайная дверь
undiscovered — найденный неоткрытый
off the beaten track — далеко от избитых путей, маршрутов
monastic — монашеский, монастырский
hermit — отшельник
to seek (sought) — искать
solitude — одиночество, уединение
rift — трещина, просвет
pinnacle — вершина
valley — долина
Byzantine Empire — византийская империя
seam — шов, слой
peninsula — полуостров
pirate raids — набеги пиратов
persecution — преследование
encounter — встреча
to avoid — избежать
to settle — поселиться
endowment — пожертвование
community — община

monastery — монастырь
to hoist — поднимать
net — сеть
cliff — скала, утес
waste — отходы
paved — вымощенный
to wind — извиваться
spectacular — впечатляющий
vista — вид
bend — поворот
film — пленка (фотоаппарата)
suspended — подвешенный
reasonably — разумно, довольно
fit — в форме
woodcarver = carver — резчик (по дереву)
carving — резное изделие
fall — осень
remote — далекий, удаленный
downright — совершенно
freezing — очень холодно, ледяной
to taste — пробовать
heartly — здоровый (о пище), сытный
stew — тушеное мясо, соус
to embark — отправляться
guy — парень
walled city — город, окруженный стеной
country — графство
by golly — о, боже!
worth — стоит
except for — кроме
castle = chateau — замок
to perch — сидеть, усесться
hilltop — вершина холма
mystery — тайна
sparkling wine — игристое вино
trail — дорожка, тропинка, след
wallet — кошелек, бумажник
lodging — жилье
plentiful — обильный
Province — Прованс (область во Франции)
to ignore — игнорировать

rightfully — по праву, законно
Sistine Chapel — Сикстинская капелла
range — ряд, выбор, диапазон
rural — сельский
to slow down — сбавить скорость, приостановиться
leisurely — неторопливый
pace — шаг, темп
cider — сидр
to contemplate — размышлять, созерцать
pilgrimage route — маршрут пилигримов
passing through — проходящий через
to temper — смягчать
Bay of Biscay — Бискайский залив
to swelter — изнемогать от жары
in the high season — в разгар сезона
to witness — быть свидетелем
thunder storm — гроза
nope = no — нет
to drag — тащить
patio — внутренний дворик, веранда
fireworks — фейерверк
incredible — невероятный

Read and translate the text.

EUROPE OFF THE BEATEN TRACK

It's fine to visit the European capitals. They're all big enough to sop up a glut of tourists. But smaller places that are both uniquely interesting and lightly travelled are getting more difficult to find and often seem amazingly ethereal: travel is so easy today that Rick Steves' back doors stop becoming back doors the minute he mentions them.

So my favorite places aren't undiscovered—they're just a bit too far off the beaten track for the mega-tourism companies to worry about.

Meteora — Greece

Monastic history starts in Meteora in the 11th century when the first hermits sought peace and solitude in the rifts and caves in the isolated pinnacles that rise above the valley of the Pineios (Pinios) river. By the 14th century the Byzantine Empire was coming apart at the seams and the monastic communities of the Athos peninsula were always in danger of Turkish pirate raids and other persecution. After one such encounter,

three monks went searching for a rather inaccessible home to avoid it all. They eventually settled on top of a rock called *Stylos*. Endowments and people followed, and an amazing community of 24 monasteries built pinnacles on was born. Everything got hoisted up (and down) by nets, even people. And the toilets? Off the cliffs went the waste — all of it.

Today, a paved road winds between the largest monasteries. The most spectacular vistas in all of Europe are just around the bend. Bring plenty of film. Meteora means "suspended in air" and they mean it.

You can find a hotel in Kalambaka and walk to the monasteries from there if you're reasonably fit—Kalambaka is 9 kms from the monasteries. There are busses, tours, and taxis as well.

Close by: Metsovo, a small community of excellent woodcarvers is just to the northwest of Kalambaka. Much of the really fine carving you'll see in the monasteries comes from the carvers of Metsovo, but if you go to Metsovo (easy by bus) you can buy carvings made for tourists as well.

When to go: Spring or fall to avoid crowds. Yes, this is a place that's "discovered" but remote. Late fall works well, although it'll be cold in the morning, and downright freezing in Metsovo, higher up in the mountains. Still, this allows you to taste Greece's "other" cooking, the hearty and warming stews you don't get in summer.

Cathar Country — France

I was at a party just before embarking on my first European vacation in the 70's when I asked a French guy I'd just met what his favorite city in Europe was. He answered "Carcassonne," a walled city smack in the heart of Cathar country. By golly, he was right; Carcassonne is definitely worth a day or two in itself. But I've since made a recent trip back to the area and discovered many other interesting things to see in the Aude region—except for tourists—and it was the middle of the season.

What's here? Castles perched high on hilltops, the mysteries of Rennes le Chateau, great sparkling wine called Blanquette de Limoux, and great walking trails. Plus, Cathar country is easy on your wallet; the Aude is one of France's poorest areas and lodging is relatively cheap and plentiful.

What's nearby: Province isn't far, and if you're driving it's a great "next stop."

Asturias — Spain

Northern Spain is ignored by many American tourists, yet it's one of the places I'd go back again and again. Some of the attractions are rightfully famous, including the prehistoric painted cave called Altamira—

the “Sistine Chapel of Prehistoric Art”. The country around the Picos de Europa range is some of the most beautiful in Europe. Lodging options include nice historic country inns called Posadas, as well as Casa Rurales — rural houses that will allow you to slow down your vacation and see the countryside at a leisurely pace.

This is a rural area that preserves its history and way of life in a way that can be attractive to tourists looking to discover a beautiful solitude. Have a cider, some of the local blue cheese called Cabrales, and contemplate a trip to one of the regions prehistoric caves — or a walk along the pilgrimage route passing through the pretty port town of Ribadesella.

When to Go: Tempered by the cool Bay of Biscay to the north, Northern Spain doesn't sweltering in the summer, usually. Don't be afraid of going in the high season, although we did witness some incredible thunder storms in July. Did it stop us? Nope — we just dragged a chair out under the covered patio of our “casa rurale”, got out a camera and some cheese and bread, and watched nature's finest display of natural fireworks. Incredible.

TEXT WORK

1. Pronounce correctly and transcribe. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Uniquely, ethereal, undiscovered, sought, Byzantine Empire, persecution, encounter, endowment, to wind, spectacular, woodcarver, down-right, freezing, hearty, stew, embarking, European, guy, heart, right, worth, castle, chateau, wallet, lodging, Province, ignore, rightfully, leisurely, pilgrimage, route, through, patio, cider, fireworks.

2. Answer the questions.

1. Why is it fine to visit European capitals?
2. Why are small places interesting to travel to?
3. Why are such places difficult to find?
4. Where is Meteora?
5. When was the town of Meteora started? Why?
6. Who live in Meteora now?
7. What can you see in Meteora?
8. Where can you live in Meteora?
9. What is close to Meteora?
10. When is the best time to visit Meteora?
11. Where is Carcassonne?

12. What is interesting to see there?
13. What is near Carcassonne?
14. What is northern Spain famous for?
15. What are the lodging options there?
16. What food is peculiar there?
17. What is interesting to see in Asturias?
18. When is the best time to go to northern Spain?
19. What can you do there if it rains?

3. Give Russian equivalents to the following words and word combinations. Find and translate sentences with them in the text.

To sop up, lightly travelled, amazingly ethereal, back doors, a bit too far off the beaten track, mega-tourism companies, monastic history, hermits sought peace, isolated pinnacles, coming apart, monastic communities, persecution, a rather inaccessible home, eventually settled, top of a rock called *Stylos*, endowments, an amazing community, hoisted up, paved road winds, suspended in air, small community, fine carving, down-right freezing, warming stews, before embarking, a walled city smack, by golly, definitely worth a day or two, many other interesting things to see, castles perched high on hilltops, easy on your wallet, plentiful, some of the attractions, at a leisurely pace, beautiful solitude, have a cider, local blue cheese, contemplate a trip, walk along the pilgrimage route, tempered by, sweltering in the summer, in the high season, under the covered patio, nature's finest display, incredible.

4. Give English equivalents to the following words and word combinations.

Место отдыха; европейские столицы; достаточно большой; переизбыток туристов; уникально интересный; трудно найти; как только он упоминает их; мои любимые места; искать мир и уединение; в ущельях и скалах; возвышается над долиной; к 14 веку; Византийская Империя; полуостров; опасность нападения турецких пиратов; после одной такой встречи; три монаха; отправились искать; великолепный вид; за поворотом; возьмите с собой много фотопленки; если вы в достаточно спортивной форме; отличные резчики по дереву; к северу от г. Каламбака; легко добраться автобусом; чтобы избежать толп; удаленный; поздняя осень хорошо подходит; высоко в горах; первые каникулы в Европе; французский парень; в самом сердце графства Катар; он был прав; отличный для туристов; великолепное игристое вино; великолепные

прогулочные пути; самый бедный район; относительно дешевый; если вы едете на машине; следующая остановка; игнорируется американскими туристами; по праву знаменит; доисторическая пещера с наскальными рисунками; варианты размещения (проживания) включают; маленькие деревенские гостиницы; сельские дома; сохранять историю; стиль жизни; привлекательный для туристов; проходить через; Бискайский залив; свидетельствовать; невероятная гроза; достали фотоаппарат; фейерверки природы.

5. Make word combinations, translate them and find them in the text.

European	encounter
vacation	persecution
big	raids
uniquely	apart
lightly	community
amazingly	capitals
favorite	road
beaten	Empire
monastic	spots
sought	pinnacles
isolated	peace
Byzantine	vistas
coming	places
pirate	enough
other	ethereal
such	travelled
amazing	interesting
paved	history
spectacular	track

* * *

reasonably	woodcarvers
excellent	things
fine	carving
to avoid	worth
late	crowds
downright	fall
warming	city
before	fit
European	vacation

walled	embarking
definitely	cave
interesting	freezing
perched	high
sparkling	stews
walking	areas
rural	wine
painted	trails

* * *

easy on	famous
poorest	season
relatively	cheap
rightfully	your wallet
lodging	patio
country	display
rural	area
leisurely	options
beautiful	inns
prehistoric	storms
pilgrimage	houses
high	pace
thunder	fireworks
covered	solitude
finest	caves
natural	route

6. Match the synonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

spot	at last
track	cliff
search for	rural
beautiful	porch
solitude	turn
hermit	cider
eventually	monk
apple wine	isolation
patio	place
rock	route
bend	accommodation
carving	look for

fall	speed
plentiful	autumn
country	wood craft
lodging	a lot of
pace	splendid

7. Match the antonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

difficult	expensive
top	warm
community	close
except for	urban
late	low
cold	easy
rural	bottom
remote	ricketts
nigh	society
poorest	early
cheap	including

8. Make a summary of the text.

9. Choose the right word from the list below. Mind the forms of the words. Translate the story.

A COUNTRY OF CONTRAST

Getting to this _____ continent has never been easier. Many airlines offering competitive fares fly to Australia on a _____ basis and you can fly _____ to any of the many international gateways, or to take _____ of the many stopover destinations on offer including all islands across the _____.

A valid passport and a visa (Electronic Travel Authority) also needed to _____ Australia.

With a population drawn from so many _____ ethnic, religious and cultural backgrounds, Australia is a multicultural _____ — diverse, tolerant and rich in contrasts.

You can expect the highest _____ of accommodation in a range designed to suit every budget. Make your choice from _____ hotels and resorts, comfortable motels, apartments and hostels, to farms and _____ homes.

To enter, direct, private, regular, different, luxury, Pacific, land, island, standard, advantage.

10. Give missing derivatives (nouns, verbs, adverbs and adjectives) from these words and translate them.

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
			inaccessibly
	danger		
		undiscovered	—
to travel			

11. Fill in the blanks with prepositions where necessary.

THE PYRAMIDS OF GIZA AND THE SPHINX

The Pyramids ... Giza represent one ... the greatest architectural feats ... man. The last surviving ... member ... the Seven Wonders ... the World, the Great Pyramid ... Giza is one ... the world's oldest tourist attractions and the reason ... most people ... visit Egypt today. There are ... fact three main pyramids ... Giza; the Great Pyramid ... Khufu (or Cheops), the Pyramid ... Kafhre and the smaller Pyramid ... Menkaura. Each Pyramid is a tomb ... a different King ... Egypt. ... front ... the pyramids lies the Sphinx, or Abu al-Hol ... Arabic, "Father ... Terror". Carved ... a single block ... stone, this enormous cat-like sculpture has mesmerized millions ... visitors.

To, for, in, of, out, by.

12. Agree or disagree with the following statements. Give your reasons.

For agreement use:

That's an idea.

Sounds good.

Sounds like a good idea.

Yes, I agree with you.

Right you are.

For disagreement use:

That's not a good idea.

I don't think so.

I disagree...

Of course not.

Not for me.

1. It is fine to visit European capitals.
2. There are no "undiscovered" vacation spots in Europe.
3. Meteora is a big city in Greece.
4. Meteora was started by monks.

5. Today Meteora is a famous tourist destination.
6. Meteora is a small community of excellent woodcarvers.
7. Meteora is high up in the mountains.
8. Greek cuisine is different in summer and in winter.
9. Cathar country in France is definitely worth seeing.
10. Cathar country is very expensive.
11. Cathar country is in Province region.
12. Northern Spain is loved by American tourists.
13. Rural areas of northern Spain preserve its history and way of life.
14. It is very hot in northern Spain in summer.
15. It may rain hard in northern Spain in summer.

13. Discuss:

1. It is more interesting to visit smaller places than capitals.
2. There are many "undiscovered" places in every country.
3. To be attractive a place should have spectacular vistas.
4. France is the most popular European country to visit among the tourists all over the world.
5. Northern Spain is not popular among American tourists because it has mostly rural landscapes, and Americans prefer visiting big cities.

14. Speak about... your last sightseeing tour.

15. Explain why some people prefer travelling to European capitals and others like visiting small "undiscovered" places.

16. Translate into English.

НЕСКУЧНАЯ ЕВРОПА

Сегодня любой клиент может без особых усилий подобрать в турфирме практически любой экскурсионный тур в Европу, будь то знакомство с остатками античной цивилизации в Греции или экскурс в историю Шотландии. Бесспорные европейские лидеры — это Италия, Франция, Испания, страны Скандинавии, Австрия, Германия, Бенилюкс и Соединенное Королевство.

Великобритания

Стандартные программы посещения туманного Альбиона — это туры в Лондон. Они есть в арсенале всех операторов по Великобритании. Например, старейший туроператор на этом направ-

лении компания BSI предлагает набор из трех еженедельных гарантированных экскурсионных программ продолжительностью 7 или 8 дней: «Экономичный» тур с двумя экскурсиями, «Классический» — с четырьмя и «Экскурсионный» — с шестью экскурсиями. Важная особенность работы агентства — ежедневное выполнение гарантированных групповых экскурсий по Лондону. Каждый понедельник проводятся сразу две экскурсии: автобусная обзорная, а также пешеходная в Лондонский Тауэр. Во вторник туристы осматривают исторический центр города, в среду — совершают экскурсию в Британский музей. В четверг организуется посещение Национальной картинной галереи, а в пятницу — автобусная экскурсия в Виндзор или Хэмптон Корт.

Примером популярного типового маршрута может служить недельный тур «Экскурсионный Лондон». Программа включает автобусную обзорную экскурсию по городу, во время которой туристам демонстрируются Трафальгарская площадь, Уайт Холл и Даунинг Стрит, Вестминстерское Аббатство, здание Парламента, Букингемский дворец (резиденция королевы), знаменитые мосты — «Лондон Бридж», «Тауэр Бридж», Гайд Парк, Сант Джеймс Парк, замок Тауэр, крейсер «Бэлфаст», Ист-Энд и Вест-Энд, район Сити, старое здание Скотланд Ярда, а также собор Святого Павла. Помимо этого, в турпакет входят экскурсии в Национальную Галерею, Британский Музей и Вестминстерское Аббатство. По заказу представитель компании может организовать дополнительные экскурсии за пределы Лондона.

Новинки предстоящего сезона

Одной из интересных новинок летнего сезона обещает стать десятидневный тур «Англия — Шотландия — Уэльс». Туристы увидят Йорк, Эдинбург, замки Шотландии, посетят завод по производству виски, озеро Лох-Несс, а также города Карлайл (здесь находится резиденция династии Стюартов), Честер, Карнарфон (древняя столица Уэльса), Стратфорд-на-Эйвоне (родина Шекспира), Оксфорд и Лондон. В столице Великобритании туристов ждет обзорная экскурсия по городу.

17. Write an essay on the topic "Undiscovered" Places In My City/Region".

PROJECT WORK

1. Create a **sightseeing tour around Russia**. Work out the itinerary for the tour. Make the schedule. Write an advertisement of the tour to the local newspaper. Make a presentation of your tour to the customers.

2. Create a **sightseeing tour around your city**. Work out the itinerary. "Publish" a booklet with information about the most important and interesting sights. Make your booklet attractive for customers. Make a presentation of your tour to the clients.

Unit 5. Ecotourism



GROUP TALK

1. What is ecotourism do you think?
2. What do you think of ecotourism?
3. Do you think it is an important trend in tourism? Why?
4. Have you ever been on an ecological tour?

If yes,

1. Did you like it? Tell about your experience.
2. Would you advice our friends to go on an ecotour?

If no,

1. Would you like to go on an ecotour? Why?

TEXT 1

Vocabulary

essentially — по существу

connotation — значение

to define — определять

current — действующий, нынешний

responsible — ответственный

to conserve — сохранять

conservation — сохранение

environment — окружающая среда
to improve — улучшать
well-being — благосостояние
people — народ
to favor — предпочитать, оказывать предпочтение, благоприятствовать
vehicle — транспортное средство, двигатель
sustainable — стабильный
to satisfy criteria — удовлетворять критериям
justification — оправдание, основание
diversity — разнообразие
protection — защита
promotion — продвижение
to provide — снабжать
benefits — выгода, приносить пользу
community — общество, община
indigenous — коренной, местный
consent — согласие
enterprise — предприятие
increase — увеличение
impact — воздействие
affordability — доступность
lack — недостаток
waste — отходы
luxury — роскошь
marginal activity — незначительная деятельность
to intend — намереваться
means — средство
significant — значительный
revenue — доход
chunk — большое количество
concept — концепция
tool — инструмент
related to — относящийся к...
to claim — утверждать, требовать
to abuse — злоупотреблять
splendid — великолепный
detriment — ущерб
to sensitize — делать чувствительным
fragility — хрупкость
to condemn — осуждать

to argue — спорить
precious — ценный
data — данные
to estimate — оценивать
majority — большинство
to cause — быть причиной, вызывать
controversy — спор, противоречие

Read and translate the text.

ECOTOURISM

Ecotourism essentially means ecological tourism, where ecological has both environmental and social connotations. It is defined both as a concept / tourism movement and as a tourism sector. Born in its current form in the late 1980s, ecotourism came of age in 2002, when the United Nations celebrated the "International Year of Ecotourism". The International Ecotourism Society (IES) defines ecotourism as "responsible travel to natural areas that conserves the environment and improves the well-being of local people". However, this is a vibrant, new movement and there are various definitions.

Many global environmental organizations and aid agencies favor ecotourism as a vehicle to sustainable development.

Ideally, true ecotourism should satisfy several criteria, such as:

- conservation (and justification for conservation) of biological diversity and cultural diversity, through ecosystems protection;
- promotion of sustainable use of biodiversity, by providing jobs to local populations;
- sharing of socio-economic benefits with local communities and indigenous people by having their informed consent and participation in the management of ecotourism enterprises;
- increase of environmental & cultural knowledge;
- minimisation of tourism's own environmental impact;
- affordability and lack of waste in the form of luxury.

For many countries, ecotourism is not so much seen as a marginal activity intended to finance protection of the environment than as a major sector of national economy and as a means of getting currencies. For example, in countries such as Kenya, Ecuador, Nepal, Costa Rica and Madagascar, ecotourism represents a significant chunk of foreign revenue.

The concept of ecotourism is widely misunderstood and, in practice, is often simply used as a marketing tool to promote tourism that is related to nature. Critics claim that ecotourism as practiced and abused of-

ten consists in placing a hotel in a splendid landscape, to the detriment of the ecosystem. According to them, ecotourism must above all sensitize people with the beauty and the fragility of nature. They condemn some operators as “green-washing” their operations—that is, using the label of “ecotourism” and “green-friendly”, while behaving in environmentally irresponsible ways.

Although academics argue about who can be classified as an ecotourist, and there is precious little statistical data, some estimate that more than five million ecotourists — the majority of the worldwide population — come from the United States, with other ecotourists coming from Europe, Canada and Australia.

Currently there are various moves to create national and international ecotourism certification programs, although the process is causing controversy.

TEXT WORK

1. Pronounce correctly and transcribe. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Ecotourism, essentially, environment, environmental, social, society, define, current, conserve, conservation, vibrant, ideally, vehicle, justification, diversity, cultural, through, ecosystem, communities, indigenous, affordability, luxury, marginal, currencies, Ecuador, foreign, revenue, widely, misunderstood, nature, abused, sensitize, fragility, condemn, although, precious, majority, certification, causing, controversy.

2. Compare and mind the difference:

BrE	AmE
to favour	to favor
minimisation	minimization

3. Answer the questions.

1. What is ecotourism?
2. What connotation does “ecological” have?
3. When was ecotourism “born”?
4. What is the definition of ecotourism by IES?
5. Why do many global organizations and aid agencies favor ecotourism?
6. What criteria should true ecotourism satisfy?
7. How is ecotourism seen by different countries? Why?

8. Why is the concept of ecotourism misunderstood in practice?
9. Which way do the travel agencies abuse the concept of ecotourism?
10. How many ecotourists are there in the world? What countries are they usually from?
11. Why does the process of creating ecotourism certification programs cause controversy?

4. Give Russian equivalents to the following words and word combinations. Find and translate the sentences with them in the text.

Environmental connotation, social connotation, responsible travel, to conserve the environment, aid agencies, sustainable development, justification for conservation, to provide jobs, local populations, socio-economic benefits, local communities, indigenous people, informed consent, marginal activity, major sector of national economy, foreign revenue, splendid landscape, to the detriment of the ecosystem, to sensitize people, “green-washing” their operations, green-friendly, certification programs, the process is causing controversy.

5. Give English equivalents to the following words and word combinations.

Экотуризм; экологический туризм; значение для окружающей среды; существующая форма; международный год экотуризма; природные зоны; улучшать благосостояние; местные жители; коренные жители; местные народы; организации по защите окружающей среды; удовлетворять нескольким критериям; биологическое разнообразие (2); культурное разнообразие; стабильное использование биологического разнообразия; управление экологическими предприятиями; повышение уровня культурных знаний; воздействие на окружающую среду; доступность; отсутствие загрязнения; финансовая защита окружающей среды; значительная часть; концепция экотуризма; на практике; инструмент продвижения на рынок; злоупотребление; красота и хрупкость природы; безответственно по отношению к окружающей среде (природе); статистические данные; мировое население; различные движения; национальные и международные программы сертификации экотуризма.

6. Give singular for:

Phenomena, criteria, data, people, million.

7. Make word combinations, translate them and find them in the text.

ecological
social
tourism
current
United
ecotourism
responsible
natural
local
various
environmental
sustainable
several
biological
ecosystems
socio-economic
marginal
cultural
environmental
tourism

society
development
diversity
movement
impact
definitions
criteria
protection
area
tourism
knowledge
organizations
form
people
sector
activity
connotation
travel
benefits
Nations

* * *

indigenous
finance
major
national
significant
foreign
widely
cultural
marketing
promote
splendid
fragility of
irresponsible
statistical

revenue
diversity
controversy
tool
nature
sector
landscape
people
population
misunderstood
data
moves
chunk
programs

worldwide	protection
various	ways
certification	economy
cause	tourism

8. Match the synonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

society	in practice
various	revenue
vibrant	bulk
in fact	evaluate
chunk	at present
local people	community
income	environmentally friendly
impact	meaning
currently	indigenous people
connotation	agency
define	different
organization	influence
green-friendly	determine
estimate	energetic

9. Match the antonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

majority	maximization
foreign	much
simple	decrease
increase	excess
minimization	expenses
minor	minority
revenue	destroy
wide	narrow
little	local
lack	major
create	difficult

10. Form antonyms using negative prefixes *un-*, *in-*, *il-*, *im-*, *ir-*, *dis-*, *mis-*. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

To understand, to use, to satisfy, to inform, legal, significant, responsible, affordable.

11. Retell the text.**12. Choose the right word from the list below. Mind the forms of the words. Translate the article.****NATIONAL PARKS OF TASMANIA**

The _____ has the cleanest air in the world, so nature's palette shows through without the contamination of urban pollution. And for colour, nothing beats Tasmania in _____.

Smell the delicate _____ of tiny white Kunzea blossoms in the Narawntapu National Park, where a family of wombats may amble past you in the coastal heathlands. An _____ later you're surrounded by a riot of vivid red, yellow and blue in _____ of tulips and irises that roll across Table Cape, in the north-west, to the edge of a sea cliff.

The contrast between _____ beauty on a grand scale and gardens formed by human hand exists throughout the State. Some of the oldest _____ on earth, forests of the ancient single supercontinent of Gondwanaland, flourishes in the Tasmanian World Heritage Area, which has its northern boundary in the Cradle Mountain-Lake St Clair _____ Park.

Tasmanians love their gardens and in the _____ of the State, European cottage courtyards co-exist with exotic _____. Delightful heritage gardens have been protected over the decades in colonial villages along the Heritage Highway.

On the _____ coast, roam through the Freycinet National Park, watching closely for native orchids. Paddle a sea kayak past the red _____ peaks of the Hazards Range. Then open a picnic hamper at Honeymoon Bay and _____ the sun set.

Field, bloom, to watch, hour, island, national, natural, centre, aroma, granite, east, vegetation, spring.

13. Fill in the gaps with suitable prepositions and adverbs where necessary. Translate the article.**AUSTRALIA**

... the north you can follow ... the wine trail through the Pipers Brook and Tamar Valley area. Sip a cool climate pinot noir ... a balcony overlooking the Tamar River and discover what a signature wine is all about.

Chat ... the winemakers ... the region's superb sauvignon blancs and chardonnays, produced ... passion ... stunning locations.

... the south, 40 ha ... English oaks and rambling gardens have been carefully restored ... one ... Australia's leading historic sites, Port Arthur. Its stark convict past is evident ... more than 30 buildings and ruins clustered ... the edge ... a peaceful bay. ... the snap ... a playing card, the world-class Visitor Centre invites you to step ... the shoes ... a convict to experience his life ... a day.

The west coast fishing village ... Strahan is ... the banks ... Macquarie Harbour — almost six and a half times the size ... the whole of Sydney Harbour but ... less than a thousand people living around its shores. It is the departure point ... cruises ... the Gordon River ... the Franklin-Gordon Wild Rivers National Park, and ... wilderness flights. Step ... the history ... local Huon Pine gatherers, the early mining boom and wilderness explorers ... the Strahan Visitor Centre.

Australia is an ideal destination ... self-drive holidays, ... endless reasons to stop, explore and create an itinerary as you travel. Bring your own car ... the overnight ferry or hire a car or campervan.

And when it comes ... the clear air and light, there's even more opportunity to enjoy it ... spring when Australia begins its six months ... daylight saving. Dusk doesn't begin ... about 8.30 p.m. and it's a slow twilight — perfect ... evenings outdoors.

14. Compare your perception of ecotourism with the one given in the text.

- Do you agree with the definition of ecotourism given in the text?
- Do you want to add something or to eliminate something?

15. Agree or disagree with the following statements. Give your reasons.

For agreement use:

That's an idea.

Sounds good.

Sounds like a good idea.

Yes, I agree with you.

Right you are.

For disagreement use:

That's not a good idea.

I don't think so.

I disagree...

Of course not.

Not for me.

1. Ecotourism is a travel to a natural area.
2. It is important to celebrate "International Years of Ecotourism" regularly.

3. The most important criterion the ecotourism should meet is minimization of the tourism environmental impact.
4. For some countries ecotourism is a major sector of economy.
5. To create an ecotour it is enough to place a hotel in a splendid landscape.
6. The aim of ecotourism is to conserve the environment.
7. A lot of travel agencies abuse the concept of ecotourism.

16. Discuss.

1. It is a good ideal to create national and international ecotourism certification programs.
2. Ecotourism has some very important tasks.
3. The main task of ecotourism is to increase the environmental and cultural knowledge.
4. Ecotourism is increasing in popularity because people start thinking about nature more.
5. The majority of ecotourists come from the United States, because they have more money to spend on tourism.
6. Many global environmental organizations and aid agencies favor ecotourism as a vehicle to sustainable development.
7. Ecotourism is the most important and the most profitable trend of tourism development.
8. Ecotourism will continue to increase in popularity.

17. Speak about...ecotourism in Russia.

18. Explain why ecotourism gains popularity and attention throughout the world.

19. Role play.

Student A	Student B
<i>You are a member of Wildlife Conservation Society. Describe your work to your partner and persuade him/her join the Society.</i>	<i>You don't like nature very much, so you don't want to be a member of any conservation group. Tell your friend about drawbacks of conservation societies' work.</i>

Swap roles.

20. Translate into English.

Обитатели следующей вольеры «Острова зверей» — львы. Львы в Московском зоопарке не обычные — африканские, а редчайшие — азиатского подвида. Когда-то львы широко населяли юг Азиатского континента, их ареал охватывал даже Кавказ, но затем азиатские львы были повсеместно истреблены и сумели выжить только на небольшом пространстве Гирского леса в Индии.

Как и амурские тигры, азиатские львы внесены в Красную Книгу Международного Союза Охраны Природы, и зоопарки ведут активную работу по их сохранению и разведению, причем в этой работе зоопарки активно сотрудничают между собой, так, лев-самец прибыл в Московский зоопарк из Финляндии, а львица — из Англии.



21. Write an essay on the topic "Ecotourism in Russia".

TEXT 2

Vocabulary

to announce — объявлять

creation — создание

force — сила

obsessed — одержимый

to inspire — вдохновлять

to instill — внедрять

journal — журнал, дневник

experience — опыт, жизненный опыт

to celebrate — отмечать, восхвалять

to speak one's mind about... — высказывать свое мнение о...

to describe — описывать

success — успех

mangroves = mangrove trees — манговое дерево

stilt — свая, ходуля

tangle — узел, связка

jungle — джунгли
gym — спортивный зал
to exist — существовать
padauk wood — красное дерево
ivory — слоновая кость
to acquire — приобретать
oyster — устрица
paddle — весло
to paddle — грести
cumulus clouds — кучевые облака
bend — поворот, изгиб
abundant — обильный
surface — поверхность
bat — летучая мышь
to scare — пугать
overdressed — слишком нарядно одетый
beak — клюв
breast — грудка
throat — горло
back — спина
wing — крыло
eyes — глаза
raven — ворон
human — человек, человеческий
avian — птичий
delight — восторг, прелесть, наслаждение
heron — цапля
nocturnal — ночной
shy — застенчивый, робкий, скромный
hardly — едва
unbelievably — невероятно
to advance — продвигаться вперед
upstream — вверх по течению
to narrow — сужаться
snag — затруднение, загвоздка
muddy — грязный
bank — берег реки
to surge — вздыматься, нахлынуть, колыхаться
to plunge — бросаться, рухнуть, резко падать вниз
battleship — военный корабль
to judge — судить

surprise attack — внезапная атака
frantically — отчаянно
to chomp — брать кусок не по зубам, грызть
slippery — скользкий
to slipper — скользить
ungrippable — который невозможно схватить
to toss — подкидывать, подбрасывать, отбрасывать, откидывать
to clamber — карабкаться
to slither — скользить
edge — край
to erupt — разразиться, извергаться
spooked — напуганный
prey — добыча
to stir — шевелить, волновать
beast — зверь
to struggle — бороться
to fetch — догнать
bow — изгиб, край
calm — спокойный
bubble — пузырь
swirl — водоворот

Read and translate the text.

IN THE LAND OF THE SURFING HIPPOS

Last September the Gabonese government announced the creation of 13 national parks, covering 11 percent of the country. A major force behind this decision was J. Michael Fay, a driven (some would say obsessed) biologist with the New York based Wildlife Conservation Society (WCS), who had walked some 2,000 miles across central Africa to document its flora and fauna. In Loango National Park, a model for the other parks, Fay made his efforts to instill solid management and inspire private investment, keeping a daily journal of his experiences. In his entries he celebrates the Loango's coast, speaks his mind about conservation, and describes some of the work that's making the world's newest park system a success.

The Heron

The mangroves here are big trees, their stilt roots forming an impenetrable tangle like some kind of jungle gym.

I thought about the village. The people of Loango came to the bank of Congo River for padauk wood (prized for its hardness and bright red color), for elephant ivory, and to acquire slaves from the neighboring tribes. It's clear that oysters supplied the villagers with a steady source of food over many generations.

Paddling conditions were perfect — slight breeze coming off the ocean, cumulus clouds shading the sun (no more than 80°F), and not a tsetse fly to be seen. As we rounded the sharp bend leading us inland, the kayak leaving a silvery wake on the dark surface, some fruit bats scared up a big bird.

We got into position for a look, and my eyes met with what looked like an overdressed clown with a sharp beak. Its breast was a rich rusty brown, the throat a bright white, the back and wings a crisp blackish brown. But the eyes: Wow, what eyes! In a bird the size of a raven they were about as big as a human's and lined with a thick white ring. This thing was the most wonderful avian delight I'd ever seen. A look in *A Guide to the Birds of Western Africa* revealed the bird to be the white-backed night heron. "Largely nocturnal; secretive and very shy by day," the book said. Hardly an adequate description of what we saw. The authors might have added: "Yet another little known and unbelievably beautiful product of nature that can be seen on any day in Loango National Park."

The Hippo

As we advanced upstream, the river narrowed, and snags began to block our progress. My eyes scanned the muddy bank, which suddenly began to surge. So did my heart, as the form of a massive hippo materialized no more than 25 feet in front of the boat. Face-on to us, he plunged into the water like a battleship released from dry dock full-speed ahead. He'd been sleeping under a tree, and we had scared him in what he may have judged a surprise attack. We paddled frantically for the mangroves on the opposite bank, which seemed a mile away.

"Go, go, go," shouted Jane, "he's coming. He's right behind the boat." The theme music of "Jaws" popped into my head, along with visions of this behemoth chomping our plastic kayak right in half.

When we reached a tangle of mangrove roots — slippery like spaghetti and virtually ungrippable (ungraspable) — I tossed the paddle aside and catapulted Malia up into the tree. Jane and I followed, clambering and slithering over the spaghetti branches until we had about ten feet of jungle between us and the water's edge. We looked back only to see a boil of

water erupting just behind the empty kayak. The hippo had plunged into the black depths.

We sat motionless for the better part of an hour, eyes fixed on the water like spooked prey. Because passage on foot through the mangrove maze wasn't an option, we'd have to hop back in that boat and get ourselves downstream without stirring the now invisible beast. All was quiet. Would it stay that way?

Jane and Malia struggled through the mangrove roots until they were about a hundred feet downstream. I jumped in the kayak, tipping it hard from side to side to call the hippo's bluff. The water stayed calm. No bubbles, no movement. That was good. I recovered the paddle and lost no time in zipping downstream to fetch the ladies, slipping as quietly as possible past every swirl and bubble.

TEXT WORK

1. Pronounce correctly and transcribe. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Government, wildlife, society, fauna, inspire, journal, experiences, coast, success, mangrove, jungle, gym, padauk, bright, ivory, acquire, neighboring, oyster, source, cumulus, surface, scared, clown, beak, breast, throat, human, avian, delight, guide, reveal, nocturnal, adequate, nature, eyes, surge, heart, release, judge, jaws, reach, spaghetti, virtually, depths, motionless, because, through, quiet, struggle, swirl.

2. Answer the questions.

1. How many National Parks did the Gabonese government create? When?
2. Who was a major force behind this decision?
3. What did Michael Fay do in Africa?
4. What kind of trees are mangroves?
5. Why did the people of Loango come to the bank of Congo River?
6. What was the steady source of food for the local people?
7. What were the paddling conditions there?
8. When did the fruit bats scare a big bird?
9. What did the bird look like?
10. What kind of bird was it?
11. What was written about this bird in the Guide?
12. What should be added to that description?
13. What happened when they advanced upstream?

14. Why did the water surge?
15. Why did the author's heart surge?
16. What did the hippo look like?
17. Why was the hippo trying to attack the author and his kayak?
18. How did the author and his companions escape from the hippo?
19. What was the author thinking about while running away?
20. What did the author do when they reached the opposite bank?
21. What did they see when they reached the safe place?
22. What was the safe place?
23. What did they do after the hippo had plunged into the black depths?
24. How did they go back? Why?

3. Give Russian equivalents to the following words and word combinations. Find and translate sentences with them in the text.

To announce the creation, driven (obsessed) biologist, Wildlife Conservation Society, to make one's efforts, to celebrate the Loango's coast, to speak one's mind about conservation, to make the world's newest park system a success, stilt roots, mangroves, padauk wood, prized for its hardness and bright red color, to acquire slaves, paddling conditions, cumulus clouds, silvery wake on the dark surface, rich rusty brown, eyes about as big as a human's, the most wonderful avian delight I'd ever seen, Guide to the Birds of Western Africa, white-backed night heron, hardly an adequate description, the authors might have added, unbelievably beautiful product of nature, we advanced upstream, snags began to block our progress, bank began to surge, to plunge into the water, like a battleship released from dry dock, full-speed ahead, to judge a surprise attack, to paddle frantically, right behind the boat, to chomp the plastic kayak right in half, water's edge, to reach a tangle of mangrove roots, virtually un-grippable, to clamber and slither over the spaghetti branches, a boil of water erupting just behind the empty kayak, to plunge into the black depths, like spooked prey, passage on foot, to call the hippo's bluff, to stay calm.

4. Give English equivalents to the following words and word combinations.

Габонское правительство; объявить о создании; национальный парк; основная сила; увлеченный биолог; стабильное управление; частные инвестиции; вести дневник; высказывать свое мнение о...;

недоступная путаница; слоновая кость; соседние племена; стабильный источник пищи; устрицы; легкий морской ветерок; муха цеце; крутой изгиб; фруктовые летучие мыши; острый клюв; ярко-белый; четкие черно-коричневые крылья; размером с ворона; очерченные широким белым кругом; самая красивая, восхитительная представительница птиц, которую я когда-либо видел; ведущий преимущественно ночной образ жизни; осторожный днем; невероятно красивый; река сужалась; грязный берег; массивный бегемот; перед лодкой; обращенный лицом к нам; как военный корабль; на полной скорости; мы напугали его; противоположный берег реки; мелодия из кинофильма; скользкий как макароны; я отбросил весло; он нырнул в черную глубину реки; мы сидели неподвижно; большая часть часа; лабиринт из корней мангового дерева; невидимый зверь; пузырьки; спокойно; я достал весло; водоворот.

5. Form adjectives from the names of these countries:

Gabon, Japan, Portugal, China, Vietnam.

6. Give full forms for:

WCS, UN, IES, US.

7. Convert distances in miles into kilometers, temperatures in degrees Fahrenheit into degrees Centigrade.

8. Make word combinations, translate them and find them in the text.

major	investment
driven	ivory
conservation	surface
national	journal
central	tangle
solid	conditions
private	delight
daily	force
stilt	food
impenetrable	management
padauk	beak
elephant	bend
acquire	brown
neighboring	biologist

source of	bird
many	breeze
paddling	roots
slight	generations
cumulus	wood
tsetse	society
sharp	tribes
opposite	fly
dark	park
fruit	slaves
a big	bats
sharp	clouds
rusty	bank
avian	Africa

* * *

obsessed	heron
bright	spaghetti
night	maze
largely	nocturnal
adequate	depths
unbelievably	roots
muddy	description
massive	edge
dry	white
full-speed	motionless
surprise	ahead
paddle	beast
plastic	biologist
theme	prey
mangrove	hippo
slippery like	branches
virtually	frantically
spaghetti	beautiful
water's	back
black	kayak
looked	part
sat	bank
better	ungrippable
spooked	music
mangrove	attack
invisible	dock

9. Match the synonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

shout	introduce
scare	turn
beautiful	reliable
instill	materialize
journal	bank
driven	ungraspable
solid	get
speak one's mind	obsessed
ungrippable	move forward
hop	hippo
calm	huge
advance	cry
acquire	quiet
bend	throw aside
massive	diary
behemoth	frighten
appear	express one' opinion
toss aside	wonderful
coast	jump

10. Match the antonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

major	public
private	light
success	scarce
hardness	heavy
nocturnal	minor
progress	in front of
abundant	daytime
slight	downstream
dark	softness
upstream	muddy
clean	regress
behind	failure

11. Form antonyms using negative prefixes *un-*, *in-*, *il-*, *im-*, *ir-*, *dis-*, *mis-*. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Visible, penetrable, believable, grippable, possible.

12. Make a summary of the text.

13. Choose the right word from the list below. Read and translate the story.

THE BRONX ZOO

Welcome to the one of the _____ greatest zoo — the Bronx Zoo! As the flagship of the largest _____ of metropolitan zoos in the USA, the Bronx Zoo is the heart of the Wildlife Conservation Society and its work _____ wildlife and wild places around the globe.

With award-winning, cutting-edge exhibits featuring over 4,000 _____, there is no other zoo in the world that _____ the diversity, superb viewing, and world-renowned expertise that assures a rewarding _____ and the knowledge that visitors can make a difference in the world around them.

Whether you're nose-to-nose with Western lowland gorillas in our _____ Congo Gorilla Forest, spotting snow _____ in our naturalistic Himalayan Highlands Habitat, or experiencing almost an acre of an indoor Asian rain _____, you're always within roaring distance of the world's most amazing wildlife. In the end, you'll know that your admission fees went to a _____ organization that has more expert researchers in the field than any other. Together, we're making a _____.

Visit the zoo and have _____ exploring it!

Experience, conservation, network, fun, world, difference, to save, to offer, famous, forest, animal, leopard.

14. Fill in the blanks with prepositions from the last below and adverbs where necessary. Translate the article.



BIG BEARS

Surrounding a high ridge ... natural rock and just ... a path ... the Himalayan Highlands are grizzly and polar bears. These cuties are anything but cuddly!

The grizzly bear is a race ... brown bear and has been called the most dangerous animal ... North America — next ... humans. Our grizzlies came here as part ... a rescue effort ... 1995.

Occasionally, ... the wild, bears become too friendly ... the locals and need to be relocated to more remote areas ... wilderness. The US Fish & Wildlife Service gives them three chances. Our bears struck-out. Luckily, they have found a permanent and comfortable home here ... the zoo.

... their designation as land animals, polar bears are the most aquatic ... all the bear species. ... the wild, polar bears can swim ... hours to get ... one iced floe ... another. There is no shortage ... swim time here ... the zoo either. Our charismatic polar bears love swimming year round — especially when there is a fishsicle (frozen fish treat) to catch. ... your visit, you might see a bear taking a dip or playing ... the snow.

Of, to, from, for, in, at, up, with, despite, during.

15. Agree or disagree with the following statements. Give your reasons:

For agreement use:

I quite agree.

I agree with you.

I fully agree.

I think you are right.

For disagreement use:

Actually, I don't agree.

I don't think that's right.

I don't think that's true (correct).

Well, I am not sure if that's true (right, correct).

1. Gabon is the country where ecotourism is well-developed.
2. Flora and fauna of Africa are the most beautiful in the world.
3. Herons are nocturnal birds.
4. You will never find jungle in Gabon, only deserts.
5. Hippos are friendly animals.
6. Padauk wood and elephant ivory are not popular nowadays.
7. 80°F is not very hot.
8. Hippos are not very good swimmers.
9. If you go downstream a river in a national park you need to be careful to avoid every swirl and bubble.

16. Read the article, put the verbs in the right forms and discuss the article.

ADOPT AN ANIMAL

You (to want) (to be) Mum to a giraffe? Or Dad to a gorilla? London zoo (to want) everyone (to adopt) one of its animals (to raise) money (to look) after them.

When you “adopt” an animal, you (to sponsor) it for a year. You can (to adopt) an animal for one year on your own, with your family or with your school group. The cheapest, for £15 per year (to be) tiny things such as ants, beetles, butterflies and small fish. A lion, tiger or rhinoceros (to cost) you £2000. The most expensive animal of all (to be) the Asian elephant.

What you (to get) for your money? An Adoption Certificate, a photo of your animal and a free entrance ticket. You can also (to have) your name on a sign near your animal cage.

London zoo (to have) over five thousands animals. It (to cost) over half a million pounds (to pay) for the animals’ food for a year.

1. *What does it mean “to adopt an animal at London zoo”?*
2. *Do you think it is a good thing to adopt an animal at the zoo?*
3. *Do we have the “Adopt an Animal” programme in Russia?*

17. Divide into two groups. One group is for adopting an animal. The other group is against it. Discuss pros and cons of adopting an animal.

18. Speak about...

CONSERVATION TIPS

- Many wild animals are now threatened or endangered because of international trade. Stop by the Customs House and see confiscated items illegally, made from our wondrous wildlife.
- Don’t buy ivory. Plastics, resins, and even a very hard white nut can be fashioned into jewelry and other items once made from ivory.
- Primates do not make good pets and are illegal in many areas. Ecotourism helps bring hard currency to developing countries.
- Ecotourists like you who choose their destinations for their natural beauty, have a large impact on countries with large wildlife population.
- Ecotourism makes certain species more valuable alive than dead.
- The way you live at home does influence the world. Support and participate in non-consumptive uses of wildlife such as bird watching, nature photography and scuba diving.
- Create conditions in your yard that will benefit birds, insects and plants. Reduce or eliminate your use of chemical fertilizers and pesticides.
- Plant trees and bushes.

19. Discuss the necessity of every tip.

20. Add more conservation tips (at least five more tips).

21. Explain why it is necessary to preserve nature and describe the ways to do it.

22. Role play.

Student A	Student B
<i>You think that to conserve nature everybody should become environmentally friendly and stop spoiling the nature. Explain your point of view to your friend.</i>	<i>You think that governments of all countries on the world should pay attention to nature conservation. Common people can’t do anything to change the situation of nowadays. Explain your point of view to your friend.</i>

Swap roles.

23. You are going on an ecotour. You need advice from your friend. Speak about advantages, disadvantages, pleasures and discomforts of an ecotour.

Student A	Student B
Ask advise from your partner	Give advice to your partner
<i>What would you advise me to...? Where do you advise me to...? If you me, what (where) would you...? What do you think...? Really? What can you recommend...? Are you sure?</i>	<i>If you ask me... If I were you, I’d...because... How about... (-ing)? Why not... (-ing)? I really recommend you... From my own experience I can tell you...</i>

Swap roles.

24. Dialogue. Read, translate, memorize and dramatize the dialogue.

Ann: Listen to this! It says in the paper that a tiger escaped from the zoo last night.

Ben: Did it? Not near here I hope? Was it London Zoo?

Ann: No, it wasn't. It was in Bristol.

Ben: Oh no. My parents live in Bristol, next to Bristol Zoo!

25. Make up your own dialogues about visits to the zoo or accidents that happened in the zoo you know about.

26. Translate into English.

МОСКОВСКИЙ ЗООПАРК

Московский зоопарк, расположенный в самом центре города, старейший и крупнейший зоопарк нашей страны. Он был основан в 1864 году. Сейчас коллекция зоопарка насчитывает 6094 экземпляра 1001 вида животных.

За свою почти полуторавековую историю зоопарк очень сильно изменился, особенно в последние годы, когда стала осуществляться его генеральная реконструкция. Появились новые помещения для животных, например, создан уникальный «Экзотариум» — павильон с морскими аквариумами. Открыты новые павильоны: «Дом птиц», «Ночной мир», «Теплолюбивые копытные», «Теплолюбивые кошки», «Ластоногие», «Приматы», «Фауна Индонезии». Для самых маленьких посетителей открыт специальный «Детский зоопарк».

Новый слоновник был построен в рекордно короткие сроки, в течение одного года, и был открыт для посетителей в сентябре 2003 года. Он получился просторным: отапливаемые зимние вольеры площадью 650 кв. метров, летние вольеры для прогулок площадью 1475 кв. метров. В нем многое предусмотрено для комфортного содержания животных: бассейны, много песка, стволы деревьев, крупные валуны. Новоселам, самцу и двум самкам азиатских слонов, очень понравился их новый дом. Павильон удобен и посетителям — во внутреннем помещении им предоставлен двухуровневый смотровой зал.

27. Write an essay on a chosen topic.

1. Wildlife conservation societies in Russia.
2. Nature conservation in Russia.
3. Nature conservation in... (choose any city or country).
4. The necessity of nature conservation.

PROJECT WORK

1. Create an ecotourism program in your region. Work out the itinerary for an ecotour. Think of the ways your program can be beneficial for the community and for the nature. Present your tour to your customers. Include conservation tips they should know while travelling.

2. Work out a nature conservation program for your region. Include all endangered animal and plant species. Publish conservation tips for people in the local newspaper. Present your program to the local group of environment activists.

Unit 6. Business Travel

GROUP TALK

- Why do people travel on business?
- How often do people travel on business?
- Have you ever travelled on business?



TEXT 1

Vocabulary

stable — стабильный
profitable — прибыльный
incentive — поощрительный
conference — конференция
exhibition — выставка
separate — отдельный
to consider — полагать, считать
at the expense of — за счет...
entertaining trips — развлекательные поездки
development — развитие
according to — согласно...
prospects — перспективы
approximate — приблизительный
supplement — дополнять
negotiation — переговоры
to deal with — иметь дело с...
enterprise — предприятие
demand — спрос
workshop — семинар
support — поддержка
employee — работник, служащий
appraisal — похвала
teamwork — работа в команде
annual — ежегодный, годовой
turnover — оборот, товарооборот

average — средний
duration — длительность
diverse — разнообразный
ordinary — обычный
vip = very important person — очень важный
senior management — высшее руководство
balloon flying — полеты на воздушных шарах
auto rallies — автогонки
psychologist — психолог
rope-courses — «веревочные курсы»
to comprise — включать в себя
emphasis — акцент, придавать значение
participant — участник
leadership skills — лидерские качества
adjustment — приспособление
sudden — внезапный

Read and translate the text.

BUSINESS TRAVEL (Part I)

Business travel is one of the most stable working and highly profitable part of world tourism, and one of the youngest, too. Business travel or MICE (abbreviation from Meetings / Incentive / Conferences / Exhibitions) became a separate branch of tourism business in 1970s. First, business travel was considered by businessmen only as opportunities to have a good rest at the expense of the government or the company you work for. The situation changed greatly after 1998 when the number of entertaining trips has lowered and at the same time the number of corporate events has grown. MICE development in Russia is highly dynamic as well as in the rest of the world, and according to the prospects the profitability of this branch of tourism will grow up to \$2 billion a year by 2020.

The demand structure of MICE today is: 75 % is individual business travel, intensive trips, conferences and exhibitions are 10—13 % each. The figures are approximate, of course; exhibitions and conferences are usually combined together in one event, and intensive programs usually supplement other types of business travel.

Meetings

Most travel agencies offer businessmen going to a conference, exhibition or negotiations only standard package of visa support, air tickets,

accommodation and transfers. As a result those businessmen, who want their trips to be efficient, prefer dealing with specialized travel agencies working in the sphere of MICE tourism. Such travel agencies basically deal with corporate clients. Agencies can provide the corporate client with full package of business and travel services including dozens of meetings, visits to enterprises and professional exhibitions.

The biggest American travel agencies working in the sphere of MICE tourism are American Express Travel Services, Carlson Wagonlit Travel, BTI.

The demand on business travel is growing rapidly. Numerous workshops, professional exhibitions, journals and websites devoted to MICE support this growth.

Incentive

Incentive tourism means travels financed by the company to give an incentive to employees as the appraisal of their work, to facilitate the teamwork and to stimulate work motivation. World annual turnover of incentive tourism exceeds \$8 million, 80 % of which is spent on transport, accommodation and food services, and only 15 % is spent on sight-seeing and entertainment programs. Throughout the world 70 % of all incentive tours are to Europe, 10 % are to the USA though 60 % of all incentive tourists are Americans, and 15 % of the tours are to the South East Asia. The average duration of an incentive tour is from 3 to 7 days.

Incentive tours are becoming more diverse, both in the choice of the countries and in the tour programs. Some intensive tours are aimed at business activities or interests of the tourists, i.e. historical or wine tours; there are also separate "mass" tours for ordinary employees and VIP programs for senior management. The latter prefer adventure tourism or even extreme tourism such as auto rallies or balloon flying.

Recently senior management of many companies prefers investing money not into traditional entertainment incentive tours but in team-building tours. In this matter travel agencies work together with business consulting companies, professional psychologists, etc. The example can be so called "rope-courses". They last for 3—4 days and are comprised of different activities including sport, adventure and extreme. The emphasis of the courses is placed not on sport abilities of the participants, but on effective teamwork, problem solution, leadership skills development and behaviour adjustment to different situations and sudden changes. Some travel agencies called incentive houses specialize at incentive tours only.

TEXT WORK

1. Pronounce correctly and transcribe. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Incentive, exhibition, entertaining, approximate, negotiation, enterprise, employee, appraisal, annual, turnover, throughout, diverse, choice, VIP, senior, psychologist, course, emphasis, adjustment, sudden.

2. Answer the questions.

1. What is the place of business travel in the world tourism?
2. What is MICE?
3. When did business travel become a separate part of tourism business?
4. What was the first perception of business travel by businessmen?
5. What is the situation nowadays?
6. What can you say about MICE in Russia?
7. What is the demand structure of MICE today?
8. What do most travel agencies offer to businessmen?
9. What can specialized travel agencies offer to corporate clients?
10. What are the biggest American agencies working in the sphere of MICE tourism?
11. What is incentive tourism?
12. What is the world annual turnover of incentive tourism?
13. What are the popular destinations for incentive tours?
14. What are incentive tours aimed at?
15. What kinds of incentive programs exist?
16. What does senior management prefer investing money into?
17. What is an example of a team-building tour in the text?

3. Give Russian equivalents to the following words and word combinations. Find and translate sentences with them in the text.

MICE, meetings, incentive, conferences, exhibitions, separate branch, opportunity to have a good rest, situation changed greatly, MICE development in Russia, highly dynamic, in the rest of the world, individual business travel, intensive, combined together in one event, supplement other types of business travel, travel agencies, air tickets, accommodation and transfers, specialized travel agencies, in the sphere of MICE tourism, including dozens of meetings, numerous workshops, devoted to MICE, support this growth, incentive tourism, the appraisal

of their work, to facilitate the teamwork, to stimulate work motivation, annual turnover, throughout the world, more diverse, aimed at business activities, "mass" tours for ordinary employees, VIP programs, for senior management, the latter, adventure tourism, team-building tours, the emphasis of the courses is placed not on, incentive houses.

4. Give English equivalents to the following words and word combinations.

Деловой туризм; стабильно работающий; высокоприбыльный; считается; за счет...; развлекательная поездка; корпоративные мероприятия; согласно прогнозам; прибыльность этой отрасли туризма; структура спроса; конференция; приблизительный; стандартный турпакет; визовая поддержка; в результате; предпочитают иметь дело с...; корпоративные клиенты; посещение предприятий; профессиональные выставки; быстро развивается; журналы и Интернет-страницы; финансируется компанией; в качестве поощрения сотрудников; превышает; развлекательные программы и программы осмотра достопримечательностей; средняя продолжительность; поощрительные туры; исторические туры; винные туры; полеты на воздушных шарах; в этой связи; консалтинговые компании; «веревочные курсы»; спортивные умения; решение проблем.

5. Make word combinations, translate them and find them in the text.

business	together
stable	profitable
highly	structure
tourism	dynamic
separate	business
good	events
changed	working
entertaining	branch
at the same	programs
corporate	types
highly	rest
demand	agencies
combined	greatly
intensive	package
other	trips
travel	time

standard

travel

* * *

visa
air
sport
problem
leadership
prefer
corporate
dozens
visits to
professional
numerous
support this
appraisal
facilitate
work
VIP
annual

enterprises
of meetings
clients
dealing
turnover
skills
exhibitions
motivation
solution
the teamwork
abilities
workshops
growth
programs
support
of work
tickets

* * *

foods
growing
entertainment
average
more
business
wine
ordinary
senior
adventure
auto
balloon
investing
team-building
consulting

money
tours
flying
rallies
tourism
services
rapidly
companies
management
programs
employees
duration
tours
diverse
activities

6. Match the antonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

supply	exact
accommodation	individual
high	VIP
separate	lodging
mass	race
approximate	demand
ordinary	junior
senior	low
the former	the latter
rallies	joined

7. Make a summary of the text.

8. Agree or disagree with the following statements. Give your reasons.

For agreement use:

I think so.

I agree...

Yes, I should think so.

Certainly it is.

Exactly.

For disagreement use:

I don't think so.

I disagree...

I don't agree with you here.

Definitely not.

Not in the least.

1. Business travel is a highly profitable part of world tourism.
2. Business travel is the oldest form of tourism.
3. MICE is a separate branch of tourism.
4. The demand on business travel is growing rapidly.
5. Incentive tourism is usually individual tourism.
6. Incentive tours are aimed at business activities of the tourists.
7. Senior management prefers investing money into traditional entertainment tours.
8. There are separate incentive programs for senior management.
9. All incentive tours are aimed at team-building or effective team work.
10. MICE is an important sector of world economy.

9. Discuss:

1. What is business travel and why does it exist?
2. The reasons why the perception of business travel has changed.
3. The demand structure of MICE.

4. The factors that support the growth of MICE.
5. The world annual turnover of incentive tourism in comparison with Russia.
6. The reasons why incentive tours become more diverse.
7. There are separate "mass" tours for ordinary employees and VIP programs for senior management. Is it necessary?

10. Speak about...business travel demand in your city/region.

11. Explain why?

1. The demand on business travel is growing.
2. There are agencies working only in the sphere of MICE tourism.
3. Businessmen prefer dealing with specialized travel agencies.
4. Incentive tours are gaining popularity.
5. There are separate team-building tours are gaining popularity.
6. There are separate "mass" tours for ordinary employees and VIP programs for senior management.

DIALOGUE 1

Read, memorize and dramatize the conversation.

AT THE AIRPORT

Stephen Brooks, managing director from Acme Bikes, a small British company, is meeting his Dutch colleague, Henk Jansen, at the airport. Henk is in the arrivals hall. Stephen and his wife Christine approach him.

Stephen: Excuse me. Are you Mr. Jansen?

Henk: Yes. I'm Henk Jansen.

Stephen: How do you do, Henk? I'm Stephen Brooks from Acme Bikes.

Henk: How do you do, Mr. Brookes?

Stephen: Did you have a good journey?

Henk: Yes. It was fine, thanks.

Stephen: (*picking up Henk's suitcase*) Oh, I'll take your suitcase.

Henk: That's very kind of you.

Stephen: Not at all. Let me introduce you to my wife. (*to Christine*) Christine, this is Henk Jansen.

Christine: Hello, Henk. Nice to meet you.

Henk: How do you do, Mrs. Brookes?

Christine: Oh, do call me Christine.

Henk: Thanks, Christine. *(to Stephen)* And may I call you Stephen?

Stephen: Please, do. My car's just outside. I'll take you to the office.

DIALOGUE 2

Read, memorize and dramatize the conversation.

Stephen Brooks has taken his Dutch colleague to the office of Acme Bikes. Henk Jansen wants to meet Franck Green, the company's CEO. Carol is Mr. Green's secretary.

IN THE OFFICE

Carol: Mr. Henk Jansen to see you, Mr. Green.

Mr. Green: Thank you, Carol. *(to Henk)* How do you do, Mr. Jansen?

Henk: How do you do, Mr. Green?

Mr. Green: Welcome to Acme Bikes.

Henk: Thank you. It's a pleasure to be here.

Mr. Green: I hope you enjoy your stay with us. Allow me to introduce one of our technical consultant, Jane Selby from New York.

Henk: Pleased to meet you, Miss Selby.

Jane: The pleasure's all mine. And please call me Jane.

Henk: Thanks.

Notes:

The verb "to introduce" is used only in very formal conversations. Even at business meetings you can use a more colloquial phrase "This is...".

12. Role play.

Student A	Student B
<i>Meet a colleague at the airport. Introduce yourself and people with you. Make a small talk.</i>	<i>You are met at the airport by your colleague. Make a small talk with him/her and other people he introduces you to.</i>
<i>You have arrived from the airport to the office and you are introduced to the people in the office. Be polite and friendly.</i>	<i>You have met your colleague at the airport and you have brought him/her to the office. Introduce people in the office to your colleague.</i>

Swap roles.

13. Translate into English.

ДЕЛОВОЙ ТУРИЗМ

Словосочетанием деловой туризм (Business travel) можно обозначить два понятия. Первое — это деловая поездка бизнесмена или менеджера с целью развития бизнеса. Второе — развитая индустрия по обслуживанию деловых поездок.

Специалисты обычно рассматривают понятие деловой туризм как бизнес-систему, состоящую из четырех подсистем. Это четырехугольник, в углах которого находятся: «компании-заказчики» (они направляют своих сотрудников в деловые поездки), «компании-поставщики отдельного вида услуг» (авиакомпании, отели, бюро по аренде автомобилей, страховые компании и др.), «компании-поставщики полного комплекса услуг (туроператоры) в сфере деловых поездок» и «организации и фирмы индустрии МСЕ».

В среде Business travel деловые поездки принято делить на несколько видов в зависимости от целей и пакета востребованных услуг. Это собственно индивидуальные деловые поездки, на долю которых в среднем в мире приходится 70—78 % от общего объема деловых поездок. Поездки для участия в конференциях, конгрессах и семинарах — 12—14 %. Поездки на выставки — 10—12 %. Поощрительные поездки как одна из форм мотивации и поощрения сотрудников, партнеров, клиентов, торговых агентов, дистрибьюторов и руководителей высокого ранга составляют 3—7 %. Виды деловых поездок могут тесно переплетаться, например, выставочно-конгрессные и поощрительные поездки.

14. Write an essay on the topic "Business Travel in Russia".

TEXT 2

Vocabulary

to make arrangements — договариваться, улаживать

industry-specific exhibitions — специализированные выставки

construction — строительство

furniture — мебель

military — военный

fair — ярмарка

wood processing — обработка древесины

supply — предложение
clock-art forum — форум часового искусства
trend — направление, тенденция
market share — доля рынка
to note — замечать
in advance — заранее
to attend — посещать
bulk — основная часть, большое количество
pharmaceutical company — фармацевтическая компания
insurance company — страховая компания
charter flights — чартерные рейсы
discount — скидка
to require — требовать

Read and translate the text.

BUSINESS TRAVEL (Part II)

Exhibition Tourism

According to business travel statistics, the demand on exhibition tourism has been growing recently. Large travel agencies make arrangements to visit more than 100 exhibitions every year. The most popular industry-specific exhibitions and fairs are construction, furniture, food, computer, general industrial and military fairs and exhibitions.

The demand on specialized exhibitions has been growing recently. For instance, professionals are not interested in general construction exhibitions, but in particular construction techniques, e.g. wood processing, or particular types of construction materials.

Among the most popular European destinations the leaders are Germany and Italy, providing up to 70 % of supply to the existing demand. The third place is taken by France, with popular construction exhibitions and Le Bourget air show. In Switzerland the primary attractions are auto show in Geneva and clock-art forums in Basle. Great Britain is famous for design, interior and furniture exhibitions. The demand on exhibitions in other European countries is not high.

One of the existing trends in exhibition tourism is the growing interest in South-East Asia, especially China. The location of the exhibition is gaining importance for clients, so exotic countries are being chosen more and more often for the location of the exhibition. It is true particularly for the exporting companies that want to enlarge their sales market's share in developing countries.

Russian experts also note, that Russian businessmen used to remember about exhibitions "at the last minute". Now they plan visiting exhibitions in advance, especially during the high season of the exhibition tourism, which is from February to May and from September to November. Such thoughtfulness makes the work of travel agents easier, because in some hotels located near the popular exhibition centers the rooms have to be reserved at least a year before the exhibitions.

Congress Tourism

Congress tourism is a growing MICE market segment. Congress tourism takes up to 30 % of the hotel reservation around the world, but only 5—7 % in Russia. Some of the most popular congress places have always been Check Republic and Cyprus. Russian capitals Moscow and St. Petersburg are gaining popularity as well lately.

According to HCD Group, a big consulting company, more than 150 large congresses, conferences and workshops are held in Moscow annually. Each event is attended by 100—300 participants, that is average for Europe, but less than in East Asia and America, where large congresses draw up to 5—7 thousands participants.

As the specialists note, the major bulk of congress-conference clients are financial, computer, pharmaceutical and insurance companies. The average duration of the event is from two to four days. The typical service includes charter flights to and from the location and accommodation in best hotels of major resort cities.

Popular travel destinations are gradually becoming popular congress destinations as well. Such countries as Turkey, Spain and Greece are in high demand during low season when 4—5 star hotels are not packed and offer accommodation discounts.

Individual congress tourism differs from exhibition tourism because it doesn't require standard promotion and previous advertisement. Usually individuals come to a travel agency having received the invitations personally in need of standard travel package including visas, air tickets, transfers and accommodation.

TEXT WORK

1. Pronounce correctly and transcribe. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Arrangement, industry-specific, exhibition, construction, furniture, fair, share, thoughtfulness, pharmaceutical, insurance, charter flight, discount, to require.

2. Answer the questions.

1. What are the changes in demand on exhibition tourism?
2. How many exhibitions a year do travel agencies make arrangements for?
3. What are the most popular exhibitions and fairs?
4. What kind of exhibitions are professionals interested in?
5. What are the most popular European exhibition destinations? Why?
6. What are the recent trends in exhibition tourism development?
7. What are the recent trends in Russian exhibition tourism?
8. When is the high season for exhibition tourism?
9. What is the place of congress tourism on the market?
10. What are the popular congress places?
11. How many congresses are held annually in different locations all over the world?
12. What are the major congress-conference clients?
13. What countries are in high demand during low season and why?
14. Which way does the individual congress tourism differ from exhibition tourism.

3. Give Russian equivalents to the following words and word combinations. Find and translate sentences with them in the text.

Demand, make arrangements to visit, construction, furniture, military fairs, for instance, particular construction techniques, the third place is taken by France, primary attractions, clock-art forums, famous for, existing trends, to enlarge there sales market's share, used to remember about exhibitions "at the last minute", high season, thoughtfulness, congress tourism, growing MICE market segment, hotel reservation, gaining popularity, big consulting company, average for Europe, the major bulk of congress-conference clients, insurance companies, average duration, charter flights, major resort cities, are not packed, doesn't require standard.

4. Give English equivalents to the following words and word combinations.

Согласно статистике по деловому туризму; специальные выставки; ярмарка; общеотраслевая выставка; общестроительная выставка; деревообработка; строительные материалы; существующий спрос; автосалон; дизайн; интерьер; мебель; растущий интерес;

особенно Китай; место проведения выставки; экзотические страны; популярные выставочные центры; особенно для экспортирующих компаний; как минимум за год до проведения выставки; развивающиеся страны; заранее; места проведения конгрессов; согласно...; проводятся ежегодно; участники; привлекать; как отмечают специалисты; финансовые компании; фармацевтические компании; пользуются большим спросом; во время межсезонья; отличается от; реклама; стандартный турпакет.

5. Make word combinations, translate them and find them in the text.

exhibition	popular
travel	tourism
make	package
every	exhibitions
the most	trends
industry-specific	year
military	fairs
construction	art forums
wood	arrangements
particular	techniques
European	place
existing	promotion
third	processing
clock-	agencies
existing	demand
standard	types
travel	destinations

* * *

growing	tourism
especially	China
gaining	agents
exotic	importance
location	season
exporting	company
market	countries
last	popularity
high	minute
travel	capitals
congress	share

market	places
hotel	reservation
Congress	companies
Russian	interest
gaining	segment
consulting	of the exhibition

* * *

large	flights
held	annually
each	hotels
specialists	event
major	service
insurance	note
average	cities
typical	discounts
charter	duration
best	Congresses
resort	season
travel	companies
high	bulk
low	demand
offer	destinations

6. Match the synonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

visit	famous
destination	every year
show	place
seminar	workshop
annual	attend
segment	technique
method	sector
popular	exhibitions

7. Match the antonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

general	industry-specific
gain	low season
high season	highly developed
developing	less

more	import
major	lose
export	demand
supply	minor

8. Make a summary of the text.

9. Agree or disagree with the following statements. Give your reasons.

For agreement use:

That's right.

I am with you here.

I fully agree.

Definitely.

Exactly.

For disagreement use:

I think that's wrong.

I am not with you here.

I don't really agree.

Definitely not.

On the contrary.

- The demand on exhibition tourism has declined recently.
- The most popular exhibitions are computer and military fairs.
- Professionals are interested in general construction exhibitions.
- Among the most popular European destinations the leaders are France and Great Britain.
- German and Italy provide up to 70 % of all world exhibitions.
- The primary attraction in Switzerland is the auto show in Geneva.
- The location of exhibition is very important for clients.
- China is not a very popular exhibition location.
- Russian businessmen used to plan visiting exhibitions in advance.
- Congress tourism is part of exhibition tourism.
- Congress tourism is a growing sector of MICE market segment.
- More than 100 large congresses, conferences and workshops are held in Moscow annually.
- Average duration of a conference or congress is from two to four days.
- Popular resorts are not popular congress destinations.

10. Discuss:

- The structure of demand on exhibition and congress tourism.
- What countries are popular exhibitions and congresses locations and why.
- The time of high season for exhibition and congress tourism.
- Reasons for Russian capitals to be gaining popularity as congress places.

5. The structure of a standard travel package.
6. The industries and types of companies that take part in the most popular exhibitions and congresses.
7. The average duration for exhibitions, fairs or congresses and the reasons for that.

11. **Speak about... the differences between individual business travel, incentive tourism, conference tourism and exhibition tourism.**

12. **Explain why:**

- The demand on exhibition tourism is growing.
- Congress tourism is a growing market segment.
- Resort places become popular congress locations during the low season.

DIALOGUE 3

Vocabulary

to arrange a meeting — организовать встречу

Read and dramatize the dialogue. Find out the meanings of the underlined words and phrases.

ARRANGE A MEETING

- A: Good morning.
 B: Oh, hello. Could I speak to Mrs. Howard, please?
 A: Yes, speaking.
 B: Oh, hello, Mrs. Howard, it's John Cudmore from BF here.
 A: Oh, hello. How are you?
 B: I'm fine, thanks. I'm just ringing to arrange our meeting.
 A: Oh, yes. How about sometime next week?
 B: Well, I'm afraid I have to go to Paris tomorrow, and I'll be away till the weekend. But how about Tuesday or may be Thursday the 24th? Is that convenient for you?
 A: Um, let me just look in my diary.

13. Role play.

Student A	Student B
<i>Call your colleague. Arrange a meeting with him/her.</i>	<i>Receive a call from your colleague. Agree to arrange a meeting with him/her.</i>

Swap roles.

DIALOGUE 4

Read and dramatize the dialogue. Find out the meanings of the underlined words and phrases.

INVITING

1.

- Patrick: What are you doing this evening, Jules?
 Jules: I don't have anything planned.
 Patrick: I'm going out for a meal with some people from our Toronto branch. Why don't you come with us?
 Jules: Great. I'd love to.
 Patrick: Well, it's half past six now. Let's meet in the bar at eight o'clock.
 Jules: Fine. That'll give me time to get changed.

2.

- Patrick: Would you like to join us for a drink, Henri?
 Henri: I'd love to but I'm a bit tired. It's been a long day.
 Patrick: Some other time maybe?
 Henri: Yes, why not Saturday evening?

14. Role play.

Student A	Student B
<i>Call your friend and invite him/her to go out with you to/for... (choose the place and occasion). Discuss time and place. Use phrases from the dialogues.</i>	<i>Receive a call from your friend who wants to invite you to go out with him/her. Thank for the invitation. Refuse politely. Explain the reason. Suggest going some other time. Use phrases from the dialogues.</i>

Call your friend and invite him/her to go out with you to/for... (choose the place and occasion). Discuss time and place. Use phrases from the dialogues

Receive a call from your friend who wants to invite you to go out with him/her. Thank for the invitation. Accept politely and willingly. Discuss time and place. Use phrases from the dialogues.

Swap roles.

DIALOGUE 5

Read and dramatize the dialogue. Find out the meanings of the underlined words and phrases.

PHONE CALL

- Receptionist:** Parnell Investment Company.
Frank: Hello, I'd like to speak to Wally, please.
Receptionist: And your name, sir?
Frank: This is Frank, Frank Baxter.
Receptionist: Just moment, Mr. Baxter.
Mr. Parnell: Yes, what is it?
Receptionist: Frank Baxter is on line two.
Mr. Parnell: Tell him, I'll call him back.
Receptionist: Yes, Mr. Parnell. I'm sorry, Mr. Baxter, Mr. Parnell is out right now. Can he call you back?
Frank: No ... no, that's all right. Tell him I'll call back later. Thank you.

15. Mr. Baxter called other friends. Dramatize the conversations using the phrases below.

- I'm sorry, Mr. Baxter, Mr. Franklin is away on business. Can I take a message?
- I'm sorry, Mr. Baxter, Mr. Trilling is in a meeting. Would you like to leave your name and number?

16. Role play.

Student A	Student B
You want to call a person you need to talk to. But the person can not talk to you right now. Apologize and	You are a secretary. A person wants to speak to your boss but you boss doesn't want to speak to him/her.

ask the person to call you back, leave you name and number.

Refuse politely. Make up reasons why your boss can not speak to him/her without saying that he doesn't want to.

You want to call a person you need to talk to. But the person can not talk to you right now. Ask when you can call again.

You are a secretary. A person wants to speak to your boss but you boss doesn't want to speak to him/her. Refuse politely. Make up reasons why your boss can not speak to him/her without saying that he doesn't want to.

Swap roles.

DIALOGUE 6

Read and dramatize the dialogue. Find out the meanings of the underlined words and phrases.

MESSAGE

- Jeff:** Hello?
Pat: Hello, is Annie there?
Jeff: No, I'm sorry, she stepped out. I'm expecting her back in about half an hour.
Pat: Jeff, this is Pat.
Jeff: Oh, hi Pat.
Pat: Oh, hi, how are you doing? Oh, look, could you give Annie a message for me?
Jeff: Sure. Let me find a piece of paper here. Wait a second. Oh, I got one. What's the message?
Pat: I'm supposed to be meeting Annie for lunch at Greenbeans restaurant. Would you ask her to look and check if she has my French-Italian dictionary? And if she does — tell her to bring it along.
Jeff: OK, bring your French-Italian dictionary if she has it.
Pat: Right. Thanks, Jeff. How are you doing?
Jeff: Oh, not bad. My knee hurts a lot after we had played tennis too much, how are you?
Pat: Good. I'm busy now. I'm very busy in the office. Oh, Jeff. I almost forgot. Look, I'm running a little late this morning. Tell Annie that I can't meet her until 1:30.

Jeff: OK. 1:30 I'll tell her.

Pat: Good, look, I got another call on another line. I've got to go.

Jeff: OK. Have a good day! Bye.

Pat: Bye! Thanks.

17. Role play.

Student A	Student B
<i>Call your friend and leave a message because he/she is out.</i>	<i>Receive a phone call and take a message for your colleague.</i>

Swap roles.

DIALOGUE 7

Read and dramatize the dialogue.

A CALL FROM THE BOSS

Louise: Andy, this is Louise. Can you hear me?

Andy: Are you on the mobile?

Louise: Yes, I'm on my way to London. But there's a lot of traffic. Listen, don't forget to book my hotel in Lisbon for tomorrow.

Andy: I've already done it. I booked it yesterday.

Louise: Great. Have you picked up my tickets yet?

Andy: No, I haven't been to the travel agent's yet. I'm going this afternoon. But I've confirmed the flight times with the travel agent. You're leaving at 8.30.

Louise: Have you rented a car for me?

Andy: Yes, I have. You pick it up at the airport.

Louise: What about the fax to Brazil?

Andy: I've finished it but I haven't sent it yet.

Louise: And the report? Have you written it yet?

Andy: Yes, it's on your desk. Don't forget to sign it before you leave.

Louise: Great. Oh, I nearly forgot! The most important thing of all! Have you found my passport?

Andy: Yes, luckily! It was in your drawer under some documents.

Louise: Brilliant. That's it then. See you later. Bye.

Andy: Bye.

18. Role play. HAVE YOU DONE THAT?

Student A	Student B
<i>Call your friend or your mother or your secretary; ask him/her if he/she has done something you asked to do before.</i>	<i>Answer your friend or son/daughter or boss. Give details of what you have done and give reasons why you haven't done something and tell him/her when you will do that.</i>
<i>(Use Present Perfect when asking)</i>	<i>(Use Present Perfect or Past Simple or Future Simple where necessary)</i>

Swap roles.

19. Translate into English.

ДЕЛОВОЙ ТУРИЗМ: ЗАРУБЕЖНЫЙ ОПЫТ

Мальта — одно из самых удачных мест в Европе для проведения конференций и конгрессов. На острове 12 бизнес-отелей уровня 5* на 4550 мест и 12 бизнес-отелей 4* на 5650 мест, в которых могут проходить крупные конференции, а также много других гостиниц высокого класса с прекрасными возможностями для деловых людей. Большинство этих отелей расположены неподалеку друг от друга, и даже очень большие группы участников конгрессов можно легко расселить в нескольких соседних отелях высокого класса. При этом Мальта очень компактна, переезды отнимают мало времени, поэтому программа конференций может быть очень насыщенной. Деловая часть встреч прекрасно дополняется экскурсиями и всевозможными инсентив-программами, например, обрядом посвящения в мальтийские рыцари или ужином в старинном замке с театрализованным рыцарским турниром. И конечно, огромным преимуществом проведения конференций на Мальте является наш прекрасный климат и возможности для всех видов морского отдыха.

Российский рынок инсентив-туризма в своем становлении прошел несколько этапов. До конца 90-х он в основном представлял собой «поощрительную» часть выездных конференций, включавшую экскурсионные программы, отдых у моря и активное застолье. Теперь это самостоятельные поездки с целью поощрения и мотивации отдельных сотрудников или сплочения коллектива.

20. Write an essay on the topic "Business travel in ..." (choose and city or country).

PROJECT WORK

Work out a week-long **business travel program** for a group of businessmen working in... (choose any industry). Include meetings, visiting exhibitions, conferences or congresses and sightseeing. Work out the itinerary comprised of one or several cities or countries. Make all necessary travel arrangements including visas, tickets, transfers and accommodations. Present your program to your clients.

Unit 7. Jobs And Careers At Tourism And Hospitality Industries

GROUP TALK

- Have you thought of the career you want to have? What is it? Why? What are your goals?
- What are your plans to achieve your goals?



TEXT 1

Vocabulary

- buzzword** — модное словечко, специальный термин, произносимый с целью произвести впечатление на дилетантов
- solely** — единственно, исключительно, только, самостоятельно
- booming** — резкий подъем, расширяющийся, процветающий
- to expand** — расширяться
- council** — совет
- responsible for** — нести ответственность, отвечать за...
- employment** — занятость
- human resources** — человеческие ресурсы
- incredibly** — невероятно, чрезвычайно, крайне
- diverse** — разнообразный, многообразный
- to comprise** — включать, содержать
- conventions** — конвенция, собрание, съезд
- beverage** — напиток
- ancillary** — вспомогательный, добавочный, служебный
- piece** — *зд*: статья
- consolidation** — объединение, укрепление, слияние
- mode** — образ действий, вид, состояние
- to merge** — поглощать, сливать(ся), соединять(ся)
- to acquire** — приобретать
- career** — карьера

exposure — подвергание какому-то воздействию
facets — грань, аспект, сторона
relative — относительный
job security — гарантия занятости у данного работодателя, обеспеченность работой
obvious — очевидный
option — выбор, альтернатива, возможный вариант
patience — терпение
flexibility — гибкость
interpersonal skills — коммуникабельность, умение общаться, налаживать контакты с людьми
service — обслуживание
first and foremost — прежде всего, в первую очередь, во-первых
sensitivity — чувствительность, восприимчивость, способность к быстрому реагированию
awareness — осведомленность, информированность
executive — *зд*: директор
MBA = Master of Business Administration — степень магистра в сфере бизнеса
to transfer — перемещать, переносить, переводить
experience — опыт, жизненный опыт
academic credential — аттестат, диплом об образовании
advanced studies — занятия, курс повышенного типа для продолжающих обучение
pros and cons — за и против
benefit — выгода
gratis — бесплатно, даром
actually — действительно
downside — отрицательная сторона, обратная сторона, нижняя сторона
especially — особенно
to work long hours — работать много времени, больше 40 часов в неделю, работать сверхурочно, работать в вечернее время и выходные
notice — извещение, сообщение, уведомление, предупреждение
ethics — этика
to require — требовать
profound — сильный, глубокий, основательный
implications — последствия, результаты
profit — прибыль
community — сообщество, общество, община
fair — справедливый

wage — зарплата
to exploit — эксплуатировать
environment — окружающая среда

Read and translate the text.

CAREERS IN TRAVEL AND TOURISM

Globalization is not a buzzword solely associated with international business. It has translated into a booming new career possibility: expanded services in the travel and tourism industry.

According to the World Travel and Tourism Council (WTTC), the industry "already is responsible for more than 10 percent of global employment." Dr. Brian White, director of the WTTC's Human Resources Center in British Columbia, says the field is incredibly diverse and comprised of seven major areas:

- Airlines/transport;
- Conferences and conventions;
- Arts and culture;
- Hotels, food and beverage;
- Ecotourism;
- Outdoor recreation;
- Ancillary services associated with tourism.

Industry Trends

With all this opportunity, where should you concentrate your efforts? Focusing on the market's demands may lead to more job openings.

On the corporate side, according to a piece on the industry trends online, the travel and tourism industry is "in consolidation mode." This means that smaller companies are merging or being acquired by the big players like American Express, Marriott and Carlson Wagonlit. So it might make sense to begin your career with one of the larger corporations, where you can gain exposure to many facets of the business while having relative job security.

An obvious trend is the increase in Internet service. The Web has created new and different career options for those interested in travel careers. Individuals can work for sites like CheapTickets.com, Orbitz and Travelocity.com.

Additionally, journalists may see more travel writing opportunities available in the traditional magazines like *Conde Nast Traveller* and *National Geographic Traveller*, as well as online publications.

Characteristics for Success

You must have patience, flexibility and excellent interpersonal skills. This is a service industry, first and foremost. Cultural sensitivity and awareness are critical, as tourism professionals deal with different countries and cultures.

Senior level executives generally have MBAs and develop skills and competencies that can be transferred across sectors. Mid-level professionals need a mix of practical experience and academic credentials, according to Dr. White, who also teaches in the field. For example, individuals might work full-time in the travel sector while going part-time for an advanced certificate in travel and tourism.

Pros and Cons

One obvious benefit of working in the travel and tourism industry is the opportunity to actually hop on a plane and see many locales at low prices, or even gratis. Another benefit for many is the fact that it is an international field that changes along with global trends.

One of the downsides to the business, especially the hotel and restaurant side, is the long hours. Management must often work evenings and weekends. Individuals are often asked to move to a new location without much notice.

Ethics and Tourism

Dr. White reminds us there is a strong set of ethics required in the field of tourism, noting the industry has profound economic implications for a country's economy and people. It is important for individuals to consider their responsibilities, says Dr. White. Tourism is about more than making a profit; it involves benefiting local communities, creating jobs that provide fair wages and not exploiting the environment.

By Nina Segal

TEXT WORK

- 1. Pronounce correctly and transcribe. Consult the dictionary if necessary.**

Buzzword, council, human, resources, incredibly, diverse, ancillary, piece, merging, to acquire, career, security, obvious, increase, patience, flexibility, excellent, interpersonal, service, first, foremost, awareness, senior, executive, experience, credentials, might, while, gratis, actually,

especially, ethics, required, profound, communities, fair, wages, exploiting, environment.

2. Answer the questions.

1. What impact has globalization on tourism industry?
2. How many people does the tourism industry employ?
3. What is tourism business comprised of?
4. What should you concentrate on to be successful?
5. What is the trend in tourism industry on the corporate side?
6. Why is it better to start a career with one of the larger corporations?
7. What is going on with the Internet services?
8. Which way does this change influence different career options?
9. What career opportunities does the Internet offer?
10. What characteristics do you need for success?
11. What education does a senior manager need?
12. What are the benefits of working in the travel and tourism industry?
13. What are the downsides of the business?
14. What ethic principles are required in the field of tourism? Why?
15. What is tourism business all about?

3. Give Russian equivalents to the following words and word combinations. Find and translate sentences with them in the text.

Buzzword, booming new career possibility, expanded services, World Travel and Tourism Council, global employment, Human Resources Center, conferences and conventions, outdoor recreation, with all this opportunity, more job openings, on the corporate side, a piece, in consolidation mode, make sense, gain exposure to many facets of the business, career options, individuals can work for sites, additionally, online publications, a service industry, first and foremost, cultural sensitivity, senior level executives, MBAs, transferred across sectors, work full-time, advanced certificate in travel and tourism, obvious benefit, hop on a plane, downsides to the business, long hours, without much notice, a strong set of ethics required, profound economic implications, consider their responsibilities, benefiting local communities, fair wages, not exploiting the environment.

4. Give English equivalents to the following words and word combinations.

Ассоциируется только с...; международный бизнес; согласно...; отвечает за...; очень разнообразный; состоит из; искусство и культура; гостиницы; еда и напитки; ассоциируется с туризмом; направления развития индустрии; сконцентрировать свои усилия; требования рынка; может привести к...; слияние компаний; приобретаются крупными компаниями; начать карьеру; относительная уверенность в сохранении работы у данного работодателя; очевидная тенденция; увеличение Интернет услуг; традиционные журналы; личные качества, необходимые для успеха; терпение; гибкость; коммуникабельность; осведомленность; иметь дело с...; навыки и компетенции; профессионалы среднего звена; смесь практического опыта и академического образования; работать неполный рабочий день; за и против; возможность; увидеть много мест за низкую плату или даже бесплатно; другое преимущество; изменяется в ногу с глобальными тенденциями; работать вечером и в выходные; переехать на новое место; напоминать нам; экономика страны; получать прибыль; создавать рабочие места.

5. Make word combinations, translate them and find them in the text.

international	with tourism
career	trends
tourism	services
global	efforts
human	recreation
incredibly	demands
outdoor	business
ancillary	openings
associated	career
industry	possibility
concentrate your	side
market's	diverse
job	industry
on the corporate	mode
consolidation	employment
big players	make sense
begin	resources

* * *

larger	magazines
gain	opportunities
facets of	publications
job	careers
internet	corporations
career	skills
travel	industry
writing	options
traditional	exposure
online	sensitivity
interpersonal	sectors
service	service
cultural	the business
tourism	professionals
different	countries
senior	level
transferred across	security

* * *

mid-level	communities
practical	professionals
advanced	a profit
obvious	responsibilities
downsides	experience
restaurant	credentials
work	economy
new	implications
much	notice
academic	jobs
economic	certificate
country's	wages
consider their	location
making	benefit
local	evenings
creating	the environment
fair	to the business
exploiting	side

6. Match the synonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

- | | |
|-------------|----------------|
| solely | article |
| business | trade |
| possibility | over the world |
| council | drink |
| global | opportunity |
| hop | work |
| beverage | focus |
| concentrate | jump |
| job opening | various |
| acquire | board |
| piece | salary |
| diverse | alone |
| wage | location |
| internet | buy |
| job | web |
| locate | job option |

7. Match the antonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

- | | |
|--------------|---------------|
| diverse | decrease |
| major | full time |
| outdoor | lose |
| gain | downside |
| supply | indoor |
| more | similar |
| increase | high |
| senior level | entry level |
| part-time | demand |
| low | international |
| benefit | less |
| local | minor |

8. Form antonyms using negative prefixes *un-*, *in-*, *il-*, *im-*, *ir-*, *dis-*, *mis-*. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Possible, fair, responsibility, to lead, interesting.

9. Retell the text.

10. Choose the right word from the list below. Mind the forms of the words. Translate the article.

CARVE OUT A CAREER IN CATERING

Weekends _____ many workers a much-needed chance to relax and recharge — unless they _____ in the catering business. That’s because Saturdays and Sundays are usually prime _____ for catered events. In fact, for catering workers, many of whom are students and stay-at-home _____ in need of flexible schedules, weekend and _____ hours are made to order.

So if you like to mingle with _____, prefer a flexible work schedule and favor an active work _____, the catering industry may be right for you.

A Flexible Job

Catering jobs come in all _____ shapes and sizes, according to Bill Hansen, president of Miami-based Bill’s Catering and Leading _____ of America. “There are jobs in _____ halls, off-premises caterers that cater in a variety of arenas, as well as home-party caterers,” he says.

What’s more, the catering industry offers hourly workers much more _____ than the restaurant business does. Once you begin to work for a catering firm, you can pick and _____ when you want to work,” he says, adding that being available at a moment’s notice can _____ you land assignments.

Stranger, parent, caterer, banquet, time, evening, environment, flexibility, to help, to offer, to work, to choose, different.

11. Give missing derivatives (nouns, verbs, adverbs and adjectives) from these words and translate them.

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
	employment		—
to travel			—
			additionally
		possible	

12. Fill in the blanks with prepositions from the last below where necessary. Translate the article.

THE RIGHT INGREDIENTS

Stamina is a key ingredient ... success ... catering. "There is a lot ... schlepping, walking and heavy lifting," warns Hansen.

"You spend a lot ... hours ... your feet," says Feinstein. "These are not 9-...-5 jobs. Your call time [the time you need to appear] could be 6 a.m."

... the same time, a benefit associated ... this type ... work is free food. "You definitely get fed," she adds. "Sometimes you get ... really good food, and other times you get ... the staff meal."

Job seekers should pay close attention ... personal grooming. As is true ... the food being served, looks matter. When walking ... an interview, look like you are applying ... a job and not the role ... a guest ... a party.

At, to, in, on, of, for, with.

13. Put the verbs in the right forms. Translate the article.

HOW TO FIND A JOB

The most important piece of advice to job seekers with minimal experience (to be) (to be) honest. Experience in this field (to be) not something you can (to fake). Someone (to see) through you. Instead, (to approach) potential employers with a can-do attitude. "Offer to do anything to get your foot in the door," the seasoned people (to advise). "This (to include) washing dishes, food prep and being a gofer." This (to be) also a great way (to see) if the catering business (to be) right for you.

"Be willing (to make) a little bit less (to start) and you probably (to get) a break," they (to add).

If you (to prepare) (to start) as a server, for instance, you (to have) a pretty good chance at landing a long-term job in the field without formal training or experience, because some caterers would rather (to train) someone (to do) things their way.

14. Agree or disagree with the following statements. Give your reasons.

For agreement use:

I entirely agree.

I think it is so.

I'm with you here.

As far as I know it's true.

For disagreement use:

I don't really agree.

I don't think so.

I think you are mistaken here.

As far as I know that's not right.

1. Globalization has no impact on international business.
2. The tourism industry is incredibly diverse.
3. The industry is comprised of ten major areas.
4. Travel and tourism industry is in consolidation mode now.
5. The increase of Internet services offers more job opportunities.
6. Tourism industry is a service industry.
7. Tourism professionals must be patient and tolerant.
8. Travel business is an international business field.
9. One of the benefits of the restaurant business is long hours.
10. Tourism has no economic implications for a country and its people.
11. Tourism is all about making a profit.

15. Discuss:

1. The impact globalization has on tourism industry.
2. The trends that help you find a good job in travel and tourism industry.
3. The impact Internet development has on the travel and tourism industry.
4. Characteristics you need for success in travel and tourism business.
5. Education needed for senior management and mid-level professionals in the travel and tourism industry.
6. Economic implications of travel and tourism industry for countries and people.

16. Divide into two groups: discuss pros and cons of travel and tourism industry.

COVER LETTER OR LETTER OF APPLICATION

17. Read and translate the cover letter.

12 October, 2005

Human Resources Department
Rembrandt Travel, Ltd.
76 Fulton Street,
London N5 KL4.

To Whom It May Concern,

I wish to apply for the position of Assistant Manager, advertised in the "The Sunday Times" on October 11, 2005.

As you will see from the enclosed resume, I have two years experience working for different hotel groups in Russia and the USA. During this period I gained an intimate knowledge of the hotel industry in both countries and I feel I'm ready for this new challenge.

At present I am taking the English for Tourism course at William & Mary College.

My native language is Russian, and I also speak good French and basic Spanish.

Consider me for an interview.

Yours sincerely,
J. Shestak
Julia Shestak

18. Write your own letter of application to the desired position. Use the pattern.

Date

Address

Greeting (Dear Mr./Mrs. Simpson, or Dear Sir/Madam, or To Whom It May Concern, depending on the situation)

Your objective and short description of your experience and/or qualifications that make you the best candidate for this position. Make notice of the enclosed resume or CV. (max 2—3 sent.)

Reference to the source of information or how you came to know about the particular open position. (Give name, date and issue number for the newspaper; or full address for the web site; or full name of the person who told you about the particular position.)

Consider me for an interview. (A necessary phrase to be used in cover letter or letter of application.)

Closing (e.g. Yours faithfully, *or*
Yours sincerely, *or* Yours truly,
Your signature in ink
Your full name (Firstname Lastname)

RÉSUMÉ

19. Read and translate the resume.

Julia Shestak

83 St. James St, Williamsbours, VA, USA

Phone: 1-640-345-5527

E-mail: julia1@yahoo.com

Objective: I apply for the position of Assistant Manager. I have a two years experience of hotel work and possess an intimate knowledge of the hotel industry in Russia and the USA.

Education:

1998—2003, South-Russia State University of Economics and Service, Rostov-on-Don, Russia, Department of Service, the Chair of Social and Cultural Service and Tourism, Honour Degree Diploma. Majors: Hospitality Industry, English.

1988—1998, Secondary school # 5, Rostov-on-Don, Russia. Certificate of Maturity with Honours (Silver medal).

Experience:

April 2005 — present, Holiday Inn Hotel, Jamestown, USA. Responsible for improving administrative methods, general supervision of the front desk work and housekeeping staff work.

Manage groups of receptionists (4 people) and housekeepers (12 people), do scheduling, maintain productivity.

May 2004 — April 2005, Holiday Inn Hotel, Jamestown, USA. Front desk receptionist. Responsible for reservations, check-ins and check-outs, room service, timely housekeeping, phone calls and assistance to hotel guests. Promoted to the position of the assistant manager.

June 2003 — May 2004, hotel "Moscow", Rostov-on-Don, Russia. Receptionist. Responsible for phone calls, reservations, check-ins and check-outs, housekeeping. Was offered a receptionist position at Holiday Inn.

January 2000 — May 2003, university library, South-Russia State University of Economics and Service, Rostov-on-Don, Russia, part-time position of a secretary. Duties: typing and filing correspondence, answering phone calls, sending and receiving faxes, general office work.

Interests: reading, tennis, swimming.

Languages: Russian (native), English (fluent), French (good), Spanish (basic).

Computer skills: advanced user of all Microsoft Office programs (Word, Excel, Power Point, Corel Draw, Visio, and Adobe Photoshop).

References available upon request.

20. Write you own resume using the following pattern and the example above.

Full name (Firstname Middle initial Lastname)

Address

Phone number

E-mail address

(in case you have two addresses, give both)

Winter address:

Dates to write to this address
(e.g. September — May)

Address of the place where you
live while studying

Summer address:

Dates to write to this address
(e.g. June — August)

Address of the place where
you live in summer or your
parents' address

Objective (max 1 sentence)

Education (in the reverse order, i.e. put last received education first)

Date of entering (year) — date of graduation (year) *or* present, name of the institution or high school, location, department and chair if applicable, major subjects studied, degree, type of the document received *or* “Diploma/Degree/Certificate expected in (date)”.

Working experience (in the reverse order, i.e. put last position first) Starting date (month, year) — date of leaving (month, year), name of the company, location, type of business if necessary, position(s) held, duties, promotions, awards if applicable, reasons for leaving.

Describe three last positions in detail, giving quantitative-qualitative characteristics; describe other positions briefly.

Volunteering work (if applicable)

Language skills (including level of proficiency for foreign languages e.g. basic, good, fluent; indicate the native language).

Computer skills (name computer programs you are familiar with, indicate the level of proficiency, e.g. literate, user, advanced user, professional programmer).

Interests and hobbies.

Achievements and awards/rewards.

References (names of people and their contact information) *or* “References available upon request” if the necessity of references was not mentioned in the job advertisement.

21. Speak about... things to be stressed in a resume.

22. Translate into English.

ГОТОВИМСЯ К СОБЕСЕДОВАНИЮ

Цель первой встречи с работодателем — показать, что навыки, знания и опыт соискателя как нельзя лучше соответствуют требованиям рассматриваемой позиции. Во время интервью необходи-

мо продемонстрировать знание профессии, компании и отрасли, к которой относится искомая позиция, желание кандидата работать именно в этой компании. Проводя интервью, работодатель проверяет коммуникативные навыки соискателя, уверенность в себе, мотивацию и инициативность.

Как подготовиться к интервью?

Первый шаг в подготовке к интервью — сбор сведений о компании, в которую вы идете на собеседование, и о людях, с которыми вам предстоит встретиться. Полезную информацию можно получить разными способами. Первый и самый доступный — знакомство с сайтом компании в Интернете. Кроме того, многие организации распространяют свои проспекты и рекламные брошюры. Попробуйте найти статьи о компании в газетах или журналах. Побеседуйте с человеком, работающим или работавшим в этой организации. От него можно узнать массу полезных вещей, но следует учитывать субъективную окраску таких рассказов.

Что желательно знать о компании, в которую вы идете на интервью:

- какие продукты или какие услуги предлагает;
- популярность предлагаемых направлений;
- какова история компании;
- стабилен ли состав сотрудников;
- имеет ли региональные представительства в России;
- кто основные конкуренты;
- входит ли в какое-либо более крупное объединение;
- с какими перевозчиками, страховщиками сотрудничает компания.

Также необходимо провести самоанализ и обдумать ответы на вопросы, которые вам могут быть заданы на собеседовании. Одни вопросы могут носить чисто практический характер («Готовы ли вы проводить 30 % времени в командировках?»), другие — преследовать цель оценить вашу мотивированность, определить круг ваших интересов, проверить профессиональную компетентность, осведомленность о компании и отрасли, умение быстро находить правильные решения.

23. Write an essay on the topic “My Future Career As I See It”.

TEXT 2

Vocabulary

dish room — *зд:* кухня
boardroom — зал заседаний совета директоров
hospitality — гостеприимство, индустрия гостеприимства
probably — возможно
to wait tables — обслуживать столики
prep = prepare/preparation — приготовить, приготовление
reward — награда
worth — стоит
lean — неприбыльный
newcomer — новичок
urban — городской
to top — возглавлять, быть сверху
hot — *зд:* актуальный, насущный, требующийся
chef — шеф-повар
PhD = Doctor of Philosophy — степень доктора наук
to consider — считать, думать, полагать
to gamble — играть в азартные игры
to pop up — появляться
to usher — усаживать, показывать места
usher — билетер
envy — зависть
essentially — существенно, по существу
rock band — рок группа
to obtain — получать
opening — вакансия
venue — (общественное) место
attitude — отношение
to land a position — получить должность
to break in — ворваться, попасть, прорваться
to pay dues — платить налоги, платить по счетам
to discourage — лишать мужества, приводить в уныние, удручать
dishwasher — посудомойщик
owner — владелец
to aspire — стремиться
a must — обязательное условие
entry-level job — работа начального уровня
to provide opportunities — предоставлять возможности

furthermore — более того
rapidly — быстро
to operate 24/7 — работать 24 часа в сутки семь дней в неделю
to recognize — понимать
to compete — соревноваться
to make adjustment — приспособиться
consecutive — последовательный
day off — выходной день
excessive — непомерный, чрезвычайный, чрезмерный
to work overtime — работать сверхурочно
burnout — изнеможение, истощение
detrimental — приносящий убыток, пагубный, вредный
to encourage — вдохновлять
to exemplify — показывать, являть собой пример, служить примером
to excel — превосходить, превышать, быть значительнее, отличаться
to advance — двигать(ся) вперед, продвигать(ся)
burger — гамбургер
joint — место, заведение
open mind — открытый, восприимчивый ум
bias — предубеждение, предвзятость, пристрастие
envision — представлять себе
store — магазин
to throw in — бросать, добавлять
cost — расходы
insurance — страховка
maintenance — техобслуживание
repair — ремонт
to whet the appetite — возбуждать аппетит
stock options — выплата зарплаты акциями предприятия
entertainment — развлечение

Read and translate the text.

HIT YOUR STRIDE IN HOSPITALITY

If you'd like to work in an industry where it's possible to go from the dish room to the boardroom, a career in hospitality may be right for you. You'll probably have to wait tables and prep a few meals in between, but the rewards are well worth the work.

And while the hospitality industry has kept itself lean over the past two years, there will be a growing number of opportunities for newcomers as the economy continues to grow. Urban areas tend to have more hospitality jobs than rural areas, with tourist meccas topping the list.

“People always have to eat,” says Gerald Fernandez, president of Providence, Rhode Island’s MultiCultural Foodservice & Hospitality Alliance (MFHA). “That gives you some job security.”

What’s Hot?

Service-oriented positions and chef jobs are currently on employers’ radars, according to Robert Bosselman, PhD, director of Florida State University’s Dedman School of Hospitality. Business clubs and private clubs, as well as colleges, schools and hospitals are good options to consider.

If you’re willing to take a gamble, consider working in the gaming industry. Casinos are popping up all over the country.

Need to get away from it all? Work at a major resort or on a cruise ship.

If you’re a sports enthusiast, you can root for your home team while ushering in the fans. And don’t forget the major arenas and stadiums. You will be the envy of all your friends when they find out you’re essentially getting paid to see your favorite rock band in concert.

Break In

So how does one go about obtaining a position in this industry? Bosselman notes that there are openings in hospitality venues in every city. Visit the restaurants, hotels, stadiums, etc., that you are interested in working for with a positive attitude and a good work ethic, and you’ll likely land a position.

Be Ready to Pay Your Dues

Don’t be discouraged if you’re offered a position as a dishwasher. Bosselman points out that some of today’s top chefs and restaurant owners started their careers washing dishes. If you aspire to move up in the kitchen or be a restaurant owner, back-of-the-house experience is a must.

Fernandez says entry-level jobs provide opportunities to learn the basics, such as sanitation and food preparation. Furthermore, “the industry is growing so rapidly, that if you are motivated and people-oriented, you will move up quickly within the organization,” he says.

Balancing Your Plate

The hospitality industry may operate 24/7, but that doesn’t mean you’ll be working around the clock. The industry recognizes that employees seek work/life balance. To compete for talent, companies are mak-

ing adjustments. Progressive hospitality organizations are giving employees consecutive days off and are not requiring excessive amounts of overtime. They recognize that employee burnout is equally detrimental to the employers and patrons as it is to the employees.

Seek Excellence

Fernandez encourages job seekers to look for an organization, company or brand that exemplifies what they would look for when dining out or staying in a lodging facility — cleanliness, positive attitude of the servers and inclusiveness, for instance. These are the types of places where you will most likely have opportunities to excel and advance.

Find a company that demonstrates excellence, even if it’s a burger joint. Organizations that focus on excellence usually pay attention to their employees’ needs.

Keep an Open Mind

Don’t let your biases get in the way. If you envision yourself driving around town in a new car, start applying for positions in the fast-food industry. Oak Brook, Illinois-based McDonald’s believes in promoting hourly workers into management positions. Stick around long enough, and you may be one of the many general store managers who receive company cars for business and personal use. The company will even throw in the cost of insurance, maintenance and repairs. If that doesn’t whet your appetite, maybe such benefits as stock options, medical and dental insurance, and the opportunity to participate in an entertainment program will do the trick.

By Roberta Chinsky Matuson

TEXT WORK

1. Pronounce correctly and transcribe. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Boardroom, reward, worth, lean, urban, chef, cruise, ushering, essentially, dues, discouraged, owner, to aspire, furthermore, excessive, burnout, detrimental, to encourage, exemplifies, to excel, burger, joint, biases, envision, enough, store, receive, throw, insurance, maintenance, repairs, whet, appetite, options, entertainment.

2. Answer the questions.

1. What is possible in hospitality industry?
2. What areas have more hospitality jobs than others?
3. What positions are currently on employer's radar?
4. Who can consider working in a casino?
5. What are your options if you are a sport enthusiast or music fan or want to get away from it all?
6. What do you need to do to find a job in this industry?
7. What can you achieve in this industry?
8. What is a must if you want to become a restaurant owner?
9. What opportunities do entry-level jobs provide?
10. What are the usual working hours in hospitality industry?
11. Does it mean you will work 24/7?
12. What do progressive hospitality organizations offer to their employees?
13. What do progressive hospitality organizations recognize?
14. What kind of organization should job seekers look for? Why?
15. What do you need to do when working in hospitality?
16. What positions do you need to apply for if you envision yourself driving around town in a new car?
17. What benefits can companies provide their employees?

3. Give Russian equivalents to the following words and word combinations. Find and translate sentences with them in the text.

Dishroom, boardroom, to wait tables, prep a few meals, kept itself lean, newcomers, tourist meccas, what's hot, service-oriented positions, on employers' radars, PhD, good options to consider, to take a gamble, to get away, major resort, sports enthusiast, root for your home team, ushering in the fans, openings in hospitality venues, a good work ethic, you'll likely land a position, to pay your dues, don't be discouraged, if you aspire, back-of-the-house experience, entry-level jobs, sanitation, people-oriented, balancing your plate, operate 24/7, you'll be working around the clock, employees seek, adjustments, progressive hospitality organizations, School of Hospitality, consecutive days off, excessive amounts of overtime, employee burnout, seek excellence, job seekers, brand that exemplifies, staying in a lodging facility, opportunities to excel and advance, burger joint, focus on excellence, to keep an open mind, biases, applying for positions, the fast-food industry, management posi-

tions, stick around long enough, medical and dental insurance, sabbatical program.

4. Give English equivalents to the following words and word combinations.

Если вам хочется; карьера в индустрии гостеприимства; как раз для вас; награда стоит этой работы; за последние два года; растущее число возможностей; городские районы; сельские районы; появляться (2); возглавлять список; работа шеф-повара; деловые клубы; игровая индустрия; по всей стране; круизное судно; главные арены и стадионы; вызывать зависть у друзей; узнать (обнаружить); вам действительно платят; любимая рок группа на концерте; посетить ресторан; с положительным настроением (настроеном); если вам предложили; должность посудомойщика; указывать; владелец ресторана; сделать карьеру; предоставлять возможности; узнать основу; приготовление пищи; более того; отрасль развивается так быстро; внутри организации; работать 24 часа в сутки семь дней в неделю; это не значит, что...; баланс жизни и работы; соревноваться в привлечении талантов; приносящий убытки работодателям и владельцам; искать организацию; чистота; например (2); обращать внимание на нужды сотрудников; не позволять; вмешиваться (мешать); если вы представляете себя...; разъезжать по городу; продвижение по службе; почасовики (сотрудники, работающие за почасовую оплату); менеджер магазина; получить машину компании; стоимость страховки, техобслуживания и ремонта; удовлетворить аппетит; выплата зарплаты акциями; возможность участвовать; сделают свое дело.

5. Make word combinations, translate them and find them in the text.

dish	number
career	areas
right	room
wait	meccas
prep	industry
well worth	the list
hospitality	a gamble
growing	the work
rural	in hospitality
tourist	positions
topping	resort

service-oriented	a few meals
chef	ship
employers'	for you
to take	jobs
major	radars
cruise	tables

* * *

sports	ethic
home	chefs
major	attitude
getting	band
rock	owners
positive	jobs
work	paid
top	enthusiast
restaurant	opportunities
entry-level	days off
provide	preparation
food	so rapidly
growing	team
employees	seek
work/life	balance
consecutive	arenas

* * *

excessive	amounts
job	long enough
lodging	insurance
positive	workers
opportunities	seekers
demonstrates	yourself
burger	managers
pay	attention
envision	facility
hourly	cars
stick around	attitude
store	to excel
company	options
stock	excellence
dental	joint

6. Match the synonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

prep	understand
gaming industry	obtain
pop up	for example
get	prepare
venue	appear
cook	place
move up	chef
participate	shop
employee	show
seek	worker
demonstrate	make a career
recognize	prevent
for instance	take part
store	look for
get in the way	gambling industry

7. Match the antonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

urban	minor
top	senior level
major	working day
employer	bottom
detrimental	outside
positive	beneficial
entry-level	rural
within	employee
day off	public
private	negative

8. Make a summary of the text.

9. Choose the right word from the list below. Mind the forms of the words. Translate the article.

CONCIERGE CAREERS

Are you the person that _____ calls for help when searching for hard-to-find items? Do friends and family members always contact you for _____ recommendations? You could get

paid to do this; in _____, such a role is known as that of a _____ — French for “keeper of the keys.”

No two days in the life of a concierge are the _____. “There is so much variety in our _____,” says Stephanie Leese, a hotel’s assistant chief concierge, in Chicago. “Our days are spent reacting to _____ requests, as well as creating, _____ and executing an experience that will delight our clients. When we are not at our _____, we are out scouting for new recommendations or personally thanking our contacts for _____ our guests.”

According to Sara-Ann Kasner, Minneapolis-based president and _____ of the National Concierge Association, concierges are _____ for filling “any request that is legal, _____ and appropriate.” Some days might involve tracking down lost airline _____ or picking up jewelry for a client from a local retailer. You might even find yourself arranging for a rare _____ of wine to be delivered to your client’s customer 10,000 miles away. Other duties include recommending restaurants, area _____ and transportation services to hotel guests.

Incoming, assisting, developing, restaurant, hotels, posts, attractions, tickets, work, everyone, concierge, founder, bottle, ethical, responsible, same.

10. Give missing derivatives (nouns, verbs, adverbs and adjectives) from these words and translate them.

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
	excellence		
to encourage			
		excessive	
to continue			

11. Fill in the blanks with prepositions from the last below where necessary. Translate the article.

NOT A 9-TO-5 JOB

... the hotel business, you will definitely need to work nights and weekends. You also need to make yourself as invaluable ... the organiza-

tion as possible. You will need to join associations and travel ... your area to keep your network and information date.

A good hotel manager spends her off-hours looking ... the city ... her clients’ point ... view. She notes such details as how many steps it takes to get ... one location ... another and all kinds ... additional information she thinks her clients need to know. For example, if a client wants to try a new restaurant ... town located ... an area ... transition, she wants to be sure she tells him that before she sends him ... that direction.

In, to, at, of, up, from, throughout.

12. Agree or disagree with the following statements. Give your reasons.

For agreement use:

Yes, I think so.

I’d like to think so.

I quite agree with you.

That’s absolutely right.

Of course it is.

For disagreement use:

I don’t think so.

I’m afraid I’m not with you here.

I disagree.

That’s not true.

Nonsense.

- Hospitality industry has been very profitable over the last two years.
- There is a growing number of opportunities for newcomers in hospitality.
- Rural areas have as many job opportunities in hospitality as the urban areas.
- Service-oriented positions are in high demand.
- You can get paid to see your favorite rock band in concert.
- Positive attitude will never help you in finding a job.
- Be discouraged if you are offered a position as a dishwasher.
- Some of today’s top chefs and restaurant owners started their careers washing dishes.
- Hospitality industry is growing very rapidly.
- You will be working around the clock in hospitality.
- Progressive hospitality organizations offer their employees a lot of benefits.
- Progressive hospitality organizations are requiring excessive amounts of overtime.
- Promoting hourly workers into management positions is a common practice in hospitality.
- A hospitality company can give you a new car for your own.

13. Discuss:

1. In hospitality it is possible to make a career very fast.
2. It is possible to go from the dish room to the boardroom in hospitality.
3. Business clubs and private clubs, as well as colleges, schools and hospitals are good options to consider.
4. It is difficult to find a job in hospitality.
5. Back-of-the-house experience is a must if you want to become a restaurant owner.
6. Entry-level jobs provide opportunities to learn the basics.
7. The hospitality industry operates 24/7.
8. Job seekers need to look for an organization, company or brand that exemplifies what they would look for when dining out or staying in a lodging facility themselves.
9. Keep an open mind and don't let your biases get in the way.
10. You need to work long enough to be promoted.

CURRICULUM VITAE (CV)**14. Read and translate a CV. Discuss it with your partners.**

It is usually used by the candidates on the senior positions in management staff or for working abroad. Your prospective employer wants to get the detailed information. Usually you provide him with a photo, your detailed address, telephone number, personal and passport details and a full characteristic of your education and qualifications.

Francois CRONJE CV

Tel	083.999.6965 all hours 041.581.1970 home
Address:	7 Villiers Street Walmer 6070 Port Elizabeth
Email	frcronje@yahoo.com
BORN	26 December 1985 in Paris, France
GENDER	Male
NATIONALITY	French
LANGUAGES	
Fluent:	French, Russian, English
Basic:	Chinese
OBJECTIVE:	position in management staff

Highlights of qualifications:

- business oriented; able to understand and execute broad corporate policy,
- strength in market analyses and advertising strategy,
- effective in facilitating communication between employees,
- proven ability of both team work and individual work,
- successful in negotiating.

EDUCATION

2002 Moscow secondary school # 155, Certificate of Maturity with Honours.

2006 (diploma expected in May) M.B.A. (Master of Business Administration): I.N.S.E.A.D. (European Institute of Business Administration), London, England

Major: Marketing

WORK EXPERIENCE

Summer 2002: Hilton Hotel, London, England, concierge (full time).

Sept 2002-present: part time jobs at Hilton Hotel, London, England. Positions experienced: concierge, porter, bellboy, housekeeping, maintenance, front desk. Goal: to try every position to experience the life of a hotel from inside.

COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT WORK

2000—2002: as a high school pupil, participated in environmental protection school group, headed the project "Make our school green and clean".

2002-present: volunteering work for "Adopt an Animal" program of London Zoo. Hand out leaflets and put up advertising signs in the neighbourhood one day a month.

GOAL

I have good knowledge of marketing and management, modern trends and developments in the hotel industry, as well as some practical experience in this field. After graduation I would like to apply my knowledge and will to develop hospitality industry in this region and to support the hotel successful in the highly competitive market of nowadays.

References

Mr. Alexander P. IVANOV — PRINCIPAL
Moscow secondary school # 155

34 Volodarskogo St., Moscow, Russia
 Tel: school 7—095—673—1510 cell 7—095—200—1602
Dr. Herman Steyn
 Department of Marketing and Management
 European Institute of Business Administration, London, England
 Tel: 044-925-4133

15. Write your own CV using the above one as a pattern.
16. Explain why employers want to read candidate's resume or CV first and only then to speak to the candidate in person.

DIALOGUE

Read, translate and dramatize the dialogue.

INTERVIEW

- Manager:** Now, have you worked in a pub before?
Candidate: Well, I haven't worked in a pub, but I've worked in a restaurant.
Manager: Ah, good, and when was that?
Candidate: Three years ago.
Manager: And what did you do, exactly?
Candidate: I worked as a waiter.

INTERVIEW

17. Here are some questions candidates are often asked at the interview. Think of more questions an employer can ask a potential employee. Discuss the questions with your group.
1. Tell me a few words about yourself.
 2. What is your education? Why did you choose this major?
 3. Tell me please about your working experience. Where did you work before? How long did you work there? What were your duties? Why did you leave?
 4. What is your current position?
 5. What are your duties?
 6. How long have you been doing this?

7. Why do you want to change?
8. What was the most rewarding experience in your life? Why? Describe it please.
9. What is your greatest achievement to date?
10. What was the most challenging experience in your life? How did you deal with the challenge?
11. How do you usually solve problems?
12. Do you like working with people?
13. What personality features do you like in people? What features don't you like in people?
14. What is your strongest personal characteristic?
15. What is the weakest point of your character?
16. Why do you want to take this position? Why do you want to work for us?
17. How do you usually deal with stress? Are you able to work under constant pressure?
18. What are your hobbies (principal interests and leisure activities)?
19. How do you contribute to and benefit from them?
20. How do you usually spend your leisure time?

18. How would you answer the above questions? Discuss the answers with your group.

19. Role play.

Student A	Student B
<p><i>You have applied to the position of... (choose any position you like) and you are invited for an interview. Talk to your potential employer. Make your interview successful.</i></p>	<p><i>You are a senior manager at ... (choose any company). You are interviewing a candidate for the position of ... (choose any position). Find out if this candidate is the very person you need.</i></p>

Swap roles.

20. Speak about...

1. Your interview experience.
2. Things that make interview successful.
3. Things that can fail you at an interview.

21. Translate into English.

КАК ВЕСТИ СЕБЯ НА ИНТЕРВЬЮ

- Будьте вежливы и доброжелательны со всеми, кого вы встретите в офисе.
- Не забудьте улыбнуться, входя в кабинет интервьюера.
- Приветствуя представителя компании, не подавайте руки первым.
- Не садитесь, пока вам не предложат этого сделать.
- Помните, как важен язык жестов. Следите за своей осанкой, стремитесь смотреть в глаза.
- Если вас кому-либо представят, приложите все усилия, чтобы правильно услышать и запомнить имя этого человека. Если вы сразу сможете обратиться к собеседнику по имени, это произведет благоприятное впечатление. Переспрашивание же обнаружит излишнюю нервозность.
- Если вам предложат заполнить какие-нибудь формы, помните, что все имеет значение: и грамотность, и аккуратность, и почерк, и четкость формулировок.
- Внимательно слушайте. Следуйте тому направлению беседы, которое задаст интервьюер. Прежде чем отвечать на вопрос, постарайтесь понять, зачем он задан, как в ответе подчеркнуть свои сильные стороны и о чем говорить не следует.
- Ваши ответы на задаваемые вопросы должны быть прямыми и точными (вы не должны выходить за пределы обсуждаемой темы). В то же время вы можете дополнить свой ответ информацией, представляющей вас в выгодном свете. Например, вы можете сказать, что ваше предложение включить дополнительную услугу в стандартный турпакет позволило увеличить продажи на 25 %. Это будет ответом по существу, и никто не сочтет подобное дополнение неуместным.
- Существуют ответы, которые повторяются миллион раз. Постарайтесь избегать штампов и банальностей (как, например, «Мне нравится работать с людьми»).
- Говорите правду. Любые колебания будут заметны и заронят сомнения в правдивости ваших ответов. Каждая неточность будет неизбежно углублять возникшие сомнения и вызывать дальнейшие вопросы, в которых вы будете увязать все глубже и глубже.
- При завершении встречи еще раз коротко изложите доводы в пользу своей кандидатуры, поблагодарите проводившего

интервью за уделенное вам внимание и договоритесь о том, когда и как вы узнаете о результатах собеседования.

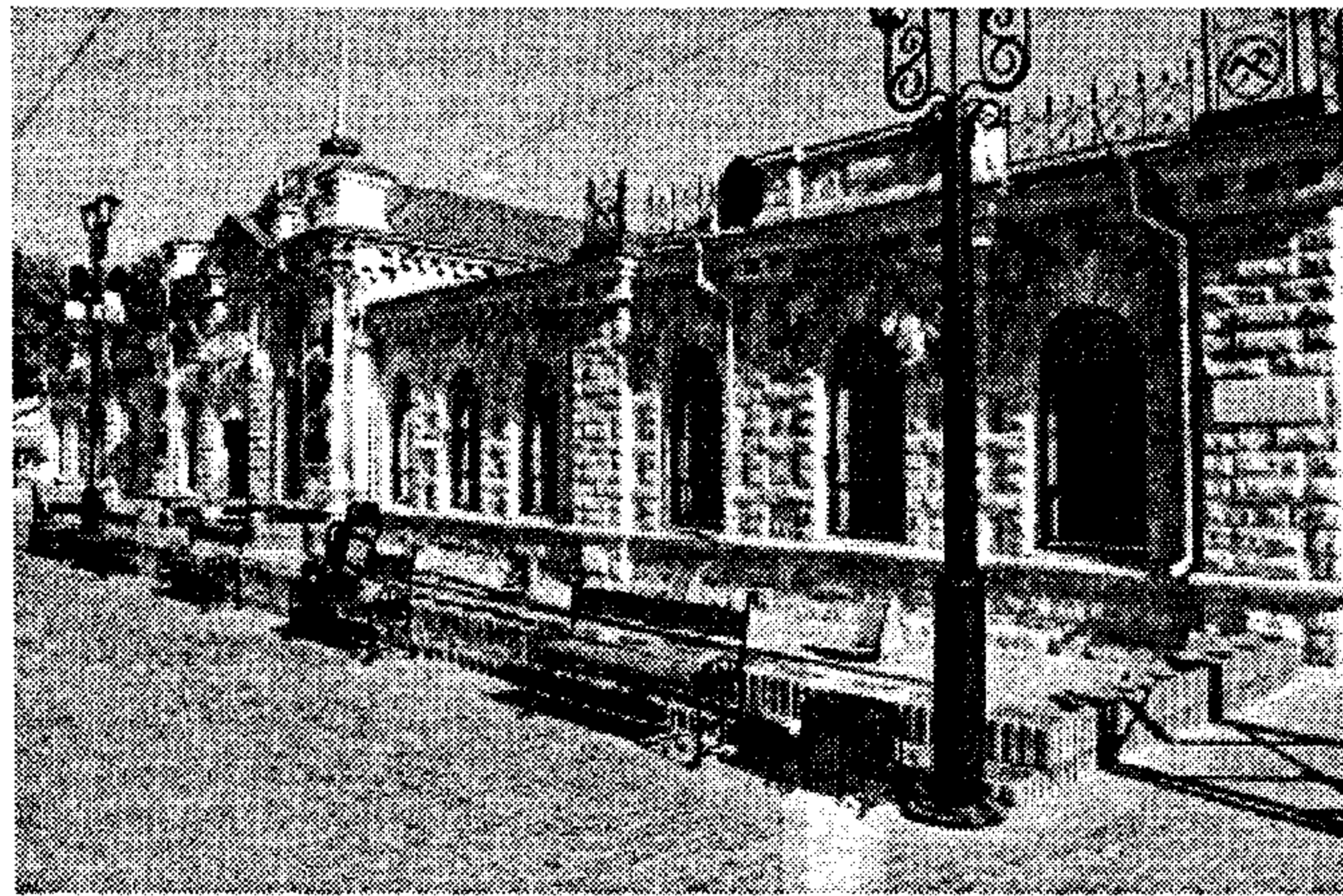
22. Write an essay on the topic "Do's and Don't's When Looking For a Job".

PROJECT WORK

1. You are looking for a job. What position(s) do you want to find? Describe everything you are going to do **to find a good job**. List the sources of information you will use, people you will meet, etc. Write letters of application, resume and CV. Get references from people who know you and can recommend you for this position (e.g. your university professors, former or current employees, senior colleagues, etc. but not relatives).

2. **Get ready for an interview.** Present your cover letter and resume/CV to your potential employer, go to the interview and get accepted for the position you want!

Unit 8. Run Your Own Business



GROUP TALK

- Do you want to be a manager or just an ordinary employee? Why?
- Do you want to have your own business? Why?
- Is it easy to run your own company? Why?
- Is it interesting? Why?

TEXT 1

Vocabulary

travel agency — туристское агентство

salmon — лосось

mascot — талисман, вещь, приносящая счастье

internal newsletter — информационный бюллетень для сотрудников

banner — транспарант

name tag — бирка с названием, именной жетон, медальон с фамилией

pin — булавка

sticker — наклейка

stationery — канцелярские принадлежности

mug — кружка

stuffed — копченый

to buck the tide — плыть против течения

inspirer — вдохновитель

CEO = Chief Executive Officer — генеральный директор

maverick — индивидуалист

enterprise — предприятие

steamship — пароход

relative — родственник

annual — годовой

sales — продажи

to exceed — превышать

associate — сотрудник

to trace — проследить

tactical move — тактический шаг

back office — вспомогательный офис

independent — независимый

contemporary — современный

to deliver — доставлять

ever — всегда

obvious — очевидный

unless — если не(т)

repeatedly — постоянно, часто повторяется

rude — грубый

slave-driving boss — строгий надсмотрщик, эксплуататор, суровый начальник

supervisor — начальник, контролер

to defy — игнорировать

conventional — обычный, традиционный

stereotype — стереотип

to support — поддерживать

ambience — обстановка, среда, атмосфера

hiring practices — практика приема на работу

to take into account — принимать во внимание

personality — личность

to substitute — заменять, защищать

to compensate — платить, расплачиваться

average — средний

vacation and travel benefit package — соц. пакет (оплачиваемый отпуск и транспортные расходы)

turnover — текучесть рабочей силы
to be attributed to — относиться к...
extensive — обширный, всесторонний, громадный
branch — филиал
cyclical — циклический
especially — особенно
Persian Gulf — Персидский залив
recession — упадок
layoff — временное увольнение
instead of — вместо
to resort — прибегать (к чему-то)
freeze — замораживание
scores — множество
voluntary — добровольный
to submit — представлять на рассмотрение, предлагать
cost — стоимость, расходы
to save — экономить
to reassure — заверять, убеждать
course — курс
competition — конкуренция, конкуренты
to reduce — уменьшать, сокращать
staff — штат служащих или сотрудников, личный состав, кадры
payroll — платежная зарплатная ведомость, выплата зарплаты

Read and translate the text.

ROSENBLUTH INTERNATIONAL

Rosenbluth is the fourth largest travel agency in the USA. Employees: 3,000.

Rosenbluth International is the only company in America that uses a salmon as its mascot. Salmon appear on the internal newsletter, banners, name tags, pins, stickers, stationery, and mugs. Rosenbluth even sends a stuffed salmon doll to clients. Why the salmon? Because the salmon likes to buck the tide.

Inspirer of the salmon motif and chief tide buckler is CEO Hal Rosenbluth. He likes to do things differently. And Hal Rosenbluth's maverick style has paid off.

The company started in 1892 when Hal Rosenbluth's great-grandfather Marcus started the enterprise in an ethnic Philadelphia neighborhood to book steamship tickets for his neighbors to bring their European relatives to the United States. Now its annual sales exceed \$1.5 billion

and more than 5,000 associates work at 582 sites in 396 cities. But it's not surprising if you've never heard of Rosenbluth, since 95 percent of its business comes from some 1,500 corporate clients, including Du Pont, Merck, Chevron, Kodak, and General Electric.

Some of Rosenbluth's business success can be traced to technology—they've long been a leader in computer automation of travel reservations. And they've made what others consider brilliant tactical moves—like being the first firm to develop its own back office (accounting and client reporting system) that is independent of the reservations system maintained by airlines.

If this were the typical contemporary business story, we'd now hear that Rosenbluth delivers "excellent" service because he puts the customer first. But that's not the Rosenbluth story. Ever the salmon, Hal Rosenbluth wrote a book called *The Customer Comes Second*.

The obvious question is: Who comes first? The company's associates come first. "We don't believe that the customer can come first unless our people come first. If our people don't come first, then they're not free to focus on our clients; they're worrying about other kinds of things", says Rosenbluth. So clients who are repeatedly rude to associates may find themselves asked to find another travel agency.

As could be expected, there are no slave-driving bosses here. Supervisors (called leaders) defy conventional stereotypes. "I never feel like I manage anybody," said Terri Hater, a senior manager, "'Manage' sounds like you're controlling the actions. Sometimes I feel like a leader and sometimes like a supporter of people and then — ideas."

Rosenbluth's ambience comes partly from unusual hiring practices. Rosenbluth does take personality into account in choosing a new employee. "It's not technical skills we're looking for, it's nice people. We can train people to do anything technical, but we can't make them nice." According to Rosenbluth: "Our Company is made up of friends. We didn't hire friends, we just became that way."

This company doesn't substitute fun and games for low pay, however. Rosenbluth associates are compensated well—typically making 20 percent above the travel industry average. Working at Rosenbluth's also offers one of the best vacation and travel benefit packages in the land. That is why the turnover rate at Rosenbluth is 12 percent. The industry averages between 30 and 50 percent.

Rosenbluth's low turnover can also be attributed to the opportunities opened up by rapid growth and extensive training programs. Rosenbluth operates 10 training centers throughout the country in addition to mobile training teams who conduct seminars at branch locations.

The travel business is traditionally cyclical, and the early 1990s were especially unforgiving. The combination of the Persian Gulf War and the ongoing U.S. recession resulted in huge layoffs throughout the travel industry. But not at Rosenbluth. Instead of resorting to layoffs, they instituted a wage freeze in early 1991. It lasted seven months for non-managerial employees and nine months for managers. Scores of associates helped the company out by taking voluntary time off without pay and submitting over 400 cost-saving ideas through "Operation Brainstorm." To reassure employees that they would not resort to layoffs, Hal Rosenbluth sent every associate a memo in January 1991. It said: "The obvious and simple thing to do would be to follow the course that our competition has chosen and reduce staff, since 50 percent of all costs are in payroll. But let's face it — that's not the action a salmon would take!"

TEXT WORK

1. Pronounce correctly and transcribe. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Internal, stationery, inspirer, steamship, annual sales exceed, associates, neighborhood, supervisor, defy, stereotypes, ambience, hiring practices, account, packages, turnover, throughout, cyclical, especially, Persian Gulf War, recession, scores, voluntary, without, idea, through, reassure, course, Rosenbluth.

2. Compare and mind the difference:

BrE	AmE
Neighbour	Neighbor
Neighbourhood	Neighborhood

3. Answer the questions.

1. How big is Rosenbluth travel agency?
2. What is the company's mascot?
3. Where do they use the salmon?
4. Why is salmon used by the company as its mascot?
5. When did the company start? How?
6. What are the company's annual sales now?
7. What can business success of the company be traced to?
8. What is the company's philosophy concerning customers?
9. What kind of bosses are in the company?
10. What are the hiring practices in the company?

11. How well are the associates compensated in Rosenbluth's?
12. What is the turnover rate at Rosenbluth's?
13. What is the turnover rate in the industry?
14. Why is Rosenbluth's turnover rate so low?
15. What happened to the travel business in early 1990s? Why?
16. What did the managers, employees and the CEO do during that time?

4. Give Russian equivalents to the following words and word combinations. Find and translate sentences with them in the text.

Travel agency, salmon, mascot, internal newsletter, banners, name tags, pins, stickers, stationery, mugs, chief tide bucker, CEO, maverick style, great-grandfather, ethnic Philadelphia neighborhood, billion, associates, 95 percent of its business, business success, traced to technology, travel reservations, back office, accounting and client reporting system, maintained by airlines, delivers excellent service, ever the salmon, The Customer Comes Second, unless, to focus on our clients, repeatedly rude, slave-driving bosses, supervisors, a supporter of people, ambience, take personality into account, technical skills, nice people, we didn't hire friends, the best vacation and travel benefit packages, turnover rate, industry averages, operates 10 training centers, in addition to mobile training teams, especially unforgiving, ongoing recession, huge layoffs, non-managerial employees, cost-saving ideas, obvious thing to do, let's face it, that's not the action a salmon would take.

5. Give English equivalents to the following words and word combinations.

Единственная компания в Америке; сотрудник (3); фигурка копченого лосося; лосось любит плыть против течения; вдохновитель; делать по-другому; было оплачено; компания была основана; бронировать билеты на пароход; соседи; родственники; ежегодный объем продаж превышает...; это неудивительно; корпоративные клиенты; компьютерная автоматизация; что другие считают...; отличные тактические шаги; первая фирма, которая разработала...; независимый; система бронирования билетов; типичная современная история бизнеса; очевидный вопрос; беспокоятся о другом; найти другое турагентство; как можно было ожидать; руководители; игнорировать привычные стереотипы; я чувствую себя лидером; необычная практика приема на работу; новый сотрудник; наша ком-

пания состоит из друзей; мы не заменяем низкую зарплату веселой работой; сотрудникам платят хорошо; на 20 % больше, чем в среднем по отрасли; относящийся к...; быстрый рост; обширные обучающие программы; проводить семинары; в филиалах; туристский бизнес традиционно циклический; война в Персидском заливе; не прибегая к увольнениям; длиться несколько месяцев; множество сотрудников; брать отпуск без содержания; поддерживать сотрудников; конкуренция; сокращать штат сотрудников; 50 % всех расходов составляет выплата заработной платы.

6. Make word combinations, translate them and find them in the text.

travel	newsletter
the only	company
internal	success
name	agency
salmon	tags
buck	clients
salmon	doll
chief tide	tickets
company	the tide
ethnic	neighborhood
steamship	motif
corporate	started
business	automation
computer	bucker
tactical	moves

* * *

back	associates
reporting	question
contemporary	manager
excellent	employee
obvious	service
company's	anybody
to focus	into account
repeatedly	business story
conventional	office
manage	practices
senior	stereotypes
supporter	system

hiring	of people
take personality	rude
new	on our clients

* * *

technical	rate
nice	packages
hire	well
compensated	averages
benefit	cyclical
turnover	friends
industry	growth
rapid	people
training	business
operates 10	programs
throughout	skills
conduct	seminars
travel	training centers
traditionally	Gulf
Persian	the country

* * *

the ongoing	employees
huge	freeze
wage	staff
non-managerial	layoffs
scores	of associates
voluntary	thing
cost-saving	recession
obvious	time off
to follow	ideas
reduce	the course

7. Match the synonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

agency	director general
CEO	continuous
book	manager
associates	support
back up	atmosphere
client	company

supervisor	customer
rapid	modern
pay	personnel
ongoing	reserve
staff	wage
ambience	fast
contemporary	employees

8. Match the antonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

success	lay off
customer	slow
rude	scarce
ever	associate
rapid	failure
heard office	worst
best	without
with	branch
low	expand
extensive	never
hire	high
reduce	polite

9. Form antonyms using negative prefixes *un-*, *in-*, *il-*, *im-*, *ir-*, *dis-*, *mis-*. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Dependent, usual, managerial, forgiving, typical, expected.

10. Make a summary of the text.

11. Choose the right word from the list below. Mind the forms of the words. Translate the story.

LEISURE REVIEW – UK

The value of the out-of-home UK leisure _____ has steadily increased over the past few years and signs are encouraging for _____ growth. The industry has benefited from a benign economic _____, favourable demographics, growth of short breaks and tourism, an increased _____ in health, relaxation and wellbeing, an improved product offer (funded by

both public and _____ sector) and more targeted marketing.

The industry faces various threats and _____ however, as it continues to expand. These include rising _____ associated with a changing regulatory framework and staff recruitment/training, increasing competition for the leisure pound and _____ from in-home leisure activities. The number of admissions at _____ fell by 1 % between 1999 and 2004, while bowling has been on an increase during the same time period but is now also showing a _____ in growth.

Climate, cost, industry, competition, slowdown, interest, future, private, nightclub, challenge.

12. Give missing derivatives (nouns, verbs, adverbs and adjectives) from these words and translate them.

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
		managing	—
	competition		
		automatic	
to increase			

13. Fill in the blanks with prepositions from the last below where necessary. Translate the article.

INTERNATIONAL TOURISM FORECASTS

... 2001, according ... the World Tourism Organization (WTO), international tourist arrivals worldwide fell ... 0.5 % ... 2001, attributed ... large part ... an 11 % slump ... the final four months ... the year after the terrorist attacks ... the US ... 11 September. Prospects ... the travel industry have been portrayed as bleak ever since, but the publication ... this report comes ... a time ... genuine recovery ... the board. However it is to be hoped that this is not another false dawn, as represented ... the result ... 2002 when the 700 million arrivals mark was surpassed ... the first time thanks ... a 2.7 % growth worldwide. ... 2002, all regions, the Americas excepted, posted year-...-year increases, but recovery was brought ... a halt ... 2003 when a combination ... SARS, conflict ... Iraq and economic depression produced a decline ... 1.2 %.

The slumps ... 2001 and 2003 were not simply involuntary responses ... terrorism and conflict. The desire to travel is such that if this was the case, then security fears would merely divert travel flows elsewhere ... unaffected destinations. The fact that an actual decline occurred serves to emphasise the role ... economics, and specifically recession, ... this shortfall. A 'cooling period' ... growth ... the major outbound markets ... Germany, Japan and the US had already been detected ... the first eight months ... 2001. The result was that worldwide, a growth rate ... 4.3 % ... terms ... tourist arrivals generated ... the first eight months ... 2000 had already retracted ... 3 % ... 2001. Besides economics, a number ... other factors had inhibited ... growth ... the pre-September period that year. The Israeli-Palestinian conflict deterred Western travel ... the Middle East, the outbreak ... foot and mouth disease did likewise ... the UK, Ireland and the Netherlands and the strength ... the US dollar contributed ... a shortfall ... international arrivals ... the US.

To, on, of, in, by, at, for, from, across, during.

14. Agree or disagree with the following statements. Give your reasons.

For agreement use:

I quite agree with you.

That's quite right.

I think you are right.

I should think so.

For disagreement use:

I don't actually agree.

That's wrong.

I wouldn't say it is.

I'd like to say yes, but...

1. Rosenbluth International is the largest travel agency in the USA.
2. Rosenbluth deals only with corporate clients.
3. Rosenbluth International is the only company in America that uses a salmon as its mascot.
4. The company was started in 1892 by Hal Rosenbluth's grandfather.
5. Rosenbluth's CEO likes doing things differently.
6. Rosenbluth's business success can be traced to technology.
7. Rosenbluth delivers "excellent" service because he puts the customer first.
8. Supervisors and managers in the company are called leaders.
9. Rosenbluth doesn't believe that the customer can come first unless people come first.
10. Rosenbluth has unusual hiring practices.
11. Rosenbluth never takes personality into account in choosing a new employee.

12. The turnover rate at Rosenbluth is high.
13. The industry average turnover rate is between 30 and 50 percent.
14. Rosenbluth operates many training centers throughout the country.

15. Discuss:

1. The travel business is traditionally cyclical.
2. The Customer Comes Second is a good business philosophy.
3. Technology is the key to business success.
4. There are different types of managers.
5. We can train people to do anything technical, but we can't make them nice.
6. When hiring a new employee personality matters.
7. Extensive training programs help companies to keep the turnover rate low.
8. During recession the best thing to do is to reduce staff.
9. Rosenbluth is a good company to work for.

16. Speak about... corporate philosophy of Rosenbluth International and your opinion about it.

17. Explain what "Customer Comes Second" policy is.

18. Divide into two groups. One group is for "Customer Comes First" philosophy. The other group is for "Customer Comes Second" philosophy. Discuss pros and cons of both principles.

19. Translate into English.

КТО И ЗАЧЕМ ОТКРЫВАЕТ ТУРФИРМЫ?

Невысокий «входной» порог для создания турагентства позволяет без особого экономического риска попробовать силы в туристическом бизнесе. Наиболее популярные вложения в создание турфирмы (турагентства) колеблются в пределах \$10 тыс. Ротация новообразованных фирм очень велика, в течение года — примерно 30 %, т.е. треть исчезает с рынка, не дожив даже до следующего сезона.

Как ни странно, основное число учредителей турфирм — молодые, амбициозные женщины, имеющие опыт работы в туристическом бизнесе в качестве менеджеров и/или по той или иной причине «отделившиеся» от какой-либо туристической фирмы. Давняя

легенда о муже, купившем своей жене турфирму на день рождения, свое уже отжила. Хотя единичные случаи приобретения фирм в качестве подарка бывают, но хлопоты по его содержанию сильно перевешивают радость от получения. В большинстве случаев турагентство открывается в расчете на определенный круг клиентов, сложившийся ранее на основе личных или деловых контактов. Учредители начинающего турагентства изначально рассчитывают свою прибыль, исходя из предполагаемого числа клиентов, не принимая во внимание отсутствие узнаваемой торговой марки, необходимость раскрутки офиса, активной рекламы. Подавляющее количество турфирм открывается без значительных вложений, оперируя денежными средствами, достаточными лишь для аренды и оборудования однокомнатного офиса и минимальной рекламы. Степень «выживаемости» таких фирм крайне низкая.

Подавляющее число лицензий, оформляемых лицензирующими органами, выдается новым фирмам, реально собирающимся работать на туристическом рынке. Соответственно, растет и конкурентная среда, что, впрочем, абсолютно не смущает аутсайдеров.

Для настоящего момента характерна размытость границ в работе турагентов и туроператоров. При создании турфирм на одного туроператора приходится три турагента, и различие между ними подчас лишь в лицензии. На практике туроператорская и турагентская деятельность смешиваются, туроператор продает туры прямым клиентам и перепродает туры других туроператоров, а турагент самостоятельно формирует турпакеты или дополняет готовые туры новыми услугами. Такое «смещение жанров» вносит сумятицу в отношения с партнерами и с налоговыми органами.

Если оценивать направления деятельности новых турфирм, то первое место занимает продажа туров по России и ближнему зарубежью, второе, с большим отрывом, — выездной туризм, третье — въездной туризм, четвертое — образовательные, лечебные и прочие туры. Интерес к продаже туров по России наиболее выражен в регионах, в особенности имеющих собственные туристические ресурсы. Отдельно можно выделить категорию турфирм, не имеющих конкретного направления продаж и ориентированных на продажу любых туров по запросу клиента.

Очень часто новоиспеченные турфирмы слабо ориентируются на туристическом рынке и в обилии предложений туроператоров, нередко выбирают поставщика по случайным признакам или руководствуясь поверхностной информацией.

Создание многочисленных туристических предприятий в России отражает общую тенденцию активного развития малого бизнеса. Туристический рынок растет пропорционально спросу потребителей на услуги и росту платежеспособности населения. Тревожит лишь тот факт, что формирование профессиональных кадров не успевает за ростом числа турфирм, а это может пагубно сказаться на качестве туристических услуг и в целом на доверии потребителей к туристической отрасли.

20. Write an essay on the topic "Travel Business in Russia".

ТЕХТ 2

Vocabulary

- to surround — окружать
- heart — сердце
- committed — преданный, приверженный
- to own — владеть
- lifestyle — стиль жизни
- to succeed — добиваться успеха
- to suggest — предлагать
- to attract — привлекать
- establishment — учреждение, организация
- to draw — привлекать, притягивать
- experienced — опытный
- mature — зрелый
- floor manager — менеджер зала
- general manager — главный менеджер
- to require — требовать
- to pursue — добиваться, преследовать, выполнять, совершать, заниматься чем-то
- to exist — существовать
- advancement — продвижение вперед, развитие, достижение, успех
- franchise (AmE) — привилегия
- stable — стабильный
- income — доход
- to advise — советовать
- to demand — требовать
- expertise — экспертиза, контроль за чем-либо
- partnership — партнерство

fairly — довольно, в некоторой степени, должным образом
to invest — вкладывать деньги
bottom — низ
education — образование
however — однако
upside — положительная сторона, верхняя часть
challenge — вызов, сложная задача, проблема
chance — шанс
to acquire — получать, приобретать, овладевать
array — масса, множество, совокупность, набор, комплект
exciting — волнующий, захватывающий
to grow — расти
adult — взрослый (человек)
coworker — сотрудник
customer — клиент, покупатель
pressure — давление
budget — бюджет
to staff — укомплектовывать штат сотрудников, набирать кадры
daily — возражать, быть против чего-то
to mind — возражать
to fit — подходить, соответствовать
vision — видение, представление
to work hard — работать усердно
to reach goals — добиваться целей
to offer — предлагать
accounting — бухгалтерское дело
publishing — издательское дело
marketing — исследование рынка
last but not least — последний по списку, но не по значимости

Read and translate the text.

IS RESTAURANT MANAGEMENT ON YOUR CAREER MENU?

Whenever Jerry Westrom interviews a potential management candidate, he talks about all the negatives surrounding the position before going into greater detail about the positives.

“I need to know their heart is in it, that they are truly committed,” says Westrom, who owns an Ember’s Restaurant in Cambridge, Minnesota. “If they seem skeptical about anything, I don’t know if they will make it.”

What Are the Negatives?

“Being a restaurant manager is a lifestyle, not a job,” says Westrom. “If managers are going to succeed, they will put in 50 to 80 hours per week with high stress levels at times. But once you get everything going, it can be a fun career with very good pay.”

Westrom suggests potential candidates consider the following:

- What type of restaurant business are you going into? There is a big difference between fine dining, family style, fast food and a sports bar or restaurant atmosphere. These restaurants attract different employees. A fine dining establishment might draw more experienced, mature employees, while a fast food restaurant or sports bar might interest younger ones.
- Do you want to be a floor manager, a back-of-the-house manager or a general manager? Each of these positions requires different skills.
- When pursuing jobs, ask potential employers how long they have been in business, where they see the business growing, what opportunities exist for advancement and what type of manager-training programs they have.

“If someone wants a career in this field, try getting in with a franchise for training and a stable income,” advises Westrom. “After three to five years, you can look at a privately held restaurant where you can go in as a general manager and demand a pay of \$60,000-plus for your expertise or partnership.”

The Positives

Jill Nelsen has worked as a restaurant manager in California and Minnesota and has more than 10 years of experience managing fast food restaurants, such as Taco Bell and Rax Roast Beef.

“Restaurant management is great if you like a lot of variety in what you do, like to work really hard and enjoy working with people,” she says. “It is a fairly easy field to break into without investing in an education; however you can move up faster and not start at the very bottom if you do have an education.”

Nelsen says the upside to restaurant management lies in the opportunity to advance quickly, the challenge and the chance to acquire an array of management skills. “I really enjoyed the opportunity to work with young people,” she adds. “For many of them, it was their first job, and it was exciting to teach them the value of work and a strong ethic and to

watch them grow into adults. Often, working in a restaurant can be like working with a big family.”

Nelsen suggests asking yourself these 10 questions to help you decide if this is the career for you:

1. Do I like to work with many different types of people, both as coworkers and as customers?
2. Will I mind working all hours of the day and night?
3. Do I like to motivate people to do their best?
4. Will I enjoy the pressures of making a budget, staffing the restaurant and managing daily operations?
5. Will I mind people calling me with questions on my time off?
6. What do I picture for the future, my family and how we spend our time? Do a restaurant manager's hours fit into this vision?
7. Am I highly motivated?
8. Do I like to work hard?
9. Do I like to reach daily, weekly, monthly and yearly goals?
10. What does this career offer that others do not?

“One last but not least thing to remember about a career in restaurant management is that with all the training and experience you get, you can move to many different industries and careers,” says Nelsen, who went from restaurant management to office management, to sales management to bank accounting, publishing and marketing.

by Matt Krumrie

TEXT WORK

1. **Pronounce correctly and transcribe. Consult the dictionary if necessary.**

Heart, to own, to succeed, to suggest, to draw, experienced, mature, to require, pursuing, franchise, expertise, fairly, however, challenge, chance, to acquire, exciting, coworkers, pressure, vision, to reach, goal, accounting, publishing, marketing.

2. **Answer the questions.**

1. What does Jerry Wilson do when he interviews a potential candidate?
2. Why is he doing that?
3. What are the negatives of a restaurant manager's job?
4. What kind of job is the job of a restaurant manager?

5. What questions should potential candidates consider before working as a restaurant manager? Why?
6. What are career prospects for a restaurant manager?
7. What are the positives of restaurant manager's job?
8. What do restaurant managers need to like and enjoy?
9. What are the upsides of the restaurant management?
10. What do you need to do to decide if the restaurant management is for you?
11. What is the last but not least thing to remember about a career in restaurant management?

3. **Give Russian equivalents to the following words and word combinations. Find and translate sentences with them in the text.**

Restaurant management, interviews, potential management candidate, detail about the positives, heart is in it, truly committed, they will make it, high stress levels, with very good pay, type of restaurant business, fine dining, fast food, restaurant atmosphere, fine dining establishment, mature employees, floor manager, how long they have been in business, back-of-the-house manager, each of these positions, when pursuing jobs, what opportunities exist for advancement, try getting, privately held restaurant, expertise or partnership, restaurant management is great, a lot of variety in what you do, start at the very bottom, the opportunity to advance quickly, an array of management skills, it was exciting to teach them, value of work, a strong ethic, coworkers, customers, will I mind working all hours, staffing the restaurant, what do I picture for the future, manager's hours fit into this vision, highly motivated, office management, bank accounting.

4. **Give English equivalents to the following words and word combinations.**

Отрицательные стороны должности; если кажется, что они настроены скептически; это не работа, а стиль жизни; чтобы добиться успеха; 50—80 часов в неделю; веселая карьера; существует большая разница между...; семейного стиля; спортивный бар; привлекать разных сотрудников; привлекать более опытных и зрелых; требует разных умений; потенциальный работодатель; программы обучения менеджеров; стабильный доход; требовать зарплату 60 тысяч долларов в год и более; опыт работы более десяти лет; работать

усердно; любить работать с людьми; без инвестиций в образование; однако; продвигаться быстрее; иметь образование; положительная сторона управления рестораном; шанс получить; это было их первое место работы; смотреть, как они становятся взрослыми; эта карьера для тебя; работать с различными людьми; мотивировать людей работать лучше; управлять ежедневной работой; во время выходного дня; достигать целей; последнее, что нужно помнить; обучение и опыт, который вы получаете; перейти работать в другие сферы деятельности; менеджмент по продажам; издательское дело; исследование рынка.

5. Make word combinations, translate them and find them in the text.

restaurant	committed
potential	skills
greater	skeptical
truly	jobs
seem	manager
high	stress levels
fun	employees
big	detail
family	career
sports	dining
different	management candidate
fine	difference
mature	employees
floor	bar
requires	management
pursuing	exist
opportunities	style

* * *

manager-training	programs
wants	ethic
stable	the pressures
demand	of work
years	a career
enjoy	adults
easy	skills

move up	income
chance	to acquire
management	family
value	faster
strong	a pay
grow into	types
big	people
different	field
motivate	of experience
enjoy	working

* * *

making	the restaurant
staffing	goals
daily	hard
spend	a budget
highly	motivated
work	operations
yearly	to remember
last thing	accounting
bank	our time

6. Match the synonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

training	aim
reach	think
goal	offer
job	kind
type	work
demand	education
income	pay
suggest	possibility
consider	achieve
opportunity	require

7. Match the antonyms in the columns. Translate the pairs and find them in the text.

positive	employee
employer	bottom

last	working time
different	mature
plus	negative
young	first
top	downside
upside	the same
time off	minus

8. Form antonyms using negative prefixes *un-, in-, il-, im-, ir-, dis-, mis-, non-*. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

Experienced, difference, stable, true, fair.

9. Make a summary of the text.

10. Choose the right word from the list below. Mind the forms of the words. Translate the story.

THE TRAVEL INDUSTRY – FUTURE TECHNOLOGY TRENDS

The tourism industry is not grouped into a _____ heading within the Standard Industrial Classification (SIC). Its defining feature is not the _____, but the purchaser, the 'tourist'. Tourism generally involves a wide _____ of activities (transportation, accommodation, cultural and leisure activities) and is evaluated as a _____ rather than an industry.

Europe is one of the most popular _____ destinations in the world. Due to its composite _____ and variety of activities involved directly or indirectly, tourism industry is of great value to the European _____. With the rapid advancement in _____ tourism industry is undergoing a profound transformation. This report focuses on the European tourism _____ and the impact of technological advancements on it. The changes are discussed with regards to both _____ and modern perspectives.

Range, nature, technology, product, tourist, economy, industry, market, traditional, single.

11. Give missing derivatives (nouns, verbs, adverbs and adjectives) from these words and translate them.

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
	manager		—
		stable	
	education		
to interest			—

12. Fill in the blanks with prepositions from the last below where necessary. Translate the article.

INTERNATIONAL HOTEL INDUSTRY

The hotel industry is particularly geared ... economic growth. According ... PriceWaterhouseCoopers, the trend ... the number ... hotel overnights sold ... the USA ... the period 1991–2000 was 93 percent correlated ... growth ... the GDP. Only exceptional events such as September 11 can derail this relationship. Indeed ... 2002, the correlation coefficient dipped ... only 29 percent, as travellers shunned air travel, but bounced back solidly ... 83 percent ... 2003, thus illustrating the long-run durability ... the rapport ... economic growth and the hotel business.

... the next decade demand ... hotel services should grow ... an above-average pace ... Eastern Europe, Asia (excluding Japan), as well as Africa, the Caribbean and Latin America. Notably, the two current heavyweights, the EU and North America, are likely to lag ... terms ... growth rate due ... the size and maturity ... their travel and tourism markets. Although international travel expenditure will grow more than 50 % faster than the overall average, it will still constitute only a little ... 20 % ... total spending ... travel and tourism ... the end ... the decade.

In, at, on, by, to, of, for, over, between.

13. Agree or disagree with the following statements. Give your reasons.

For agreement use:

I quite agree.

I agree with you.

I fully agree.

I think you are right.

For disagreement use:

Actually, I don't agree.

I don't think that's right.

I don't think that's true (correct).

Well, I am not sure if that's true (right, correct).

1. Whenever Jerry Westrom interviews a potential management candidate, he talks about all the negatives first.
 2. Restaurant managers need to be skeptical.
 3. Being a restaurant manager is a lifestyle, not a job.
 4. Restaurant management is not a high stress levels job.
 5. Restaurant management is a fun career with very good pay.
 6. A fine dining establishment or sports bar might draw more experienced, mature employees, while a fast food restaurant might interest younger ones.
 7. The positions of a floor manager, a back-of-the-house manager or a general manager require different skills.
 8. After three to five years, you can look at a privately held restaurant where you can go in as a general manager and demand a pay of \$60,000-plus for your expertise or partnership.
 9. Restaurant management is great if you like doing the same all the time.
 10. Restaurant management is great if you don't like work really hard.
 11. Restaurant management is great if you enjoy working with people.
 12. You don't need investing in an education if you want a career in restaurant management.
 13. Restaurant management gives the opportunity to advance quickly.
 14. Working in a restaurant can be like working with a big family.
- 14. Discuss:**
1. Would you like to work as a restaurant manager? Why?
 2. Restaurant management is a career for hardworking and people-oriented people.
 3. Restaurant management offers the quickest career advancement.
 4. You need a career in restaurant management if you want to move to many different industries and careers.
 5. Restaurant management is a very interesting and challenging career with very good pay.
 6. Restaurant management work has many advantages comparing with other positions in travel and hospitality industries.
- 15. Speak about... management positions available at travel industry and hospitality industry.**

- 16. Explain why manager's job is not a 9-to – 5 job.**
- 17. Divide into two groups. One group describes the negatives of restaurant management. The other group describes the positives. Discuss pros and cons of restaurant management.**
- 18. Test Yourself.**
- If your client asks you about Mayan temples, do you know what country he is talking about? How good is your knowledge of tourism? Are you the manager who wants to build up a professional career or are you ready to loose potential clients to those who are better at tourism than you?*
- Answer the questions of the given test and find out what type of manager you are.
- 1. Formenter Island is one of ...**
 - a) Canary Islands
 - b) Balearic Islands
 - c) Shetland Islands
 - 2. What is "rekan"?**
 - a) thermal spa resort
 - b) traditional Japanese-style hotel
 - c) New Year according to the Moon calendar
 - 3. Which country doesn't border Jordan?**
 - a) Syria
 - b) Iraq
 - c) Iran
 - d) Saudi Arabia
 - e) Israel
 - 4. What is the full for APEX?**
 - 5. What country has Accor hotel chain?**
 - 6. St. Jacob's path leads to...**
 - a) Petra
 - b) Santiago de Compostella
 - b) Massai Maar
 - d) Lucsor

7. Musalen Mountain is the highest mountain of ...
 a) Pyrenean Peninsula
 b) Apennine Peninsula
 c) Sinai Peninsula
 d) Labrador Peninsula
8. What is the monetary unit of Brazil?
 a) Peso
 b) Real
 c) Bolivar
9. What is the most popular travel destination for Russian tourists according to statistics?
 a) Italy
 b) Spain
 c) Egypt
 d) Finland
10. What is the full for PATA?
11. What city is the European "Capital of Culture" in 2005?
12. Do travel agencies in Russia need to obtain a license?
13. Which Airlines do not fly to Russian regions?
 a) Lufthansa
 b) Finnair
 c) Air France
 d) Austrian Airlines
14. What country is nicknamed "Choson"?
15. What country is nicknamed "Hanguk"?
16. What do "Pobab", "Polip", "Rabal" and "Ranuv" codes mean when making a hotel reservation?

Give yourself one point for every correct answer.

1. Balearic Islands
2. Traditional Japanese-style hotel
3. Iran
4. Advance Purchase Excursion Fare
5. France

6. Santiago de Compostella
7. Pyrenean Peninsula
8. Real
9. Egypt
10. Pacific Asia Travel Association
11. Cork, Ireland
12. No
13. Air France
14. Choson is China
15. Hanguk is Korea
16. Check-in at a hotel on Sunday morning, afternoon, evening and night respectively.

Count your points.

0—4 points: "Ignorance"

If you don't start building your geography and tourism knowledge, you will lose your sales to more knowledgeable colleagues. To be successful in this industry you need to widen your horizon.

5—8 points: "Weak spot"

You are not ignorant, but you are not a professional yet. It will be more and more difficult for you to work in this industry and even more difficult to make a career in travel business with your level of knowledge. You need to acquire more knowledge to be successful.

9—12 points: "Good news for you"

You are a good specialist, for sure, and if you put a little more effort to enlarge your knowledge, you will be very successful. Your hard work will be both morally and monetary well-compensated.

13—16 points: "The winner takes it all"

Congratulations! Your travel agency is very lucky to have you. When they speak of excellent professionals, they mean you. If you plan to make a career in travel and tourism industry, you have chosen the right way to go.

Adapted from Travel Weekly

19. Translate into English.

ГОСТИНИЧНЫЙ МЕНЕДЖМЕНТ ПО-РУССКИ

Отечественный гостиничный рынок в последнее время лихорадит: появляются все новые управляющие компании, уже заявлены по меньшей мере пять национальных отельных брендов, а в течение последнего года сделано сразу несколько громких заявок на создание общероссийских сетей из десятков и даже сотен объектов размещения.

Как полагают специалисты, владельцы российских гостиниц в большинстве своем пока не готовы к внедрению внешнего управления. «Идеи объединения в среде владельцев гостиниц (hoteliers) не пользуются популярностью, — отмечает руководитель консалтинговой компании Hotel Consulting & Development Group Александр Лесник. — Даже соглашаясь на отдельные совместные акции, владельцы гостиниц или их директора не готовы допустить посторонних ни к маркетингу, ни тем более к ценовой политике или влиянию на механизмы управления». Действительно, сегодня российские управляющие компании в гостиничном бизнесе в большинстве своем либо сами являются собственником управляемых объектов, либо представляют собой дочернюю организацию собственника.

Региональные сети

В России объявлено уже несколько проектов создания гостиничных сетей в общенациональном масштабе, однако большинство из них пока далеки от практической реализации.

По отдельным видам деятельности, в том числе гостиничной, планируется привлекать сторонних иностранных операторов как для прямого управления, так и для образования российского оператора.

«Сейчас на российском гостиничном рынке идет процесс консолидации. Я уверен, пройдут три — пять лет, и в России появятся несколько крупных гостиничных операторов, оперирующих небольшими сетями из 5—10 гостиниц», — говорит Александр Лесник.

20. Write an essay on the topic "Me, Myself and I in 15 Years".

PROJECT WORK

Think of **your own business**, the business you want to run, or the business you want to work for. Choose the company's activities (travel agency, hotel chain, car rental agency, etc.) and company's size. Create the name, the slogan and the program for you company. Describe basic work principles and your company's philosophy. Think of the advertising and marketing strategies of your company. Work out the business plan for the first year of operation. Choose your position in the company and describe your duties. Make a presentation of your company for your colleagues.

*Appendix I***GLOSSARY OF COMMON TRAVEL TERMS**

- AAA Rate:** A discounted rate offered to members of AAA. Proof of membership required.
- AARP Rate:** A discounted rate offered to members of AARP. Proof of membership required.
- Airport Transfer:** Transportation (usually bus or van) that takes passengers between airport and hotel. Often free to guests of the hotel.
- Advance Purchase Requirement:** Airlines usually offer lower rates when tickets are purchased in advance; often 7, 14, 21 and 30 day increments.
- American Plan:** Meal plan offered by hotels that includes three meals per guest for each day stayed at the hotel.
- Average Rate:** Some hotels charge different rates for weekday and weekends; this rate is an average cost for the total reservation.
- Bulkhead Seats:** Located near the front of each airplane section, these popular seats offer more leg room but no under-seat storage.
- CDW/LDW:** Collision Damage Waiver and Loss Damage Waiver; when renting a car, you will be asked if you want to add (and pay for) collision and loss insurance. These may already be covered by your personal auto insurance and/or your credit card; find out before you book your rental car.
- Cancellation Policy:** When making any travel reservation, ask what the rules are about canceling and if you can get your money back.
- Check-in:** Hotel arrival date.
- Check-out:** Hotel departure date.
- Connection/Connecting Flight:** Additional flight(s) required to get from one airport to another; usually requires changing planes.
- E-ticket:** Replaces paper airline tickets; you'll need the credit card you used for the reservation or a photo ID to get a boarding pass
- Excess Baggage:** Luggage that exceeds an airline's weight allowance; may be charged an additional fee.
- Frequent Flyer Program:** Many airlines offer bonus miles to frequent passengers; these miles may be exchanged for airline tickets or merchandise. These miles often have expirations dates.

- Government Rate:** Hotel discount for government employees; requires identification.
- Guaranteed Reservation:** Advance payment, often by credit card, that guarantees your room reservation. These are often non-refundable after a certain time.
- Military Rate:** Discounted hotel room rate for Military Personnel. Military ID required upon check-in at hotel.
- NM:** Nautical mile.
- Prepayment Policy:** Specific rules regarding the payment of room and tax charges for your hotel reservation; see also Guaranteed Reservation.
- Rack Rate:** Standard advertised rate for a room or suite; if you ask for a lower rate, you can often get it.
- Rate Info:** The daily room rate charged by your hotel.
- Rating:** The Mobil "Star" rating of a specific hotel.
- **One Star** — Budget/Motor Inn
 - **Two Stars** — Economy Motel/Hotel
 - **Three Stars** — Full Service Hotel/Resort
 - **Four Stars** — Superior Accommodations and Services
 - **Five Stars** — Luxury Hotel/Resort Property
- Red-Eye:** Overnight flights; named because many people don't sleep well on airplanes.
- Super Saver:** A discounted rate; often includes specific requirements.

Appendix II

**UK SLANG:
A GLOSSARY OF SOME TERMS YOU MIGHT
MEET ON YOUR TRAVELS**

I give below some of the many slang terms used in the UK and Ireland that you might come across on your travels, in books, hear on British television or meet during your stay. Whilst many may be known to visitors from other English speaking countries, they may be new to those visitors for whom English is a foreign language. This is not a comprehensive list, and I'm sure that other people have their own favourites — let me know of any that you feel really should be added to the list!

Banger — British sausage
Banger — Old motor car which is not in a good condition
Barmy — Crazy
Big Wig — Important person
Bill — Police
Bloke — A man
Blimey — A mild expletive
Bobby — A policeman
Bonkers — Crazy
Bossy Boots — Domineering person
Bum — Bottom, Buttocks
C of E — Church of England
Cack-handed — Clumsy, Left-handed
Char — Tea, Cleaner
Copper — A Policeman
Doddle — Something which is easy to do
Dodgy — Unreliable
Dog Collar — Collar worn by a clergyman
Fag — A cigarette
Flashy — Describes something which is gaudy, showy but cheap
Fuzz — The Police

Half-inch — To steal, Rhyming slang half-inch — pinch
Have a ganders — take a look at
Hoity-Toity — An expression of contempt for a person who has an exaggerated sense of their own social status
In the Nick — In the Police Station
In good/bad Nick — In good/bad condition
In the Sticks — In the provinces, that is not in London
Kip — Sleep
Knick-Knacks — Trinkets
Local Rag — Local newspaper
Nose Around — To inspect
Nosey Parker — An inquisitive person
OAP — Old age pensioner. Someone over the age of 65
Pear-shaped — Describes something which has gone wrong
Porkies — Untruths, Rhyming slang pork pies — lies
Potty — Silly, crazy
Pub Crawl — Moving from pub to pub and drinking in each one
Round the Twist — Crazy
Sally Ann — Salvation Army
Sarnies — Sandwiches
Scarper — To go quickly, Rhyming slang Scapa flow — go
Shufti — Look at, inspect
Spuds — Potatoes
Suss out — Ascertain, work out
Swap — To exchange
Take a rekky — From (reconnoitre), check and place out, or scout ahead
Tat — Rubbish
The Smoke — London

From Jane Dickerson

CONTENTS

Предисловие	3
Part I. Travelling	6
Unit 1. The Pleasure Of Travelling	6
Dialogue 1. Holiday Plans	6
Text 1. Resort	7
Text 2. Camping Holidays	12
Dialogue 2. Holiday Plans	19
Dialogue 3. A Bad Holiday	21
Text 3. The Vacation Situation In America	24
Dialogue 4. Are We Going Anywhere?	32
Project Work	33
Unit 2. Air Travel	34
Text 1. Air Travel	34
Dialogue 1. Air Tickets	40
Dialogue 2. At The Check-In Counter	42
Text 2. Airport	44
Dialogue 3. At The Customs	52
Customs Form	53
Project Work	56
Unit 3. Travelling By Sea	57
Text 1. Going To Sea	57
Text 2. Alaska Summer Cruises	65
Dialogue. Going On A Caribbean Cruise	75
Project Work	79
Unit 4. Travelling By Train	80
Text 1. At The Railway Station	80
Dialogue 1. Over The Phone	86
Dialogue 2. At The Booking Office	86
Text 2. Getting Around In Britain	88
Dialogue 3. Train Ticket	95
Dialogue 4. Going By Train	96
Rail Passes & Tickets	99
Dialogue 5. At The Railway Station	102
Project Work	103

Unit 5. Travelling By Car	104
Text 1. Road Rage	104
Dialogue 1. Renting A Car	116
Text 2. How I Learned A Driver's License Means More Than Getting Around — It Means Freedom	119
Dialogue 2. Driving In The City	131
Dialogue 3. At the Gas Station	132
Project Work	134
Unit 6. Hotels	135
Text 1. Guide To Accommodations In London	137
Text 2. Tipping Etiquette	143
Dialogue 1. Hotel Reservation	159
Dialogue 2. Check-In	159
Dialogue 3. Bellboy	160
Dialogue 4. Reception	161
Dialogue 5. Check Out	162
Dialogue 6. Continue The Conversations.	163
Project Work	165
Unit 7. Restaurants	166
Text 1. Restaurant (Part I)	166
Text 2. Restaurants (Part II)	172
Text 3. Meal	179
Dialogue 1. At The Tai Restaurant	188
Dialogue 2. Going To A Restaurant	189
Dialogue 3. At The Restaurant	190
Dialogue 4. Choosing From A Menu	191
Dialogue 5. Restaurant Complaints	192
Dialogue 6. Finishing The Meal	193
Project Work	196
Part II. Travel Business	197
Unit 1. Forms Of Tourism	197
Text 1. Tourism And Its History	198
Text 2. Types Of Tourism	210
Dialogue 1. Renting A Flat	224
Dialogue 2. Apartment For Rent	226
Text 3. Trends And Recent Developments	228
Project Work	240

Unit 2. Space Tourism	241
Text 1. Space Tourism	241
Text 2. Dennis Tito	255
Project Work	259
Unit 3. Adventure Tourism	260
Text 1. The Unknown Cave Of Mystery	260
Talk About Weather	270
Dialogue 1. European Weather Check	270
Dialogue 2. Weather Forecast	271
Text 2. Winter Race To Rival Summer Event	273
Project Work	282
Unit 4. Sightseeing	283
Text 1. Pisa, Italy — Home Of The Famous Leaning Tower Of Pisa	283
Dialogue 1. A Disappointing Holiday	295
Text 2. Europe Off The Beaten Track	298
Project Work	310
Unit 5. Ecotourism	311
Text 1. Ecotourism	311
Text 2. In the Land Of The Surfing Hippos	321
Project Work	335
Unit 6. Business Travel	336
Text 1. Business Travel (Part I)	336
Dialogue 1. At The Airport	343
Dialogue 2. In The Office	344
Text 2. Business Travel (Part II)	345
Dialogue 3. Arrange A Meeting	352
Dialogue 4. Inviting	353
Dialogue 5. Phone Call	354
Dialogue 6. Message	355
Dialogue 7. A Call From The Boss	356
Project Work	358
Unit 7. Jobs And Careers At Tourism And Hospitality Industries ..	359
Text 1. Careers In Travel And Tourism	359
Cover Letter or Letter Of Application	370
Resume	372
Text 2. Hit Your Stride In Hospitality	376

Curriculum Vitae (CV)	386
Dialogue. Interview	388
Project Work	391
Unit 8. Run Your Own Business	392
Text 1. Rosenbluth International	392
Text 2. Is Restaurant Management On Your Career Menu?	405
Test Yourself	415
Project Work	419
Appendix I. Glossary of Common Travel Terms	420
Appendix II. UK Slang: A Glossary of Some Terms You Might Meet on Your Travels	422

Александра Михайловна Сербиновская

**Английский язык для турбизнеса и сервиса.
English for travel business and service**

Учебник для вузов

Санитарно-эпидемиологическое заключение
№ 77.99.02.953.Д.004609.07.04 от 13.07.2004 г.

Лицензия № 06473 от 19 декабря 2001 г.
Подписано в печать 20.02.2006. Формат 60×84 1/16.
Печать офсетная. Бумага газетная.
Печ. л. 26,75. Тираж 2000 экз. (1-й завод 1–600 экз.)
Заказ № 4375.

Издательско-торговая корпорация «Дашков и К°»
129347, Москва, Ярославское шоссе, д. 142, к. 732.
Для писем: 129347, Москва, п/о И-347
Тел./факс: (095) 182-01-58, 182-11-79, 183-93-01
E-mail: sales@dashkov.ru — отдел продаж
office@dashkov.ru — офис;
<http://www.dashkov.ru>

Отпечатано в соответствии с качеством предоставленных диапозитивов
в ФГУП «Производственно-издательский комбинат ВИНТИ»,
140010, г. Люберцы Московской обл., Октябрьский пр-т, 403. Тел.: 554-21-86